# INTRODUCTION TO GREEK

THIRD EDITION

Cynthia W. Shelmerdine
& Susan C. Shelmerdine

Introduction
to Greek

Third Edition

Introduction to Greek

Third Edition

Cynthia W. Shelmerdine

&

Susan C. Shelmerdine

To the students past, present and future
who take up the challenge of learning this beautiful language.

Contents

Preface

This book is intended primarily for college students interested in learning to read Attic Greek, and assumes no prior study of Latin or other foreign languages. Our approach has been shaped by a few important priorities. We present grammar from the perspective of people who will be reading Greek authors, not constructing sentences themselves. We have made a conscious effort to focus on high frequency vocabulary, and have organized the presentation of material to prioritize frequently encountered forms and constructions. We have also tried to give a little linguistic background (without a lot of jargon) to make new forms understandable. Finally, in the belief that students want and need to see 'real' Greek as they learn, we have provided Readings and Practice Sentences from a variety of authors, starting in chapter 7. We have also taken to heart the valuable comments and criticisms from reviewers of the earlier editions, and from colleagues and students who have used those texts.

The resulting third edition has been completely reworked and consists of twenty-eight chapters. We expect that classes meeting three times a week will be able to get through Chapter 14 or 15 in the first semester, and to finish the book in the second. The text concentrates on the information we believe first-year students really need to know in order to start reading Greek. We hope the following features of the book will help them in that effort.

- Our presentation of morphology has been influenced by Anne Mahoney's study of the frequency of forms in Greek texts. The perfect tense comes late in the book (Ch. 24) since it accounts for only 6.4 percent of all verb tenses. The subjunctive (5.7 percent) and optative (2.8 percent) appear first in Ch. 20 and Ch. 21. Middle (10.2 percent) and passive (4.3 percent) voices are introduced in Ch. 16 and Ch. 15. Participles, which account for 30.6 percent of verb forms, are introduced in Ch. 13. The vocative is presented early with the other cases, however, and the imperative is introduced in Ch. 9 as a contrast to the indicative, but is not fully presented until Ch. 18.

- Chapter vocabularies are largely drawn from the Dickinson College Commentaries database of the five hundred most common words in Ancient Greek. The book asks students to learn a little over four hundred words (an average of sixteen per chapter, with fewer in the last eleven chapters), and provides separate vocabulary entries for Readings and Practice Sentences.

- The book uses a variety of exercises, including fill in the blank (cloze), transformation of forms, matching, and dictionary practice. Targeted exercises follow sections with new concepts, forms or constructions.

- Chapters end with sentences to translate, in a proportion of 2:1 Greek–English to English–Greek. Some other chapter exercises ask for translation into Greek of specific words or phrases in a sentence, or of a whole sentence. For each chapter an extra set of Greek–English sentence exercises – Extracises – is provided in the back, along with a key, for students who want more practice in either direction.

- Chapter Readings come from various sources: half from Xenophon and Herodotus; others from Plato, Euripides, the Gospel of John and other authors. In addition, beginning in Ch. 8, each chapter includes several Practice Sentences – short examples of original Greek, from a wider variety of authors.

- The final chapter gives students a chance to read six longer passages in unadapted Attic Greek, and a lightly adapted Herodotus reading, with a short introduction to the Ionic dialect. We hope this chapter will be a useful bridge to the third semester.

Notes to users:

- The overview of verbs in Ch. 2.1 is intended to be read for background, not learned; instructors can cover as much or as little of it as they choose. It may provide a handy summary for students as specific material is introduced in later chapters.

- From Ch. 2 to Ch. 14, the chapter vocabularies give the first three principal parts of verbs. From Ch. 15, where the passive voice is introduced, the 6th is added; from Ch. 24 the 4th and 5th are also included. A full list of principal parts for these verbs appears in the back, and also a simple chart showing how tenses are formed from the principal parts.

- The English–Greek vocabulary includes only words used in English–Greek chapter exercises, not those in the Extracises key.

- So as not to overwhelm students, paradigms in chapters give the most common Attic forms; alternate forms are also included in the Reference Morphology.

- In English–Greek sentences, 'you' is always singular unless plural is specified; 'they' is always plural.

Special thanks to Zachary Biles and the students at Franklin & Marshall College and the students at The University of North Carolina, Greensboro, for using earlier drafts of this edition. We are also grateful to the Press's reader, Michael G. Clark of Lafayette College, for extremely helpful and wide-ranging comments, and to Liz Wilson of Hackett Publishing for her patience and assistance with proofreading.

<div align="right">

Cynthia W. Shelmerdine
Susan C. Shelmerdine
June 2020

</div>

Abbreviations

adv.	adverb	m-p	middle-passive
aor.	aorist	mid.	middle
acc.	accusative	n.	neuter
conj.	conjunction	N., nom.	nominative
dat.	dative	opt.	optative
demonstr.	demonstrative	part.	participle
encl.	enclitic	pass.	passive
f.	feminine	pf., perf.	perfect
fut.	future	pl., plur.	plural
gen.	genitive	postpos.	postpositive
imper.	imperative	pr.	principal
impers.	impersonal	prep.	preposition
impf.	imperfect	pres.	present
indic.	indicative	redup.	reduplication
inf.	infinitive	sg., sing.	singular
interrog.	interrogative	subj.	subjunctive
intrans.	intransitive	trans.	transitive
m.	masculine	V., voc.	vocative

GREECE AND THE AEGEAN

ITALY

Tarentum

BLACK SEA

CASPIAN SEA

Syracuse

SICILY   GREECE   ASIA MINOR

Halys R.

ARMENIA

CRETE

MEDITERRANEAN SEA

EuPhrates R.

CYPRUS   PHOENICIA

MEDIA

Babylon   Susa

EGYPT   PERSIA

PERSIAN GULF

Thebes

Elephantine

RED SEA
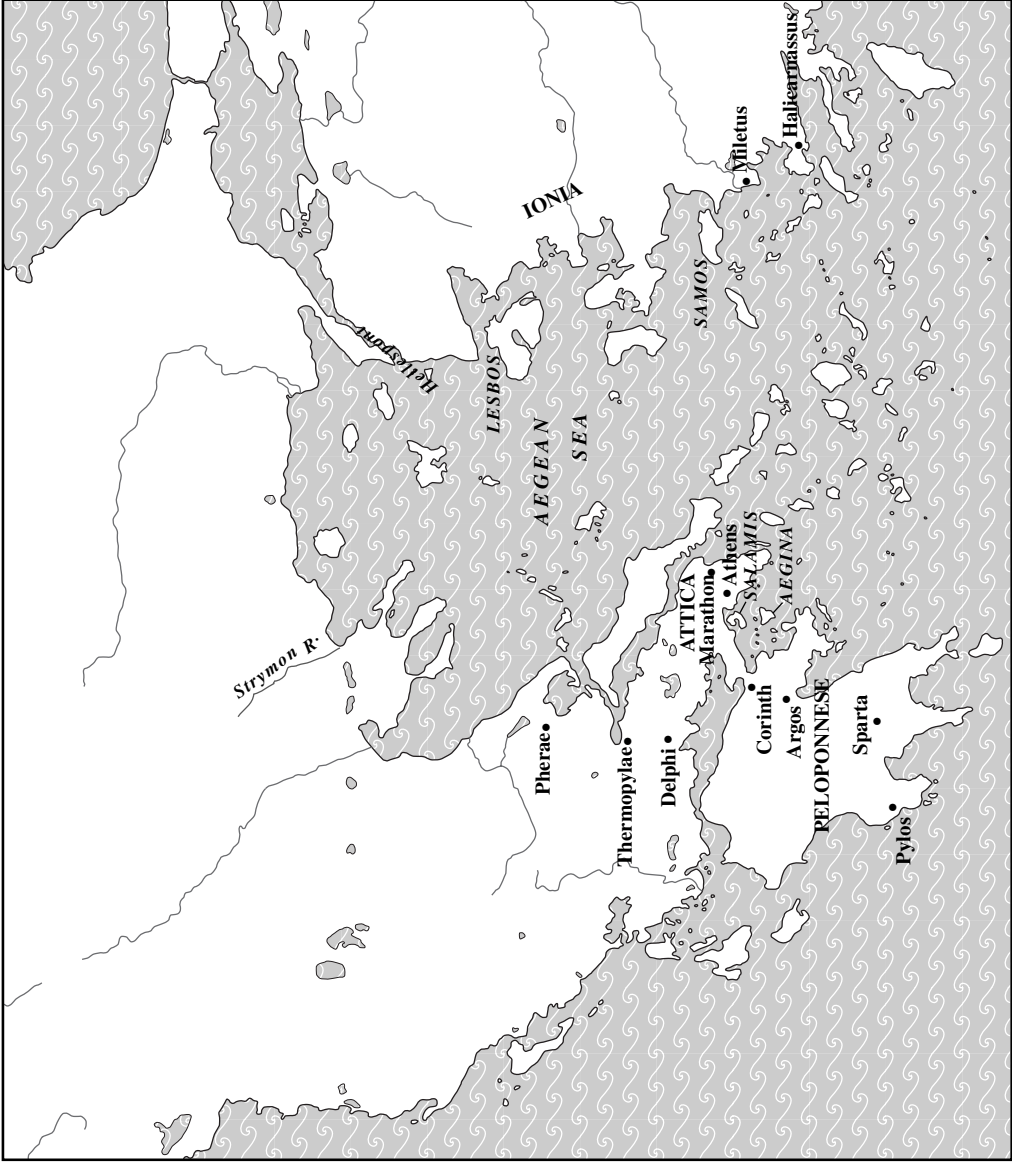
Eastern Mediterranean

1. The Greek alphabet

The Greek alphabet has twenty-four letters; seven vowels and seventeen consonants.

Form		Name	Transliterated		Sound	Greek Example
A	α	alpha	A	a	dr**a**ma	δρ**ᾶ**μα
B	β	beta	B	b	**b**ar**b**arian	**β**άρ**β**αρος
Γ	γ	gamma	G	g	**g**an**gl**ion	μέ**γ**α, ἄ**γγ**ελος
Δ	δ	delta	D	d	**d**eca**d**e	**δ**έκα
E	ε	epsilon	E	e	**e**pic	**ἐ**γώ
Z	ζ	zeta	Z	z	ad**ds**, wi**sd**om	**ζ**ωός
H	η	eta	E	e	th**ey**	ἤ**δη**
Θ	θ	theta	Th	th	**th**ick, ho**th**ead	**θ**εός
I	ι	iota	I	i	**i**ntr**i**gue	ἐπ**ι**πίπτω
K	κ	kappa	K	k	**k**ind	**κ**αλός
Λ	λ	lambda	L	l	**l**ion	**λ**έων
M	μ	mu	M	m	**m**other	**μ**ήτηρ
N	ν	nu	N	n	**n**ice	**ν**όμος
Ξ	ξ	xi	X	x	wa**x**	νύ**ξ**
O	o	omicron	O	o	**o**bstacle	**ὄ**νομα
Π	π	pi	P	p	**p**oet	**π**όλις
P	ρ	rho	R	r	**rh**inoceros	ἔ**ρ**ως
Σ	σ, ς	sigma	S	s	**s**ong	**σ**οφός
T	τ	tau	T	t	**t**opography	**τ**όπος
Y	υ	upsilon	U	u	p**u**t, c**u**te	γ**υ**νή, Κ**ῦ**ρος
Φ	φ	phi	Ph	ph	**ph**ilosophy, she**ph**erd	**φ**ιλοσοφία
X	χ	chi	Ch	ch	**ch**orus, bac**kh**and	**χ**ορός
Ψ	ψ	psi	Ps	ps	ecli**ps**e	**ψ**υχή
Ω	ω	omega	O	o	b**o**ne	γράφ**ω**

2. Vowels and diphthongs

Greek vowels are short or long: **ε** and **o** are always short; **η** and **ω** are always long; **α**, **ι**, **υ** can be either short or long. Diphthongs (from δί, 'two' + φθογγοι, 'sounds') are two vowels combined into a single syllable. The second vowel is always **ι** or **υ**. Diphthongs are usually long (Ch. 1.6). Each syllable in a Greek word has one vowel or diphthong.

Diphthong	Sound	Greek Example
αι	**ai**sle	καί
ει	w**eigh**	γράφει
οι	b**oil**	οἶνος
υι	sw**ee**t	υἱός
αυ	n**ow**	ταῦτα
ευ	**eh-oo**, f**eu**d	πιστεύω
ηυ	**ey-oo**	ηὗρον
ου	gh**oul**	λόγου

Note: When **ι** follows a long vowel (ᾱ, η or ω) it is often written underneath that vowel, because it is not pronounced: ᾳ, ῃ, ῳ. This is called an *iota subscript*.

EXERCISE 1.1.   For each word below, list the number of syllables, identify the last syllable as long or short, then say each word out loud.

Example: στρατιωτην: 4 syllables; last syllable – long

1. γραφεις
2. θαλαττης
3. διωκομεν
4. πεμψω
5. ναυτου
6. ποταμος
7. νεανια
8. στρατιωταις
9. λογοις

3. Consonants

Consonants can be grouped according to where in the mouth they are produced (place). *Labial* consonants are produced with the lips, *dentals* with the tongue against the teeth, and *velars* with the tongue against the soft palate (velum). Consonants can also be grouped according to how they are produced (manner). *Stop consonants* are produced by pushing air through the mouth, stopping and then releasing the air. They can be pronounced with no vibration of the vocal cords (*unvoiced*), with a vibration (*voiced*), or with an **h** sound (*aspirated*), as shown in this chart:

manner	*place*		
	labial	*dental*	*velar*
unvoiced	π	τ	κ
voiced	β	δ	γ
aspirated (+ *h*)	φ	θ	χ

Continuant consonants do not completely stop the air as the sound is produced. *Nasals* are produced when the air escapes through the nose, *liquids* when the air is partially blocked as it moves through the mouth, and *sibilants* when the air escapes past the teeth:

	labial	*dental*	*velar*
nasals	μ	ν	γγ (= ng)*
liquids		λ, ρ	
sibilants		σ, ζ	

*γ + any velar results in a nasal: γκ (=nk), γχ (=nkh)

Understanding where and how consonants are produced will help you understand spelling changes in Greek.

4. Punctuation marks and capital letters

Period, comma: as in English.

Colon, semicolon: a period written above the line: ἀγαθός·

Question mark: like English semicolon: ἀγαθός;

Quotation marks: not used in Greek, although some textbooks occasionally add quotation marks for extra clarity.

Capital letters: not used at the start of every sentence in Greek. They are used for proper nouns, to begin a quotation, and sometimes to begin a paragraph.

5. Breathing marks

A breathing mark always appears at the start of a word beginning with a vowel, diphthong or **ρ**. Like the accent, the breathing mark is part of the spelling of a word. It is written directly over a lowercase vowel (ἐγώ), to the left of an uppercase vowel (Ἥρα), and on the second vowel of a diphthong (εἰρήνη).

A *smooth breathing*, written like an apostrophe, is silent: ἐγώ ('eh-GO').

A *rough breathing*, written like a backward apostrophe, indicates an **h** sound: Ἥρα (Hera).

Note: At the beginning of a word, ῥ- and ὑ- always have a rough breathing.

6. Accents

Greek accents are part of the spelling of most Greek words, and appear on one of the last three syllables of a word. The following terms are used to name these three syllables:

antepenult = 3rd syllable from the end of the word

penult = next to the last syllable

ultima = last syllable

Greek has three accents: acute, ´, grave, `, and circumflex, ˆ. An accent is written directly over a lowercase vowel (καλόν), over the second vowel of a diphthong (πιστεύω), and to the left of an uppercase vowel (Ἥρα). When an accent and a breathing mark occur on the same syllable, the breathing mark comes first (ἄγω).

In ancient Greek the accents indicated musical pitch:

acute	raised the syllable about a fifth above an unaccented syllable
grave	may have raised the syllable about a third
circumflex	raised the syllable about a fifth and lowered it again

For convenience, most English speakers treat the accents instead as stress accents, indicating which syllable of a word to emphasize.

The initial *position* of an accent on one of the last three syllables of a word must be learned by looking at the dictionary listing. The *kind* of accent (acute, grave, circumflex) that can appear on a given syllable is determined by certain rules. A grave accent is only used to replace the acute on the last syllable of a word when another word follows in a sentence.

The following table shows the range of possible positions for acute and circumflex accents, using the following symbols:

◯ = short or long syllable (length determined by length of vowel)

Ⓢ = short syllable: **ε, ο**; sometimes **α, ι, υ**; diphthongs **αι, οι** when they end a word

Ⓛ = long syllable: **η, ω**; sometimes **α, ι, υ**; diphthongs (exception: **αι, οι** above)

antepenult   *penult*   *ultima*

◯́ ◯ Ⓢ   ◯ Ⓛ̂ Ⓢ   ◯ ◯ Ⓢ́

                  ◯ Ⓢ́ Ⓢ   ◯ ◯ Ⓛ̂   except Nom. / Acc.

                  ◯ ◯́ Ⓛ   ◯ ◯ Ⓛ́   Nom. / Acc.

antepenult: acute, and only if ultima is short.

penult: circumflex if penult is long and ultima is short; otherwise, acute.

ultima: acute if ultima is short; usually circumflex if ultima is long.

Exception: accents on the nominative, accusative and vocative cases of nouns and adjectives are acute / grave when positioned on the ultima.

Accent position is determined one way for verbs (Ch. 2.3), another way for nouns and adjectives (Ch. 3.3).

A few words have no accent of their own; these will be taught later.

enclitics (from ἐν, 'on' + κλίνω, 'lean') depend on (lean on) the previous word for their accent (Ch. 6.4).

proclitics (from πρό, 'forward' + κλίνω, 'lean') do not have an accent of their own, and do not affect the accent of other words.

Exercise 1.2.   For the words below, list the number of syllables, identify the ultima as long or short, then say each word out loud, putting a slight stress on the accented syllable. The position of the accent can indicate the length of the ultima.

Example: στρατιώτην: 4 syllables; ultima – long

1. ἄγεις
2. φυλάττουσι
3. ἄνθρωπος
4. διώξει

5. ναύτας
6. ἔπεμψα
7. Ἀθήνη
8. υἱοί

9. ἀγαθός
10. Ὀδυσσεύς
11. δῶρον
12. νομίζετε

CHAPTER 2

1. The verb: overview

This section summarizes the features of Greek verbs and the terms used to describe them. You can refer back to this section when these features are presented in later chapters.

A verb expresses an action or state of being. As in English, some verbs in Greek are *transitive*; that is, they take a direct object ('we like chocolate'). Other verbs are *intransitive*; that is, they do not take a direct object ('he sleeps').

Verbs in Greek fall into one of two regular groups (*conjugations*): -ω verbs (*thematic* verbs) and -μι verbs (*athematic* verbs).

Most forms of a verb are *finite*; that is, they add personal endings to the *stem* of the verb. These endings carry information about who or what the subject of the verb is, and are traditionally identified by:

- *person*: 1st ('I', 'we'), 2nd ('you'), 3rd ('he / she / it', 'they')

- *number*: singular, dual, plural. (The dual, used when two persons or things treated as a unit are the subject, is not common, and is not covered in this book.)

There are two *non-finite* verb forms: the infinitive ('to come') and the participle ('coming').

Verbs are also identified by:

- *aspect*: Greek has three aspects, which show the speaker's view of an action as
  - o incomplete (ongoing, repeated, one that can be interrupted)
  - o a completed whole (one that cannot be interrupted)
  - o the result of an action

- *tense*: Greek has seven tenses, which show both *time* (past, present, future) and *aspect*. The past tenses are called *secondary*; the others are called *primary*. (The future perfect is rare and is not covered in this book.)

primary	**secondary**
present	imperfect
future	aorist
perfect	pluperfect
(future perfect)	

- *voice*: Greek has three voices, which show the relation of the subject to the verb.

    active: the subject performs the action
    >He stops (the boys).

    middle: the subject performs the action on or for himself
    >He stops (himself).

    passive: the subject receives the action
    >He is stopped.

- *mood*: Greek has four moods, the main uses of which are

    indicative: states a fact or asks a simple question
    >He writes a letter.
    >Does he write a letter?

    imperative: expresses a command
    >Come here!

    subjunctive: expresses an exhortation or prohibition, or asks for advice
    >Let's go!
    >Don't do it.
    >What should I do?

    optative: expresses a wish
    >I wish he were here.

2. Principal parts

The dictionary entry for a verb includes the first person singular indicative form ('I stop') of different tenses. These forms are called *principal parts* because they contain the verb stems on which all other forms are built. Because it is not always possible to predict these stems, it is important to memorize all the principal parts for each verb.

The Greek verb has six principal parts, but until Ch. 15 you will need to learn only the first three. (A full list of principal parts is given beginning on p. 278. It is preceded by a chart showing how tenses are formed from the principal parts of regular -ω verbs.) The following is a common pattern for -ω verbs:

1st (present)	**2nd (future)**	**3rd (aorist)**
	+ σ	+ σα
λύω, I release	λύσω, I will release	ἔλυσα, I released
παύω, I stop	παύσω, I will stop	ἔπαυσα, I stopped

The stem of a verb carries its meaning, and usually also gives information about its aspect (Ch. 2.1).

- present stem: All forms built on the present stem refer to an incomplete action (interruptible).
- future stem: The future stem carries no information about aspect, because a future action has not started.
- aorist stem: All forms built on the aorist stem refer to a completed action viewed as a whole (uninterruptible).

This chapter deals with the present and future tenses. To find the stem:

present: drop the personal ending (-**ω**) from the 1st principal part

future: drop the personal ending (-**ω**) from the 2nd principal part

3. Verb accents

The accent on a finite verb is *recessive*; that is, it goes back toward the start of the word as far as accent rules permit (Ch. 1.6). This means you can predict the correct accent for any verb form: it will be on the antepenult if the last syllable is short, the penult if the last syllable is long.

EXERCISE 2.1.   Add the correct accent to each of the forms below.

1.	φερει	5.	διδασκετε	9.	πειθετε
2.	πεμπουσῐ	6.	σῳζω	10.	ἐβλαπτον
3.	ἀγεις	7.	στρατευεις	11.	οἰσω
4.	γραφομεν	8.	ἐθελομεν	12.	κελευουσῐ

4. Present active indicative of thematic verbs (1st principal part)

The present active ('they learn,' 'they do learn,' 'they are learning') is formed from the 1st principal part.

The present active forms of *thematic verbs* all contain a *thematic vowel* (*variable vowel*). This vowel links the verb stem and the personal ending, as an **o** in the 1st person forms and the 3rd plural; as an **ε** in the 2nd person forms and the 3rd singular:

1st plural: παύ-ο-μεν   2nd plural: παύ-ε-τε

Because the thematic vowel often combines with the personal ending, it is useful to memorize them together as a unit:

		singular		*plural*	*thematic vowel*	
1st	(I)	-ω	(we)	-ομεν	o	o
2nd	(you)	-εις	(you)	-ετε	ε	ε
3rd	(he / she / it)	-ει	(they)	-ουσῐ(ν)	ε	o

Here is the *paradigm* (table of forms) for the present active indicative of the verb παύω, 'stop.'

		(stem παυ-)		*endings*
sing.	1st	παύω	I stop	-ω
	2nd	παύεις	you stop	-εις
	3rd	παύει	he / she / it stops	-ει
plur.	1st	παύομεν	we stop	-ομεν
	2nd	παύετε	you stop	-ετε
	3rd	παύουσι(ν)	they stop	-ουσῐ(ν)

Note: The **-ν** in parentheses on the 3rd person plural appears when the next word begins with a vowel, or when a punctuation mark follows. It is usually called a *nu movable*.

Note: In this book, 'they' is always plural.

EXERCISE 2.2.   Using the stem meanings given below, translate each of the following verbs in two different ways.

Example: θύει (sacrifice): 'he sacrifices,' 'he does sacrifice'

1. τίομεν (honor)
2. βουλεύεις (plan)
3. φέρετε (carry)
4. κλείουσι (shut)
5. πιστεύει (trust)
6. θεραπεύω (honor)

5. Future active indicative of thematic verbs (2nd principal part)

The future active ('they will learn,' 'they will be learning,' 'they are about to learn') is formed from the 2nd principal part (Ch. 2.2). The regular marker for the future is the stem ending **-σ**. The future indicative has the thematic vowel and the same personal endings as the present.

		(stem παυσ-)	
sing.	1st	παύσω	I shall stop
	2nd	παύσεις	you will stop
	3rd	παύσει	he / she / it will stop
plur.	1st	παύσομεν	we shall stop
	2nd	παύσετε	you will stop
	3rd	παύσουσι(ν)	they will stop

6. Consonant combinations with σ

Stops combine with a following **σ** in a consistent and predictable way. This occurs, for example, in the future of verbs whose stem ends with a consonant.

labial	*dental*	*velar*
$\left.\begin{array}{l}\pi\\\beta\\\varphi\end{array}\right\}$ + σ = ψ	$\left.\begin{array}{l}\tau\\\delta, \zeta\\\theta\end{array}\right\}$ + σ = σ	$\left.\begin{array}{l}\kappa\\\gamma\\\chi\end{array}\right\}$ + σ = ξ

EXERCISE 2.3.   Using the combinations above, transform the following present tense forms into future tense.

Example: σπεύδει: σπεύσει

1. ἄγομεν
2. πέμπετε
3. γράφεις
4. διδάσκουσι
5. διώκει
6. ἄρχω
7. βλάπτει
8. πείθομεν
9. σῴζετε

EXERCISE 2.4.   Using the chapter vocabulary, identify the person, number and tense of each verb; then translate into English.

1. διώκεις
2. θύσομεν
3. σῴζουσιν
4. λύει
5. γράφεις
6. διδάξω
7. στρατεύσει
8. πείσετε
9. πέμπομεν

EXERCISE 2.5.   Identify the person, number and tense of each English verb; then translate into Greek. In this book, 2nd person forms in English mean 2nd person singular, unless the plural (pl.) is specified.

1. They persuade
2. You (pl.) will harm
3. We sacrifice
4. He will save
5. You release
6. I send
7. We are teaching
8. They pursue
9. They will write

Chapter 2 Vocabulary (11)

Verbs:

βλάπτω, βλάψω, ἔβλαψα	harm, injure, damage
γράφω, γράψω, ἔγραψα	write
διδάσκω, διδάξω, ἐδίδαξα	teach
διώκω, διώξω, ἐδίωξα	pursue
θύω, θύσω, ἔθυσα	sacrifice; make a sacrifice
λύω, λύσω, ἔλυσα	release, set free; undo, destroy
παύω, παύσω, ἔπαυσα	stop
πείθω, πείσω, ἔπεισα	persuade
πέμπω, πέμψω, ἔπεμψα	send
στρατεύω, στρατεύσω, ἐστράτευσα	march; wage war
σῴζω, σώσω, ἔσωσα	save

<div align="right">CHAPTER **3**</div>

1. The noun and its cases

A noun names a person, place or thing. Like verbs, Greek nouns consist of a stem and an ending. The stem gives the meaning of the noun; the ending indicates its *case* and *number*. Every noun also has a *gender*.

Gender may be masculine, feminine or neuter. Sometimes the gender of a noun is obvious ('man' is masculine), sometimes not ('shield' is feminine). So it is necessary to memorize the gender of each noun as you learn it. The dictionary entry for a noun shows its gender with the article ('the'; Ch. 4.1).

masculine	ὁ
feminine	ἡ
neuter	τό

Number may be singular, dual or plural. (The dual, used for pairs of persons or things, is not common, and is not covered in this book.)

Case shows the function of a noun in a sentence, something English does with word order. Greek has five cases, most of which can indicate a variety of different functions. Learn the case names and the following common functions now; additional functions will be given in later chapters.

case name	function	example
Nominative	subject	*The god* heals.
Genitive	possession	the temple *of the god*
		the god's temple
Dative	indirect object (recipient)	I sacrifice *to the goddess.*
Accusative	direct object	I worship *the goddess.*
Vocative	direct address	*Goddess,* heal us.

EXERCISE 3.1.   Identify the function of the underlined word in each sentence below, and say what case Greek would use for that function.

1.   We saw the <u>man</u> yesterday.
2.   She is giving a gift to the <u>girl</u>.
3.   Did the <u>boys</u> ride the horse?
4.   <u>Children</u>, listen to your mother!
5.   The <u>orator's</u> words are fine.

2. Noun declensions

A group of nouns that share the same case endings is called a *declension*. Greek has three declensions. The dictionary entry for a noun gives the nominative singular form, the genitive singular, and the article (Ch. 4.1) to show gender. You can identify the declension of most nouns by looking at the genitive singular:

	genitive ending
1st declension: τιμή, τιμῆς, ἡ, honor	-ης
2nd declension: θεός, θεοῦ, ὁ, god	-ου
3rd declension: κῆρυξ, κήρυκος, ὁ, herald	-ος

To find the stem of any noun, remove the genitive singular ending; whatever is left is the stem. (In the 3rd declension, the nominative singular does not always show the stem.)

EXERCISE 3.2.   Identify the stem and the declension of each noun from its genitive singular form.

1.   λόγου
2.   ἐλπίδος
3.   τιμῆς
4.   θαλάττης
5.   ἀδελφοῦ
6.   ὕδατος

3. Noun accents

The position of a noun accent has to be learned by looking at the nominative singular form. A noun accent is *persistent*; that is, it does not move unless accent rules force it to move. The kind of accent is determined by accent rules (Ch. 1.6).

For 1st and 2nd declension nouns accented on the ultima, there is a distinctive pattern of accents:

| nominative, accusative, vocative: | *acute* | τιμή |
| genitive, dative: | *circumflex* | τιμῇ |

4. 1st declension nouns

Most nouns of the 1st declension are feminine. These nouns have the vowel η or α in the singular and α in the plural. The vocative usually has the same form as the nominative.

- Here are the paradigms for two nouns with η:

		honor	**village**	*endings*
sing.	Nom./Voc.	τιμή	κώμη	-η
	Gen.	τιμῆς	κώμης	-ης
	Dat.	τιμῇ	κώμῃ	-ῃ
	Acc.	τιμήν	κώμην	-ην
plur.	Nom./Voc.	τιμαί	κῶμαι	-αι
	Gen.	τιμῶν	κωμῶν	-ων
	Dat.	τιμαῖς	κώμαις	-αις
	Acc.	τιμάς	κώμας	-ᾱς

Note: The original genitive plural ending was -άων. The α contracted with the ω; the accent stands on the contracted syllable: ά + ων = ῶν. This is true for all 1st declension nouns.

- After ε, ι and ρ, the vowel in the singular is long ᾱ instead of η.

		marketplace	**house**	*endings*
sing.	Nom./Voc.	ἀγορά	οἰκία	-ᾱ
	Gen.	ἀγορᾶς	οἰκίας	-ᾱς
	Dat.	ἀγορᾷ	οἰκίᾳ	-ᾳ
	Acc.	ἀγοράν	οἰκίαν	-ᾱν
plur.	Nom./Voc.	ἀγοραί	οἰκίαι	-αι
	Gen.	ἀγορῶν	οἰκιῶν	-ων
	Dat.	ἀγοραῖς	οἰκίαις	-αις
	Acc.	ἀγοράς	οἰκίας	-ᾱς

Fun fact: The use of η or ᾱ in the singular makes sense with a little historical background. The original vowel was ᾱ, but in the Dark Ages, the ᾱ sound was raised to η in some dialects (the Great Vowel Shift). In Attic Greek, ε, ι and ρ protected the ᾱ from this shift, so nouns with these stems preserve the 'pure' ᾱ.

- A few 1st declension feminine nouns have short ᾰ in the nominative, accusative and vocative singular. Except after ε, ι and ρ, the long ᾱ of the genitive and dative was affected by the Great Vowel Shift: ᾱ > η.

		sea	*endings*
sing.	Nom./Voc.	θάλαττα	-ᾰ
	Gen.	θαλάττης	-ης
	Dat.	θαλάττῃ	-ῃ
	Acc.	θάλατταν	-ᾰν
plur.	Nom./Voc.	θάλατται	-αι
	Gen.	θαλαττῶν	-ων
	Dat.	θαλάτταις	-αις
	Acc.	θαλάττας	-ᾱς

Note: final -αι is short for accent purposes (Ch. 1.6).

Exercise 3.3.   Given the nominative sing. form (listed first), add the correct accent to each of the forms below.

1. ἐπιστολή   ἐπιστολη
2. θεά   θεας (gen. sing.)
3. χώρα   χωραι
4. οἰκία   οἰκιων
5. Μοῦσα   Μουσαν
6. κώμη   κωμης

Exercise 3.4.   Using the models provided above, decline the following in all cases, singular and plural.

1. μάχη, μάχης, ἡ
2. στρατιά, στρατιᾶς, ἡ
3. δόξα, δόξης, ἡ

Exercise 3.5.   Identify the case and number of each noun and give its common use (Ch. 3.1).

1. κῶμαι
2. τιμῇ
3. οἰκιῶν
4. θάλατταν
5. ἀγορᾶς
6. θεάς

5. 2nd declension nouns

Most nouns of the 2nd declension are masculine or neuter; there are a few feminine nouns that use the same endings as the masculine. Masculine nouns have an **o** sound in all forms except the vocative singular; neuter nouns have a short ᾰ in the nominative and accusative plural. Here are the paradigms for the masculine noun θεός, 'god' and the neuter noun δῶρον, 'gift.'

		god m.	**gift** n.	*endings* m.	n.
sing.	Nom.	θεός	δῶρον	-ος	-ον
	Gen.	θεοῦ	δώρου	-ου	-ου
	Dat.	θεῷ	δώρῳ	-ῳ	-ῳ
	Acc.	θεόν	δῶρον	-ον	-ον
	Voc.	θεέ	δῶρον	-ε	-ον
plur.	Nom./Voc.	θεοί	δῶρα	-οι	-ᾰ
	Gen.	θεῶν	δώρων	-ων	-ων
	Dat.	θεοῖς	δώροις	-οις	-οις
	Acc.	θεούς	δῶρα	-ους	-ᾰ

Note: final -οι is short for accent purposes (Ch. 1.6).

EXERCISE 3.6.   Identify the case of the underlined words only and translate them into Greek; do not try to translate 'the.'

1. The house <u>of the foreigner</u>.
2. I pursue <u>the horses</u>.
3. <u>The man</u> has wisdom.
4. <u>Children</u>, be quiet!
5. I sacrifice <u>to the goddesses</u>.

EXERCISE 3.7.   Given the nominative singular form (listed first), add the correct accent to each of the forms below.

1. ποταμός   ποταμους
2. ἔργον   ἐργων
3. τέκνον   τεκνα
4. ἵππος   ιππου
5. δῶρον   δωροις
6. πόλεμος   πολεμου

EXERCISE 3.8.   Using the models provided above, decline the following in all cases, singular and plural.

1. βάρβαρος, -ου, ὁ
2. ἔργον, -ου, τό

6. Subject–verb agreement

Subjects and verbs agree in number: a singular subject requires a singular verb, and a plural subject requires a plural verb. There is one exception to this rule: neuter plural subjects take a singular verb.

τέκνον ἵππους λύει.
    A child releases horses.

τέκνα ἵππους λύει.
    Children release horses.

7. Conjunctions and connection

Unlike verbs and nouns, conjunctions have only one form. Greek uses *coordinating conjunctions* (words like 'and,' 'but,' 'or') just as English does, to connect words, phrases and clauses within a sentence. These conjunctions *always connect items with the same function* (e.g., 2 subjects, 2 verbs, 2 direct objects):

The man speaks and writes	2 verbs: speaks + writes
The earth and the river are beautiful	2 subjects: earth + river

In Greek, whole sentences are also frequently linked by a conjunction (connector), to show how the new matter is related to what went before. The most common conjunctions are:

- coming first in its phrase, clause or sentence

καί	and
ἀλλά	but
ἤ	or

- coming second in its phrase, clause or sentence (*postpositive*)

δέ	and, but
γάρ	for, because

Some conjunctions can be repeated:

καί … καί	both … and
ἤ … ἤ	either … or

**You will learn the Greek for 'the' in Chapter 4. For Exercises 3.9, 3.11 and 3.12, you may add 'the' into your English translation where you need it.*

EXERCISE 3.9.   In the following sentences, list the two items being connected and their function; then translate each sentence into English.

> *Example:* θεῷ καὶ θεᾷ θύσει.
>
> θεῷ + θεᾷ: indirect objects
> He will sacrifice to (the) god and (the) goddess.

1. δῶρα ἀνθρώπῳ καὶ τέκνοις πέμπομεν.
2. ξένος θύει ἀλλὰ φίλος τιμὴν διώκει.
3. ἀγορὰν ἢ οἰκίας σώσετε;
4. τέκνον ἵππους λύει, ἄνθρωποι δὲ παύουσιν.

EXERCISE 3.10.   Identify the case of the underlined words only and translate them into Greek; do not try to translate 'the.'

1. I will send a gift <u>to the child</u>.
2. He is teaching <u>the foreigners</u>.
3. <u>The child</u> stopped the war.
4. The foreigners have <u>horses</u>.
5. <u>The god's</u> wisdom teaches men.

8. Reading skills

Unlike English, which uses *word order* to indicate the function of a word, Greek uses *word endings*. Readers of English understand the first noun as the subject and the noun that follows the verb as the direct object. However, in Greek the first noun may not be the subject and the direct object often comes before the verb.

Paying close attention to endings will help you to anticipate what comes next in a sentence. If you see a nominative singular noun, for instance, you should expect a 3rd singular verb (**-ει**); if that verb means 'pursue,' you should expect a direct object in the accusative. Because conjunctions connect items with the same function, you should also be able to predict what form is coming next when you see a phrase such as ἄνθρωπος καὶ _____ (another nominative). Practicing these skills will improve your ability to read Greek enormously.

EXERCISE 3.11.   Identify the case and number of each noun, and the person, number and tense of each verb. Remember that the nominative case marks the subject of the verb and the accusative marks the object; then translate into English.

1. θεοὶ καὶ θεαὶ ἀνθρώπους διδάσκουσιν.
2. ἄνθρωπος φίλῳ γράψει.
3. τέκνα πείθεις.
4. θεᾷ ἢ θεῷ θύσετε;
5. τέκνα ἵππους φίλων λύει.
6. ὦ θεοί, ἀγορὰν σώσετε;
7. φίλοι ξένου στρατεύουσιν.
8. καὶ ἵππους καὶ ἀνθρώπους διώξει.

EXERCISE 3.12.   In the following sentences, use your knowledge of verb and noun endings, vocabulary, and how conjunctions work to fill in the blank with the form needed to complete each sentence. Make sure to add the accent. *After* filling in the blank, translate the sentence into English.

Example: θεοὶ ἀγορ____ λύσουσιν.   θεοὶ ἀγορὰν λύσουσιν.
                                                                        (The) gods will destroy (the)
                                                                        marketplace.

1. θεὸς καὶ θε_____ κώμην σῴζουσιν.
2. καὶ φίλοι καὶ ξεν_____ θεοῖς θύουσιν.
3. τέκνον παύομεν, ἄνθρωπ_____ δὲ πείθομεν.
4. ὦ φιλ_____ , τιμὴν διώκεις;
5. ξένος τέκνα διδάσκει καὶ πειθ_____ .

Chapter 3 Vocabulary (18)

Nouns:

ἀγορά, ἀγορᾶς, ἡ	marketplace, agora
ἄνθρωπος, ἀνθρώπου, ὁ	man (human being), person
δῶρον, δώρου, τό	gift
ἔργον, ἔργου, τό	work, deed
θάλαττα, θαλάττης, ἡ	sea
θεός, θεοῦ, ὁ	god
θεά, θεᾶς, ἡ	goddess
ἵππος, ἵππου, ὁ	horse
κώμη, κώμης, ἡ	village
ξένος, ξένου, ὁ	guest-friend; foreigner, stranger
οἰκία, οἰκίας, ἡ	house
τέκνον, τέκνου, τό	child
τιμή, τιμῆς, ἡ	honor
φίλος, φίλου, ὁ	friend

Conjunctions:

ἀλλά	but, however
δέ (*postpos.*)	and, but
ἤ	or
ἤ ... ἤ	either ... or
καί	and
καί ... καί	both ... and

Exclamation:

ὦ	O! (*need not be translated when used with the vocative*)

CHAPTER 4

1. The article

The *definite article* in Greek corresponds to English 'the.' There is no indefinite article ('a,' 'an') in Greek.

The article exists in all three genders, so that it can agree with any noun. It has the same *case, number* and *gender* as the noun it modifies. This is called *agreement*. The masculine and neuter forms of the article have 2nd declension endings, and the feminine has 1st declension endings:

	singular			*plural*		
	m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
Nom.	ὁ	ἡ	τό	οἱ	αἱ	τά
Gen.	τοῦ	τῆς	τοῦ	τῶν	τῶν	τῶν
Dat.	τῷ	τῇ	τῷ	τοῖς	ταῖς	τοῖς
Acc.	τόν	τήν	τό	τούς	τάς	τά

The article in Greek has several uses. Two common ones are:

- to indicate particular / specific persons, places, or things (as in English)

    <u>ὁ</u> ἵππος   *the* horse

- to indicate possession, when the context makes it clear who the possessor is and no emphasis is intended

    ὁ ἄνθρωπος <u>τοὺς</u> ἵππους λύει.   The man releases *his* horses.

Exercise 4.1.   For each noun, write the correct form of the article.

1. οἰκία
2. ὁδοῦ
3. δῶρα
4. ποταμῷ
5. θεούς
6. νήσοις
7. τέκνον
8. ἀγοράς

2. Masculine nouns of the 1st declension

Most nouns of the 1st declension are feminine (Ch. 3.4), but a few are masculine. The nominative singular ending is -**ης** (-**ᾱς** after **ε**, **ι**, or **ρ**), and the genitive ending is -**ου**. Otherwise they have regular 1st declension endings.

		citizen	**young man**	*endings*	
sing.	Nom.	πολίτης	νεανίας	-ης	-ᾱς
	Gen.	πολίτου	νεανίου	-ου	-ου
	Dat.	πολίτῃ	νεανίᾳ	-ῃ	-ᾳ
	Acc.	πολίτην	νεανίαν	-ην	-ᾱν
	Voc.	πολῖτα	νεανία	-ᾰ	-ᾱ
plur.	Nom./Voc.	πολῖται	νεανίαι	-αι	-αι
	Gen.	πολιτῶν	νεανιῶν	-ων	-ων
	Dat.	πολίταις	νεανίαις	-αις	-αις
	Acc.	πολίτας	νεανίας	-ᾱς	-ᾱς

Fun fact: Masculine nouns with the ending -**της** are agents (practitioners) derived from a related noun or verb (ὁ πολίτης from πόλις, 'city'). This suffix is also found on proper names (ὁ Σωκράτης, 'Socrates').

Exercise 4.2.   Using the related word in parentheses, guess the meaning of the following agent nouns.

Example: ὁ στρατιώτης: (στρατιά, 'army'): soldier

1. ὁ κριτής   (κρίνω, 'judge')
2. ὁ κλέπτης   (κλέπτω, 'steal')
3. ὁ ναύτης   (ναῦς, 'ship')
4. ὁ κωμήτης   (κώμη, 'village')
5. ὁ μαθητής   (ἔμαθον, 'I learned')
6. ὁ ποιητής   (ποιέω, 'make')
7. ὁ προδότης   (προδίδωμι 'betray')
8. ὁ εὐεργέτης   (εὐ, 'well' + ἔργον, 'work')

3. Adverbs

Like conjunctions, *adverbs* are not declined. They give information about time, place, manner or degree, and answer questions such as when?, where?, how?. Adverbs modify verbs, adjectives, or other adverbs, but never nouns. An adverb typically stands just before the word it modifies. Some common adverbs are:

ἀεί	always	νῦν	now
καί	also, too; even	οὐ	not

καί usually functions as a conjunction (Ch. 3.7), but it can also be used as an adverb, meaning 'also,' 'too'; 'even.' The context will help you tell the difference; if καί is not *connecting items with the same function*, it is an adverb.

οὐ normally has no accent because it is a *proclitic* (Ch. 1.6), but it is accented οὔ before a punctuation mark.

4. Prepositions

Like adverbs, *prepositions* are not declined. As in English, they never appear alone, but are used with a noun (or pronoun) in a particular case to form a *prepositional phrase*. Prepositional phrases often function like adverbs, giving information about the action of the verb. The phrases in this chapter all function that way; you will learn a second function in Ch. 6.2.

Some prepositions take only one case; others take more than one case, and have a different meaning with each. The dictionary entry for a preposition gives these details.

5. Prepositional phrases indicating place and direction

When a preposition indicates place or direction, Greek uses the genitive, dative and accusative cases in a consistent way. The genitive case typically describes motion *out of* or *away from*; the dative, *place where*; and the accusative, motion *into* or *toward*.

⟵▪	Genitive	motion away	*from the city*
▪	Dative	place where	*in the city*
⟶▪	Accusative	motion toward	*to the city*

Gen.	ἐκ τῆς χώρας	*out of* the country
Gen.	ἀπὸ τῆς οἰκίας	*away from* a house
Dat.	ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ	*in* the country
Dat.	πρὸς τῷ ποταμῷ	*near* the river
Acc.	εἰς τὸν ποταμόν	*into* the river
Acc.	πρὸς τὸν ποταμόν	*toward* the river

Notice that some prepositions are *proclitic* (Ch. 1.6) and have no accent.

EXERCISE 4.3.   In the following sentences, put parentheses around any prepositional phrases; then translate the sentence.

1.   τὰ τέκνα ἐκ τῆς οἰκίας πέμψομεν;
2.   εἰς τὴν νῆσον τὸν ξένον νῦν διώκουσιν.
3.   ὁ νεανίας καὶ ἐν τῇ ὁδῷ θύει;
4.   καὶ τοὺς ἀνθρώπους καὶ τοὺς ἵππους πρὸς τῷ ποταμῷ ἀεὶ παύετε.
5.   τοὺς ξένους ἀπὸ τῆς χώρας οὐ διώκεις.

EXERCISE 4.4.   In the following sentences, use your knowledge of verb and noun endings, prepositions, vocabulary, and how conjunctions work to fill in the blank with the form needed to complete each sentence. Make sure to add the accent. *After* filling in the blank, translate the sentence.

1.   οἱ στρατιῶται εἰς τὴν ὁδ____ τοὺς ἵππους διωκ____.
2.   ἐκ τ____ χώρας τὸν πολιτ____ πέμψετε.
3.   τὰ τέκνα διδάξομεν, τοὺς δὲ νεανι____ οὔ.
4.   πρὸς τὴν νησ____ τοὺς φίλους πέμπει.

6. Dative of means

So far, you have seen the dative used as an indirect object / recipient (Ch. 3.1) and as the object of a preposition (Ch. 4.5). The dative without a preposition can indicate the *means* or *instrument* by which something is done.

τοῖς ἔργοις βλάπτεις τὴν χώραν.
> You are harming the country *with your deeds.*

τὸν ξένον δώροις πείθει;
> Does he persuade his guest-friend *by means of gifts*?

EXERCISE 4.5.   Translate into English.

1.   τοὺς νεανίας ἀπὸ τῆς κώμης νῦν πέμπεις.
2.   τοὺς ἀνθρώπους πρὸς τὸν ποταμὸν διώξομεν.
3.   πρὸς τῇ οἰκίᾳ τοὺς φίλους παύετε.
4.   ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ διδάσκει καὶ τοὺς φίλους καὶ τοὺς ξένους.
5.   ἔργοις τοὺς πολίτας πείσω, οὐ λόγοις.
6.   οὐκ οἱ Πέρσαι ἀλλὰ οἱ στρατιῶται στρατεύουσιν.
7.   τὰ τέκνα τοὺς ἵππους παύσει ἢ λύσει;
8.   ἐν ταῖς Ἀθήναις τῇ θεᾷ ἀεὶ θύομεν.

Exercise 4.6.   Translate into Greek.

1.   Is the stranger persuading the citizens with reason?
2.   Even young men always pursue honor.
3.   We are sending the gifts to the island.
4.   Young man, will you write a speech?

Chapter 4 Vocabulary (20)

Nouns:

Ἀθῆναι, Ἀθηνῶν, αἱ	Athens
λόγος, λόγου, ὁ	word, speech; reason
νεανίας, νεανίου, ὁ	young man
νῆσος, νήσου, ἡ	island
ὁδός, ὁδοῦ, ἡ	road, way, path
Πέρσης, Πέρσου, ὁ	a Persian
πολίτης, πολίτου, ὁ	citizen
ποταμός, ποταμοῦ, ὁ	river
στρατιώτης, στρατιώτου, ὁ	soldier
χώρα, χώρας, ἡ	land, place, country

Article:

ὁ, ἡ, τό	the

Adverbs:

ἀεί	always
καί	also, too; even
νῦν	now
οὐ	not *(used for all statements and questions except deliberative question – Ch. 20)*

οὐκ *before a smooth breathing*
οὐχ *before a rough breathing*
οὔ *before a punctuation mark*

Prepositions:

ἀπό	(+ *gen.*)	away from, from
εἰς	(+ *acc.*)	into, onto
ἐκ	(+ *gen.*)	out of, from
ἐξ *before a vowel*		
ἐν	(+ *dat.*)	in, on; (*pl.*) among
πρός	(+ *gen.*)	from; on the side of, in favor of
	(+ *dat.*)	near, at; in addition to
	(+ *acc.*)	to, toward; in relation to

1. Aspect in the imperfect and aorist indicative

Greek distinguishes aspect (Ch. 2.1) in past indicative forms. Like the present, the imperfect tense is formed from the 1st principal part, whose stem indicates an incomplete action (interruptible). The aorist tense is built on the 3rd principal part, whose stem indicates an action viewed as a whole (uninterruptible). We make the same distinction in English:

imperfect	aorist
I *was going* to the store.	I *went* to the store.
You *were watching* a movie when I called.	He *watched* the movie.

2. Imperfect active indicative of thematic verbs (1st principal part)

The marker for a past tense indicative is an *augment* on the beginning of the stem; some books call this a *temporal augment*. For verbs beginning with a consonant, the augment is the letter **ε**. The imperfect indicative has the thematic vowel and past tense endings added to the present stem.

augment – present stem – thematic vowel + endings

		(**stem παυ-**)		*thematic vowel + endings*
sing.	1st	ἔπαυον	I was stopping	-ον
	2nd	ἔπαυες	you were stopping	-ες
	3rd	ἔπαυε(ν)	he / she / it was stopping	-ε(ν)
plur.	1st	ἐπαύομεν	we were stopping	-ομεν
	2nd	ἐπαύετε	you were stopping	-ετε
	3rd	ἔπαυον	they were stopping	-ον

The imperfect can refer to repeated or attempted actions, because they are both viewed as interruptible. In English, we translate the imperfect indicative in several ways: 'I was going,' 'he kept going,' 'we tried to go,' 'they began to go.'

ὁ ἄνθρωπος <u>ἐδίωκε</u> τὸν ἵππον.
    The man *was pursuing* the horse.

οἱ ξένοι ἀεὶ <u>ἔθυον</u> τῇ θεᾷ.
    The foreigners always *used to offer sacrifices* to the goddess.

τὸ τέκνον <u>ἔπειθε</u> τὸν φίλον.
    The child *tried to persuade* his friend.

EXERCISE 5.1.   Transform each of the following present tense verbs into the imperfect; then translate the imperfect form in two different ways.

Example: πέμπεις: ἔπεμπες   'you were sending'; 'you used to send'

1. γράφω
2. βλάπτομεν
3. λείπεις
4. διώκουσι
5. λέγει
6. σῴζετε

3. Aorist active indicative of thematic verbs (3rd principal part)

The aorist tense in Greek is formed from the 3rd principal part, whose stem indicates a completed action viewed as a whole (Ch. 2.2, 5.1). Like all past tense indicatives, the aorist has an augment. To find the aorist stem of a verb, drop the augment and the personal ending from the 3rd principal part.

Greek verbs form the aorist in one of two ways.

1st aorist: The regular marker for verbs with a 1st aorist is **-σα**. The vowel **ᾰ** replaces the thematic vowel, except in the 3rd singular (**ε**).

augment – aorist stem – endings

		(stem παυσ-)		*endings*
sing.	1st	ἔπαυσα	I stopped	-ᾰ
	2nd	ἔπαυσας	you stopped	-ᾰς
	3rd	ἔπαυσε(ν)	he / she / it stopped	-ε(ν)
plur.	1st	ἐπαύσαμεν	we stopped	-ᾰμεν
	2nd	ἐπαύσατε	you stopped	-ᾰτε
	3rd	ἔπαυσαν	they stopped	-ᾰν

2nd aorist: Verbs with a 2nd aorist have the thematic vowel and the same personal endings as the imperfect, but the stem is different. This means you need to look carefully at the verb stem to identify the tense. For comparison, here are the imperfect and aorist forms of λείπω, 'leave':

		imperfect	**aorist**
		(stem λειπ-)	**(stem λιπ-)**
sing.	1st	ἔλειπον	ἔλιπον
	2nd	ἔλειπες	ἔλιπες
	3rd	ἔλειπε(ν)	ἔλιπε(ν)
plur.	1st	ἐλείπομεν	ἐλίπομεν
	2nd	ἐλείπετε	ἐλίπετε
	3rd	ἔλειπον	ἔλιπον

In English we translate the aorist indicative as a simple past tense: 'I learned,' 'he went.'

τοὺς νεανίας ἔλιπεν ἐν τῇ νήσῳ.
   He left the young men on the island.

τοὺς ἵππους ἐλύσαμεν.
   We released the horses.

EXERCISE 5.2.   Identify each of the following forms as imperfect or aorist; then translate.

1. ἐπίστευσας
2. ἔλιπε
3. ἐλέγετε
4. ἐστράτευες
5. ἐφυλάττομεν
6. ἔβλαψαν

4. The verbs βασιλεύω and πιστεύω

Some verbs take an object in the genitive or dative, instead of a direct object in the accusative. Verbs that take the genitive or the dative are always so noted in the chapter vocabulary.

- βασιλεύω 'rule,' 'be king' and other verbs of ruling take the genitive:

  τῆς χώρας βασιλεύει.
  He rules / is king of the country.

- πιστεύω 'trust,' 'believe' takes the dative:

  πιστεύουσι τῇ θεᾷ.
  They trust the goddess.

EXERCISE 5.3.   In the following sentences, fill in the blank with the form needed. Add the accent. *After* filling in the blank, translate the sentence.

1. μετὰ τὸν πόλεμον οἱ στρατηγ_____ ἐφυγ_____;
2. τὴν κώμην φυλάξομεν, τὴν δὲ νησ_____ οὔ.
3. πρὸς τὸν στρατιωτ_____ τὰ ὁπλ_____ πέμπω.
4. οἱ Πέρσαι τ_____ χωρ_____ ἀεὶ ἐβασιλευ_____ .

5. Interrogative pronoun

A pronoun takes the place of a noun. The interrogative pronoun τίς, τί, 'who?' 'what?' asks a question; its accent is always acute, never grave. This pronoun has 3rd declension endings; alternate 2nd declension forms in the genitive and dative singular are given in the Reference Morphology. (You will learn 3rd declension nouns beginning in Ch. 7).

		who?	**what?**	*endings*	
		m./f.	n.	m./f.	n.
sing.	Nom.	τίς	τί	—	—
	Gen.	τίνος	τίνος	-ος	-ος
	Dat.	τίνι	τίνι	-ι	-ι
	Acc.	τίνα	τί	-α	—
plur.	Nom.	τίνες	τίνα	-ες	-ᾰ
	Gen.	τίνων	τίνων	-ων	-ων
	Dat.	τίσι(ν)	τίσι(ν)	-σι(ν)	-σι(ν)
	Acc.	τίνας	τίνα	-ᾰς	-ᾰ

Note: When ν is followed by σ, as originally in the dative plural above, the ν drops out. The -ν in parentheses at the end of the dative plural is a *nu movable* (Ch. 2.4); it appears when the next word begins with a vowel, or when a punctuation mark follows.

Exercise 5.4.   Identify the case and function of the interrogative pronoun; then translate each sentence.

1. τίς τὰ ἔργα ἔλεξεν;
2. τίνι πιστεύσεις;
3. τί γράφεις;
4. τίνα ξένοι πείθουσιν;
5. τίνων κώμην βλάπτομεν;
6. τίνας ὁ στρατηγὸς διώκει;

6. More uses of the article

You have already learned some uses of the article (Ch. 4.1). Sometimes Greek uses the article where English does not; in these situations it is not translated.

- with proper names:
  ἐστρατεύσαμεν πρὸς <u>τὰς Ἀθήνας</u>.   We marched to *Athens*.

- with abstract nouns:
  <u>τὴν τιμὴν</u> διώκεις;   Do you pursue *honor*?

- with nouns denoting a class or type:
  <u>οἱ στρατηγοὶ</u> οὐ φεύγουσιν.   *Generals* do not flee.

Exercise 5.5.   Translate into English.

1. τί πράττετε πρὸς τῷ ποταμῷ;
2. ὁ νεανίας τῷ θεῷ νῦν πιστεύσει;
3. ὁ στρατηγὸς μετὰ τῶν στρατιωτῶν πρὸς τὰς Ἀθήνας στρατεύει.
4. διὰ τῆς ἀγορᾶς καὶ τοὺς ἀνθρώπους καὶ τοὺς ἵππους ἔπεμψας.
5. τίνες εἰς τὴν ὁδὸν τοὺς ἵππους διώκουσιν;
6. τίς ἐν τοῖς Πέρσαις νῦν βασιλεύει;
7. τὴν τιμὴν ἀεὶ ἐδίωκον, καὶ οὐκ ἀπὸ τοῦ θανάτου ἔφευγον.
8. τὰ τέκνα καὶ ἐν τῇ νήσῳ εὖ ἔπραξεν.

Exercise 5.6.   Translate into Greek.

1. Did you (pl.) leave the horses in the road?
2. Both the strangers and their friends were fleeing.
3. Did you fare badly because of the war?
4. The goddess kept saving the lives of the soldiers near the sea.

Chapter 5 Vocabulary (18)

Verbs:

βασιλεύω, βασιλεύσω, ἐβασίλευσα (+ *gen.*)	rule, be king (of)
λέγω, λέξω, ἔλεξα / εἶπον	say, speak, tell
λείπω, λείψω, ἔλιπον	leave, leave behind
πιστεύω, πιστεύσω, ἐπίστευσα (+ *dat.*)	trust, believe
πράττω, πράξω, ἔπραξα	do; make; manage; act
εὖ πράττω	fare well, do well; manage well
κακῶς πράττω	fare badly, do badly; manage badly
φεύγω, φεύξομαι, ἔφυγον	flee, avoid, escape
φυλάττω, φυλάξω, ἐφύλαξα	guard; keep watch

Nouns:

βίος, βίου, ὁ	life
ἡμέρα, ἡμέρας, ἡ	day
θάνατος, θανάτου, ὁ	death
πόλεμος, πολέμου, ὁ	war
στρατηγός, στρατηγοῦ, ὁ	general

Pronoun:

τίς, τί	who?, what?

Adverbs:

εὖ	well
κακῶς	badly

Prepositions:

διά	(+ *gen.*)	through
	(+ *acc.*)	because of, on account of
μετά	(+ *gen.*)	with
	(+ *acc.*)	after
περί	(+ *gen.*)	about, concerning
	(+ *acc.*)	around

1. **1st and 2nd declension adjectives**
2. **Attributive position**
3. **Predicate position**
4. **Enclitics**
5. **Indefinite pronoun**
6. **The conjunctions τε, οὔτε, μέν ... δέ**
7. **Partitive genitive (genitive of the whole)**

1. 1st and 2nd declension adjectives

Adjectives modify nouns and, like the article (Ch. 4.1), *agree* with the noun in *case*, *number* and *gender*. The masculine and neuter forms of most adjectives have 2nd declension endings (Ch. 3.5). The feminine forms have 1st declension endings (Ch. 3.4).

The position of an adjective accent has to be learned by looking at the nominative singular masculine form. Adjective accents are *persistent*, like noun accents (Ch. 3.3). The accent on the feminine genitive plural does not follow the pattern of 1st declension nouns, but instead matches the masculine and neuter.

As with nouns, the vocative has the same form as the nominative, except in the masculine singular.

		wise			**just**		
		m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
sing.	Nom.	σοφός	σοφή	σοφόν	δίκαιος	δικαία	δίκαιον
	Gen.	σοφοῦ	σοφῆς	σοφοῦ	δικαίου	δικαίας	δικαίου
	Dat.	σοφῷ	σοφῇ	σοφῷ	δικαίῳ	δικαίᾳ	δικαίῳ
	Acc.	σοφόν	σοφήν	σοφόν	δίκαιον	δικαίαν	δίκαιον
	Voc.	σοφέ	σοφή	σοφόν	δίκαιε	δικαία	δίκαιον
plur.	Nom./Voc.	σοφοί	σοφαί	σοφά	δίκαιοι	δίκαιαι	δίκαια
	Gen.	σοφῶν	σοφῶν	σοφῶν	δικαίων	δικαίων	δικαίων
	Dat.	σοφοῖς	σοφαῖς	σοφοῖς	δικαίοις	δικαίαις	δικαίοις
	Acc.	σοφούς	σοφάς	σοφά	δικαίους	δικαίας	δίκαια

Fun fact: Changing the feminine genitive plural to match the masculine and neuter forms is an example of *paradigmatic leveling*. This tendency to simplify a paradigm happens in English too: the Old English plural in **-n** is still used in a few words (e.g. 'oxen,' 'children'), but has mostly been replaced by the more common **-s** plural ('eyen' became 'eyes').

2. Attributive position

When a noun with an article is modified, the adjective regularly appears between the article and the noun, just as in English:

ὁ σοφὸς ἄνθρωπος   *the wise* man

Less commonly, the adjective follows the noun, with the article repeated:

ὁ ἄνθρωπος ὁ σοφός   *the wise* man

These are both called the *attributive* position. Notice that in each variation, the adjective immediately follows the article.

Other words and phrases can also modify nouns and also appear in the *attributive* position:

- *Genitive noun*. A genitive noun modifies another noun, just as an adjective does. If the modified noun has an article, the genitive appears in the attributive position. A common use of the genitive is to indicate *possession* (Ch. 3.1).

    ὁ τοῦ στρατηγοῦ ἵππος

    ὁ ἵππος ὁ τοῦ στρατηγοῦ
        the horse *of the general* / the *general's* horse

- *Prepositional phrase*. Ch. 4.4 introduced prepositional phrases that function like adverbs. When a prepositional phrase functions like an adjective, it appears in the attributive position.

    τοὺς ἐν τῇ νήσῳ ἵππους

    τοὺς ἵππους τοὺς ἐν τῇ νήσῳ
        the horses *on the island*

If the modified noun does not have an article, an adjective can stand either before or after the noun; a genitive noun modifier usually comes after it.

    σοφὸς ἄνθρωπος
    ἄνθρωπος σοφός
        a wise man
    ἵππος τοῦ στρατηγοῦ
        a horse of the general / the general's horse

If the noun does not have an article, a prepositional phrase in the sentence will be adverbial.

<div style="text-align:center">

ἵπποι <u>ἐν τῇ νήσῳ</u> εὖ πράττουσιν.   adverbial
Horses do well on the island.

<u>οἱ ἐν τῇ νήσῳ ἵπποι</u> εὖ πράττουσιν.   adjectival
The horses on the island do well.

</div>

3. Predicate position

An adjective that does *not* follow the article is in the *predicate* position. When you see this construction, the verb 'be' is understood, creating a complete sentence.

ὁ ἄνθρωπος σοφός.   The man (is) wise.

σοφοὶ οἱ ἄνθρωποι.   The men (are) wise.

Nouns can also be in the predicate position. Because the verb 'be' states an equality or equivalency, the predicate noun, like a predicate adjective, is in the same case as the subject. Typically only the subject will have an article.

ὁ ἄνθρωπος ἀδελφός.   The man (is) a brother.

ἀδελφὸς ὁ ἄνθρωπος.   The man (is) a brother.

EXERCISE 6.1.   Identify the position of the modifier (attributive, predicate or no article); then translate each phrase.

1. ἡ θεὰ μακρά   5. βίος μακρός
2. καλὸν τὸ ἔργον   6. ὁ πόλεμος χαλεπός
3. οἱ ἵπποι οἱ ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ   7. αἱ τῶν ἀδελφῶν οἰκίαι
4. ἡ τοῦ ἀνθρώπου τιμή   8. ὁ μετὰ τῶν φίλων στρατηγός

EXERCISE 6.2.   For each underlined adjective indicate whether the Greek adjective would be in the attributive or predicate position.

1. The <u>good</u> sailor is in the house.   4. The road was <u>dangerous</u>.
2. The man is <u>friendly</u> to foreigners.   5. Is the child <u>tall</u>?
3. The people admire the <u>wise</u> poet.   6. We walked on an <u>easy</u> path.

EXERCISE 6.3.   Fill in the blank with the form needed to complete each phrase. Make sure to add the accent where needed. *After* filling in the blank, translate the phrase. Remember, the position of the adjective will determine if you have a complete sentence or not.

1. τ_____ μακρ_____ ποταμοῦ   4. τ___ τέκνα δικαι_____
2. ἡ κωμ_____ μικρ_____   5. διὰ τὴν χαλεπ_____ ὁδ___
3. οἱ ἐν τ_____ Ἀθην_____ πολῖται   6. τῆς ἡμερ_____ τῆς ἀγαθ___

4. Enclitics

An *enclitic* (from ἐν, 'on' + κλίνω, 'lean') is a word that has no accent of its own (Ch. 1.6). Instead, it leans on the previous word for its accent, so it can never be the first word of a clause or sentence.

Enclitics can be one or two syllables long, so for accent purposes the effect is like adding one or two syllables to the previous word, with the following results:

- word accented on the antepenult – extra accent on the ultima:

  πόλεμός τις   πόλεμός ἐστι

- word with circumflex accent on the penult – extra accent on the ultima:

  δῶρόν τι   δῶρόν ἐστι

- word with acute accent on the penult – no change for one-syllable enclitic; accent on second syllable of two-syllable enclitic:

  λόγος τις   λόγος ἐστί, λόγων τινῶν

- word accented on the ultima – no change:

  σοφός τις   σοφός ἐστι

The following flow chart is handy for reference.

For a phrase with: regular **W**ord – **E**nclitic

	examples
Does **W** have an accent on its Ultima? → yes → Do nothing. You're done.	σοφός ἐστι σοφοῦ τινος
no ↓	
Does **W** have an acute on its Penult? → yes → Accent the 2nd syllable of **E** if there is one.	λόγος ἐστί
no ↓	
Accent the last syllable of **W**	πόλεμός ἐστι δῶρόν ἐστι
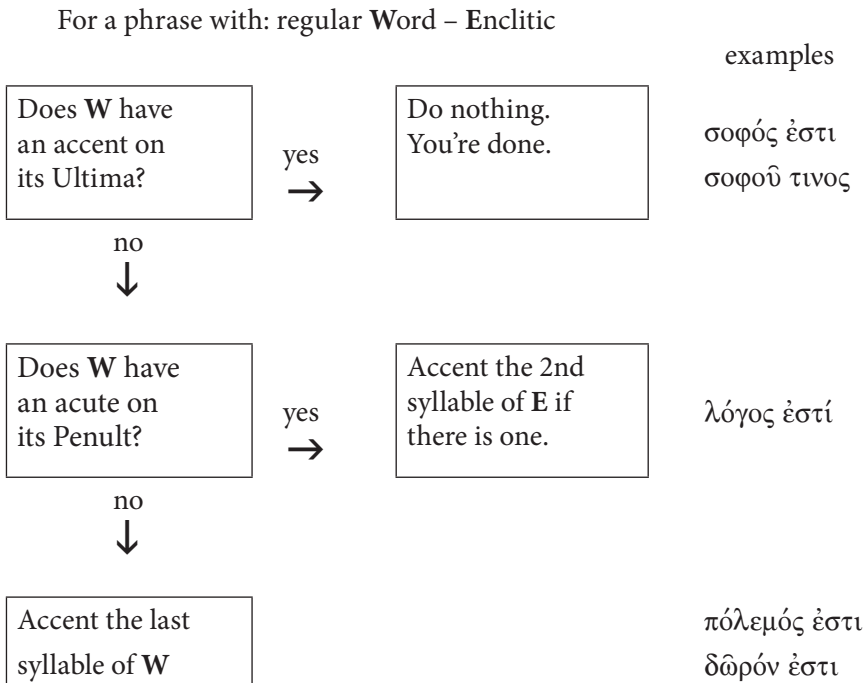
5. Indefinite pronoun

The indefinite pronoun τις, τι ('someone,' 'something,' 'anyone,' 'anything') has the same forms as the interrogative pronoun (Ch. 5.5), except that, like many indefinite words, it is enclitic (Ch. 6.4). By convention, acute accents are shown in paradigms on the ultima of two-syllable enclitic forms; the accent would only be used if the previous word had an acute accent on the penult. (Alternate 2nd declension forms in the genitive and dative singular are given in the Reference Morphology.)

		someone	**something**
		m./f.	n.
sing.	Nom.	τις	τι
	Gen.	τινός	τινός
	Dat.	τινί	τινί
	Acc.	τινά	τι
plur.	Nom.	τινές	τινά
	Gen.	τινῶν	τινῶν
	Dat.	τισί(ν)	τισί(ν)
	Acc.	τινάς	τινά

Exercise 6.4.   Identify the underlined pronoun as *interrogative* or *indefinite*; then translate.

1. <u>τίνι</u> πιστεύσετε;
2. ἐλύσαμέν <u>τινας</u>.
3. <u>τίνες</u> ἐκ τῆς οἰκίας ἔφυγον;
4. ἐκ τῆς οἰκίας <u>τινὲς</u> φεύγουσιν;
5. I stop <u>someone</u>.
6. <u>Whom</u> did they stop?
7. He is doing <u>something</u>.
8. <u>To whom</u> will you write?

6. The conjunctions τε, οὔτε, μέν ... δέ

- τε, 'and' is an enclitic conjunction often paired with καί. Just as καί can be repeated (Ch. 3.7), τε can be repeated or paired with καί to mean 'both ... and.' Because τε is enclitic, it is often postpositive (Ch. 3.7), but sometimes it stands right before καί.

  Here are four ways to say the same thing in Greek:

  <u>καὶ</u> οἱ βάρβαροι <u>καὶ</u> οἱ πολῖται

  οἵ <u>τε</u> βάρβαροι οἵ <u>τε</u> πολῖται

  οἵ <u>τε</u> βάρβαροι <u>καὶ</u> οἱ πολῖται

  οἱ βάρβαροι <u>τε καὶ</u> οἱ πολῖται

  '*both* the foreigners *and* the citizens'

- οὔτε, a combination of οὐ and τε, can be repeated to mean 'neither ... nor.'

    <u>οὔτε</u> οἱ πολῖται <u>οὔτε</u> οἱ στρατιῶται ἔφυγον.
      Neither the citizens *nor* the soldiers fled.

- μέν is a common postpositive conjunction and is usually paired with δέ (or ἀλλά) to connect and contrast parallel words, phrases or clauses. μέν *is not translated* but functions as a signpost word, signaling that δέ will follow. Like other coordinating conjunctions, μέν and δέ connect words or phrases that have the same function (Ch. 3.7). Each conjunction is typically second in its phrase.

    οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι τοὺς βαρβάρους <u>διώκουσι μέν</u>, <u>βλάπτουσι δὲ οὔ</u>.
      The Athenians *pursue* the foreigners, but *do not hurt* (them).

    <u>τοὺς μὲν ξένους</u> λείπομεν, <u>τοὺς δὲ ἵππους</u> σῴζομεν.
      We are leaving *the foreigners*, and saving *the horses*.

    <u>ἐν μὲν τῇ ἀγορᾷ</u> διδάσκεις, <u>ἐν δὲ τῇ οἰκίᾳ</u> οὔ.
      You teach *in the agora*, but not *in the house*.

7. Partitive genitive (genitive of the whole)

So far you have seen the genitive of possession (Ch. 3.1, 6.2) and the genitive as the object of a preposition (Ch. 4.5). The genitive case may also denote the whole of which a part is mentioned. We use the same construction in English: 'the biggest of the animals,' 'many of the men,' 'part of the city.' Unlike other genitive noun modifiers, the partitive genitive appears in the predicate position.

<u>τῶν ἀνθρώπων</u> τινές   some *of the men*

τί <u>τῶν δώρων</u>   which *of the gifts*?

EXERCISE 6.5.   Translate into English.

1. τοὺς μὲν νεανίας λόγοις ἐπείσαμεν, τὰ δὲ τέκνα δώροις.
2. καὶ γὰρ αἱ πρὸς ταῖς Ἀθήναις κῶμαι μικραί.
3. οἱ μακροὶ ξένοι τε καὶ τὰ μικρὰ τέκνα εὖ πράττουσιν.
4. τίνι λέξομεν;
5. τῆς μὲν νήσου βασιλεύουσιν οἱ Πέρσαι, τῆς δὲ χώρας οὔ.
6. οὔτε τοῖς στρατιώταις οὔτε τοῖς στρατηγοῖς πιστεύομεν· τοὺς γὰρ Ἀθηναίους οὐκ ἔσωσαν.
7. τί περὶ τοῦ μακροῦ λόγου εἶπεν;
8. οἱ βάρβαροί τινας τῶν πολιτῶν ἔβλαπτον.

EXERCISE 6.6.   Translate into Greek.

1. Did you write anything to your wise brother?
2. We left our village and marched from the country.
3. Does the general speak beautiful words to the citizens?
4. What did the foreigner keep doing?

Chapter 6 Vocabulary (18)

Nouns:

ἀδελφός, ἀδελφοῦ, ὁ	brother
βάρβαρος, βαρβάρου, ὁ	foreigner
ὅπλον, ὅπλου, τό	weapon; tool (*usually pl.*)

Pronoun:

τις, τι (*encl.*)	someone, something; anyone, anything

Adjectives:

ἀγαθός, ἀγαθή, ἀγαθόν	good, brave
Ἀθηναῖος, Ἀθηναία, Ἀθηναῖον	Athenian
δίκαιος, δικαία, δίκαιον	just
κακός, κακή, κακόν	bad, evil; cowardly
καλός, καλή, καλόν	beautiful, noble, fine
μακρός, μακρά, μακρόν	long, tall
μικρός, μικρά, μικρόν	small, little, short
σοφός, σοφή, σοφόν	wise
χαλεπός, χαλεπή, χαλεπόν	difficult; dangerous; harsh

Conjunctions:

γάρ (*postpos.*)	for, because
καὶ γάρ	for in fact
μέν (*postpos.*)	(*paired with* δέ *to indicate contrast; not translated*)
οὐδέ	and not, but not; nor; not even
οὔτε ... οὔτε	neither ... nor
τε (*encl.*)	and
τε ... καί	both ... and
τε ... τε	both ... and

1. **3rd declension nouns**
2. **Present and imperfect indicative of εἰμί, 'be'**
3. **Dative of possession**
4. **The augment for thematic verbs beginning with vowels**
5. **Elision**
6. **The article with adjectives**
7. **The article with other parts of speech**

1. 3rd declension nouns

The stem of most 3rd declension nouns ends in a consonant. There is one set of endings for masculine and feminine nouns, and one set for neuter nouns. These are the same endings you learned for the interrogative (Ch. 5.5) and indefinite (Ch. 6.5) pronouns.

		m./f.	n.
sing.	Nom.	-ς or none	—
	Gen.	-ος	-ος
	Dat.	-ῐ	-ῐ
	Acc.	-ᾰ	as nom.
plur.	Nom./Voc.	-ες	-ᾰ
	Gen.	-ων	-ων
	Dat.	-σῐ(ν)	-σῐ(ν)
	Acc.	-ᾰς	as nom.

Note: In the singular the vocative is sometimes the same as the nominative, and sometimes different.

The following paradigms are typical of 3rd declension nouns. The genitive singular (not the nominative singular) shows you the stem of the noun (Ch. 3.2). Since the dative plural and sometimes the nominative singular endings start with **σ**, the rules you learned for consonant combinations with **σ** apply here (κήρυκ-σι > κήρυξι, Ch. 2.6; ἡγεμόν-σι > ἡγεμόσι, Ch. 5.5).

			herald		guide		water
sing.	Nom.	ὁ	κῆρυξ	ὁ	ἡγεμών	τὸ	ὕδωρ
	Gen.		κήρυκος		ἡγεμόνος		ὕδατος
	Dat.		κήρυκι		ἡγεμόνι		ὕδατι
	Acc.		κήρυκα		ἡγεμόνα		ὕδωρ
	Voc.		κῆρυξ		ἡγεμόν		ὕδωρ
plur.	Nom./Voc.		κήρυκες		ἡγεμόνες		ὕδατα
	Gen.		κηρύκων		ἡγεμόνων		ὑδάτων
	Dat.		κήρυξι(ν)		ἡγεμόσι(ν)		ὕδασι(ν)
	Acc.		κήρυκας		ἡγεμόνας		ὕδατα

EXERCISE 7.1.   Identify the following nouns by case, number and gender. If the ending is ambiguous, include all possibilities.

1. ὀνόματος
2. ἡγεμόνι
3. πράγματα
4. φύλακα
5. Ἑλλήνων
6. πατρίδας

EXERCISE 7.2.   Using your knowledge of consonant combinations, transform the following genitive singular forms into dative plurals.

Example: ὀνόματος: ὀνόμασι(ν)

1. πράγματος
2. πατρίδος
3. κήρυκος
4. φύλακος
5. ὕδατος
6. Ἕλληνος

2. Present and imperfect indicative of εἰμί, 'be'

The verb εἰμί, 'be' is an *athematic* verb in Greek (Ch. 2.1, 17.1); it does not have the thematic vowel. It is also irregular, as this verb is in many languages. The imperfect is the only past tense of εἰμί.

The present indicative of εἰμί is enclitic, except in the 2nd singular, which has an accent.

		present		imperfect	
sing.	1st	εἰμί	I am	ἦ / ἦν	I was
	2nd	εἶ	you are	ἦσθα	you were
	3rd	ἐστί(ν)	he / she / it is	ἦν	he / she / it was
plur.	1st	ἐσμέν	we are	ἦμεν	we were
	2nd	ἐστέ	you are	ἦτε	you were
	3rd	εἰσί(ν)	they are	ἦσαν	they were

- The verb 'be' often links or equates the subject with a noun or adjective in the nominative case that describes the subject (*predicate nominative*). In this construction it is called a *linking verb*.

ὁ πόλεμος μακρὸς ἦν.	The war was long.
ἡ ἡμέρα καλή ἐστιν.	The day is beautiful.
ὁ ἵππος δῶρόν ἐστιν.	The horse is a gift.

- The verb 'be' can also mean 'exist.' When it does, there is no predicate nominative.

βάρβαρός ἐστιν ἐν τῇ οἰκίᾳ.	There is a foreigner in the house. A foreigner is in the house.

If the sense is emphatic, the verb has an accent on the penult, and may come first in the sentence or clause.

ἔστι τιμή.	There *is* honor. Honor *does* exist.

Exercise 7.3.   Translate into Greek. Think about the position of enclitics and how they are accented (Ch. 6.4).

1. You (pl.) are just.
2. He is a Greek.
3. Is the guide wise?
4. The circumstances are bad.
5. You are a foreigner.
6. There is no water!

3. Dative of possession

You have already learned that Greek can indicate possession in more than one way:

- genitive of possession (Ch. 3.1, 6.2)

- unemphatic possession using the article (Ch. 4.1)

Greek also uses a *dative of possession* with the verb εἰμί. In this construction, the possessor is in the dative, and the thing possessed is the subject of the verb:

ἵπποι εἰσὶ τῷ στρατηγῷ.	The general has horses.
τῷ νεανίᾳ ὁ ἵππος ἦν.	The young man had the horse.

The difference between the genitive and dative constructions is that the genitive focuses on the possessor, while the dative emphasizes the fact of possession:

ὁ τοῦ στρατηγοῦ ἵππος καλός.	The general's horse is beautiful.
τῷ στρατηγῷ ἵππος καλός ἐστιν.	The general has a beautiful horse.

Exercise 7.4.   In each of the following sentences, identify the possessor; then translate.

1. τῷ ἀδελφῷ καλὸν ὄνομά ἐστιν.
2. δικαίαν πατρίδα οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔχουσιν.
3. ὅπλα χαλεπὰ τοῖς Πέρσαις ἦν.
4. ὁ τοῦ κήρυκος φίλος σοφὸς ἦν.

4. The augment for thematic verbs beginning with vowels

Verb stems that begin with a vowel are augmented by lengthening the vowel (unless it is already long). For the diphthongs ει and οι, the first vowel is lengthened and the iota is written as a subscript:

α > η	ι > ῑ	ο > ω	ει > ῃ
ε > η	υ > ῡ	ω > ω	οι > ῳ
η > η			

present	future	aorist
ἄγω	ἄξω	ἤγαγον
ὀνομάζω	ὀνομάσω	ὠνόμασα

Exercise 7.5.   Transform each of the present tense forms into the imperfect and aorist; then translate the aorist form.

Example: λαμβάνει: ἐλάμβανε   ἔλαβε   he / she / it took

1. ὀνομάζεις
2. λείπομεν
3. φεύγει
4. ἄγω
5. φέρετε
6. λέγουσι (2 aorists)

5. Elision

A short vowel at the end of a word may be *elided* (cut off) when the next word begins with a vowel. An apostrophe replaces the elided vowel. A stop before the apostrophe will become aspirated if the next word has a rough breathing (Ch. 1.3).

ἀπὸ ἀγορᾶς	>	ἀπ᾽ ἀγορᾶς
ἀπὸ ὁδοῦ	>	ἀφ᾽ ὁδοῦ
ἀλλὰ ὁ ξένος	>	ἀλλ᾽ ὁ ξένος

Exercise 7.6.   Write the following phrases without the elision.

Example: ἡ δ᾽ οἰκία: ἡ δὲ οἰκία

1. δι᾽ οἰκίας
2. ἀλλ᾽ ἄγομεν
3. οὔθ᾽ ὁ ἄνθρωπος οὔτε τὰ τέκνα
4. μετ᾽ ἀγαθῶν

6. The article with adjectives

The article in Greek can be used with adjectives and other parts of speech to create a noun or noun phrase. The gender and number of the article indicate whether a person (people) or thing (things) should be understood; sometimes the context will suggest a specific noun. As always, the case of the article shows what the phrase is doing in the sentence.

οἱ σοφοί	the wise (men)
ἡ σοφή	the wise woman
τὰ κακά	(the) bad things
<u>οἱ σοφοὶ</u> τοῖς θεοῖς θύουσιν.	*The wise* sacrifice to the gods. *Wise men / people* sacrifice to the gods.
ἔσωσα <u>τὸν δίκαιον</u>.	I saved *the just man*.
φεύγομεν <u>ἀπὸ τῶν κακῶν</u>.	We flee from (*the*) *bad people / things*.

EXERCISE 7.7.   Translate the following.

1. τὰ χαλεπὰ φεύγουσιν.
2. τίς τῶν Ἀθηναίων βασιλεύει;
3. ἡ σοφή ἐστι μακρά.
4. ὁ μικρὸς εὖ λέγει.
5. μετὰ τῆς δικαίας θύετε.
6. τοὺς ἀγαθοὺς ἄγομεν.

7. The article with other parts of speech

- with an *adverb*:

<u>οἱ νῦν</u> δίκαιοί εἰσιν.	*The people of today* are just. *People nowadays* are just.
λέγομεν τὰ <u>τῶν τότ'</u> ἔργα.	We tell the deeds *of the men of that time*.

- with a *prepositional phrase*:

<u>ὁ ἐν ταῖς Ἀθήναις</u> καλὰ γράφει.	*The man in Athens* is writing beautiful things.
λέξει <u>τὰ περὶ τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ</u>.	He will tell *the things about his brother*.

- with a *possessive genitive noun*:

  a **neuter article** indicates the affair/condition/power/possession of _____

<u>τῷ τοῦ ἡγεμόνος</u> πιστεύω.	I trust *the power of the leader*.
<u>τὰ τοῦ στρατηγοῦ</u> φέρω.	I am carrying *the general's things*.

  a **masculine or feminine article** often indicates a dependent-superior relationship, e.g., child-parent

<u>τοὺς τοῦ στρατηγοῦ</u> φεύγομεν.	We flee *the general's men*.
<u>τὸν τοῦ Ξενοφῶντος</u> διδάσκω.	I am teaching *Xenophon's son*.
<u>αἱ τῶν Ἀθηνῶν</u> δίκαιαι.	*The women of Athens* are just.

Exercise 7.8.   Translate each phrase.

1. αἱ ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ
2. τὰ νῦν
3. τὸ τῆς κώμης
4. οἱ τοῦ πατρὸς
5. ὁ πρὸς τῇ ὁδῷ
6. τὰ τῆς πατρίδος

Exercise 7.9.   Translate into English.

1. ὕδωρ ἀπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἤνεγκες ἀλλ᾽ ἐλίπομεν.
2. τοῖς βαρβάροις πιστεύομεν· οὔτε γὰρ πολέμιοί εἰσιν οὔτε χαλεποί.
3. ἔστι τιμὴ ἐν τοῖς σοφοῖς.
4. οἱ τότε Ἕλληνες τοὺς Πέρσας βαρβάρους ὠνόμαζον.
5. τὸν βίον εὖ ἄγομεν, οὐδὲ τὸν θάνατον φεύγομεν.
6. ἵππος τις ὀνόματι Φύλαξ πρὸς τὴν ἀγορὰν τὰ δῶρα ἤνεγκεν.
7. τὰ ὅπλα ἔλαβόν τινες ἀπὸ τῶν πολεμίων;
8. ταῖς σὺν τῷ στρατηγῷ καλὸν ὄνομα ἦν.

Exercise 7.10.   Translate into Greek.

1. Because of their noble death the Greeks had fame.
2. Who has the gifts? (*translate 2 ways*)
3. For in fact, the road was both long and difficult.
4. Some of the children in Athens are tall.

Reading: Prometheus (Apollodorus, adapted)

Prometheus helps the human race and gets in trouble with Zeus.

Προμηθεὺς μὲν ἐξ ὕδατος καὶ γῆς ἀνθρώπους χερσὶν ἔπλασε καὶ
ἔδωκεν ἀνθρώποις καὶ πῦρ. Ζεὺς δὲ τὸ πῦρ ἔλαβε καὶ Προμηθέα
ἐκόλασεν.

Vocabulary:

γῆ, γῆς, ἡ	earth	Προμηθεύς, ὁ	Prometheus
δίδωμι, *aor.* ἔδωκε	give	Προμηθέα (*acc.*)	
Ζεύς, ὁ	Zeus	πῦρ, -ός, τό	fire
κολάζω	punish	χερσίν (*dat. pl.*)	hands
πλάσσω, *aor.* ἔπλασα	form, mold		

Chapter 7 Vocabulary (18)

Verbs:

ἄγω, ἄξω, ἤγαγον	lead, bring
εἰμί, ἔσομαι (*present encl. except 2 sg.*; *impf.* ἦν)	be
ἔχω, ἕξω / σχήσω, ἔσχον (*impf.* εἶχον)	have
λαμβάνω, λήψομαι, ἔλαβον	take, seize; receive
ὀνομάζω, ὀνομάσω, ὠνόμασα	name, call by name; call X (an) X (+ *2 acc.*)
φέρω, οἴσω, ἤνεγκον	carry, bear, bring

Nouns:

Ἕλλην, Ἕλληνος, ὁ	a Greek
ἡγεμών, ἡγεμόνος, ὁ	leader, guide
κῆρυξ, κήρυκος, ὁ	herald
ὄνομα, ὀνόματος, τό	name; fame
ὀνόματι	by name
πατρίς, πατρίδος, ἡ	fatherland, country
πρᾶγμα, πράγματος, τό	thing, matter, act; (*pl.*) circumstances, affairs; trouble
ὕδωρ, ὕδατος, τό	water
φύλαξ, φύλακος, ὁ	guard; watchman

Adjective:

πολέμιος, πολεμία, πολέμιον	hostile
οἱ πολέμιοι	the enemy

Adverbs:

οὖν (*postpos.*)	so, therefore; in fact
τότε	then, at that time

Preposition:

σύν (+ *dat.*)	with

1. **The adjective πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν**
2. **Adjectives of mixed declension**
3. **More on μέν ... δέ**
4. **The infinitive**
5. **Active infinitive of thematic verbs and εἰμί**
6. **Complementary infinitive**
7. **οἷός τέ εἰμι**
8. **Objective infinitive (indirect command)**

1. The adjective πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν

The adjective πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν ('each,' 'every'; 'all') has 3rd declension masculine and neuter endings, and 1st declension feminine endings.

<table>
<tr><td></td><td></td><td colspan="3" align="center">**each, every; (*pl.*) all**</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td></td><td align="center">m.</td><td align="center">f.</td><td align="center">n.</td></tr>
<tr><td>*sing.*</td><td>Nom./Voc.</td><td>πᾶς</td><td>πᾶσα</td><td>πᾶν</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>Gen.</td><td>παντός</td><td>πάσης</td><td>παντός</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>Dat.</td><td>παντί</td><td>πάσῃ</td><td>παντί</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>Acc.</td><td>πάντα</td><td>πᾶσαν</td><td>πᾶν</td></tr>
<tr><td>*plur.*</td><td>Nom./Voc.</td><td>πάντες</td><td>πᾶσαι</td><td>πάντα</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>Gen.</td><td>πάντων</td><td>πασῶν</td><td>πάντων</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>Dat.</td><td>πᾶσι(ν)</td><td>πάσαις</td><td>πᾶσι(ν)</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>Acc.</td><td>πάντας</td><td>πάσας</td><td>πάντα</td></tr>
</table>

Note: In the dative plural, both **ν** and **τ** drop out before the **σ** (Ch. 2.6, Ch. 5.5), and the vowel is lengthened to compensate (*compensatory lengthening*). The same is true of nouns with stems in -**ντ**, like ἄρχων (*αρχοντσι > ἄρχουσι).

The meaning of this adjective changes depending on its *position relative to the article*, so look carefully before you translate.

- Attributive

  <u>ἡ πᾶσα</u> χώρα   *the entire* country
  <u>οἱ πάντες</u> πολῖται   *the whole (body of)* citizens

- Predicate

  <u>πᾶσα</u> ἡ χώρα   *all the* country
  οἱ πολῖται <u>πάντες</u>   *all the* citizens

- No article

  πᾶσα χώρα   every country
  πάντες πολῖται   all citizens

  Note: In predicate position πᾶς emphasizes the noun: 'all his *power*.' In attributive position it emphasizes totality: 'the *whole* empire.' Without the article it generalizes: 'all (conceivable) citizens.'

EXERCISE 8.1.   Identify the position of the πᾶς form (attributive, predicate or no article); then translate each phrase.

1. πᾶσα ἡ νῆσος
2. τὸ πᾶν πρᾶγμα
3. πᾶς πόλεμος
4. πάντες οἱ ἄνθρωποι
5. πᾶν δῶρον
6. ἡ κώμη ἡ πᾶσα
7. αἱ θεαὶ πᾶσαι
8. πᾶς πολίτης

2. Adjectives of mixed declension

Like πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν, some other Greek adjectives have 3rd declension masculine and neuter endings, and 1st declension feminine endings. Among these are τάλας, τάλαινα, τάλαν, 'wretched' (*gen.* τάλανος, ταλαίνης, τάλανος), and the numeral 'one.' The paradigm of μέγας, 'big' has 3rd declension endings only in the masculine and neuter nominative and accusative singular (see below). The full paradigms of μέγας and τάλας are given in the Reference Morphology.

	one			**big**		
	m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
Nom.	εἷς	μία	ἕν	μέγας	μεγάλη	μέγα
Gen.	ἑνός	μίας	ἑνός	μεγάλου	μεγάλης	μεγάλου
Dat.	ἑνί	μίᾳ	ἑνί	μεγάλῳ	μεγάλῃ	μεγάλῳ
Acc.	ἕνα	μίαν	ἕν	μέγαν	μεγάλην	μέγα
Voc.				μεγάλε	μεγάλη	μέγα

3. More on μέν ... δέ

You have already seen that μέν ... δέ connect and contrast parallel words, phrases or clauses (Ch. 6.6). If one clause has an article + noun and the other has only an article, the μέν and δέ are connecting two sets of the same noun.

> <u>οἱ μὲν στρατιῶται</u> ἐδίωκον, <u>οἱ δὲ</u> ἔφευγον.
>> *Some soldiers* were pursuing, *but others* (= other soldiers) were fleeing.

When combined with the article alone, μέν ... δέ mean 'this one ... that one,' 'one ... another / the other,' 'some ... others.' The gender and number of the article indicate whether a person (people) or thing (things) should be understood; sometimes the context will suggest a specific noun. As always, the case of the article shows what the phrase is doing in the sentence.

> <u>ὁ μὲν</u> τοὺς πολίτας πείθει, <u>ὁ δ'</u> οὐκ.
>> *One man* persuades the citizens, *the other* does not.

> <u>τοὺς μὲν</u> ἄγει, <u>τοὺς δὲ</u> λείπει.
>> He brings *some* (*men*), but leaves *others*.

EXERCISE 8.2.   Paying close attention to whether the article has a noun (or adjective) with it, or whether it appears with μέν and δέ only, translate each sentence.

1. οἱ μὲν ἀγαθὰ ἔχουσιν, οἱ δὲ κακά.
2. τῶν ἵππων τοὺς μὲν πρὸς τὴν ἀγορὰν ἠγάγομεν, τοὺς δ' ἐλίπομεν.
3. τὴν μὲν παύετε, τὴν δὲ λύετε.
4. τοῖς μὲν ὁ Πέρσης ἐπίστευσεν, τοῖς δ' οὔ.
5. τῷ μὲν ἀγαθῷ ἡ τιμὴ καὶ φίλοι εἰσίν, τῷ δὲ κακῷ κακὸν ὄνομά ἐστιν.
6. οἱ μὲν εὖ πράξουσιν, οἱ δὲ κακῶς.

4. The infinitive

The *infinitive* is a verbal noun: 'to release,' 'to write.' It is one of two non-finite forms of the Greek verb (Ch. 2.1). The Greek infinitive usually shows aspect, not time (Ch. 2.2):

- The present infinitive indicates incomplete action (interruptible).
- The future infinitive does not show aspect.
- The aorist infinitive indicates an action viewed as a whole (uninterruptible).

The accent on infinitives is *persistent*, like those of nouns and adjectives (Ch. 3.3, 6.1). The negative used with infinitives is usually μή.

This chapter presents two uses of the present and aorist infinitive.

5. Active infinitive of thematic verbs and εἰμί

The accent of the present, future and 1st aorist active infinitive stands on the last syllable of the stem, which is the penult. The accent of the 2nd aorist infinitive stands on the ultima. Paying attention to the position of the accent will help you distinguish the 2nd aorist infinitive from the present.

- The *present* active infinitive of thematic verbs consists of the present stem (1st principal part) + the thematic vowel ε + the ending -εν. The two ε's contract to ει.

παύω	παύειν
γράφω	γράφειν
λείπω	λείπειν

  Present active infinitives of athematic verbs (Ch. 17.2) end in -ναι, so the present infinitive of εἰμί is εἶναι.

- The *future* active infinitive has the same ending as the present infinitive, attached to the future stem.

παύσω	παύσειν
γράψω	γράψειν
πείσω	πείσειν

- The *aorist* infinitive has no augment, because it does not indicate time like the indicative (Ch. 2.2, 5.2-3).

  The 1st aorist active infinitive consists of the aorist stem + αι.

ἔπαυσα	παῦσαι
ἔγραψα	γράψαι

  The 2nd aorist infinitive has the same ending as the present infinitive, attached to the aorist stem. The accent on the ultima helps distinguish it from the present infinitive.

ἔλιπον	λιπεῖν

EXERCISE 8.3.   Write the present, future and aorist infinitives of the following verbs, with the correct accents.

1. βλάπτω
2. σῴζω
3. κινδυνεύω
4. φέρω

6. Complementary infinitive

The *complementary infinitive* is used to *complete the meaning* of certain verbs, such as those of wishing or wanting, being able, and seeming.

ἵππους <u>πέμπειν ἐθέλω</u>.   *I want to send* horses.

<u>ἤθελε</u> πασῶν τῶν νήσων <u>βασιλεύειν</u>.   *He wanted to rule* all the islands.

7. οἷός τέ εἰμι

οἷός τέ εἰμι is a common way to say 'I can / am able' in Greek. It has three components:

οἷος, οἵα, οἷον	pronoun, used as adjective agreeing with the subject, literally 'of such a kind' (Ch. 24)
τε	enclitic conjunction (Ch. 6.6), not translated here
εἰμί	verb, 'be'

οὐχ <u>οἷός τ' ἐστὶ</u> ὕδωρ φέρειν.   *He is not able* to bring water.

Thus 'he is able,' οἷος is singular, and ἐστί is 3rd singular present. The enclitic τε is usually elided to τ' before the vowel of the verb (Ch. 7.5).

οἷοί τ' ἐσμέν	we are able
οἵα τ' ἦν	she was able
οἷός τ' εἶ	you are able

8. Objective infinitive (indirect command)

The *objective infinitive* appears, with its own subject, as the object of verbs with meanings such as 'order,' 'wish,' 'tell.' The *subject of the infinitive* is in the *accusative* case. The negative is μή.

ἐκελεύσαμεν <u>τοὺς ἀδελφοὺς φεύγειν</u>.
    We urged *our brothers to flee* (*keep fleeing*).

πείθομεν <u>τοὺς φύλακας μὴ βλάπτειν τοὺς τάλανας καμήλους</u>.
    We persuade *the guards not to hurt the wretched camels.*

The difference between the complementary and objective uses of the infinitive is that a *complementary* infinitive is part of the main verb, while an *objective infinitive* has its own subject different from that of the main verb.

complementary	ἐθέλω <u>βασιλεύειν</u>.	I want *to rule.*
objective	ἐθέλω <u>τὸν δίκαιον βασιλεύειν</u>.	I want *the just man to rule.*

If a sentence has an infinitive in it, you can expect a main verb of wishing or commanding, or an expression like οἷός τέ εἰμι. If the infinitive has its own subject (in the accusative) the construction is indirect command. Other similar constructions will be introduced later.

Exercise 8.4.   Identify the use of the infinitive as either *complementary* or *objective*; then translate each sentence.

1.   ὁ ἄρχων κελεύει πάντας τοὺς Ἀθηναίους ἐκ τῆς χώρας νῦν φυγεῖν.
2.   οἱ ποιηταὶ τῇ θεᾷ θύειν οὔ ποτ᾿ ἤθελον.
3.   ἔπεισα τοὺς φύλακας μὴ πιστεύειν τῷ στρατηγῷ.
4.   οἷός τ᾿ εἶ βασιλεύειν τῆς Ἑλλάδος;
5.   ἐθέλεις τὸν Ἕλληνα βασιλεύειν;

Exercise 8.5.   Dictionary practice. In the chart below, identify each word based on the dictionary entries given. Be sure to give all possibilities for ambiguous forms.

In the Entry column, write A, B, C, D or E

For **nouns** and **adjectives**: give case, number, and gender

For **verbs**: finite – give person, number, tense, voice (active), and mood (indicative)

infinitive – give tense and voice and identify as infinitive

A.   παίδειος, παιδεία, παίδειον: childish
B.   παιδευτής, παιδευτοῦ, ὁ: instructor
C.   παιδεύω, παιδεύσω, ἐπαίδευσα: teach
D.   παίζω, παίξομαι, ἔπαισα: to play, dance, sing
E.   παῖς, παιδός, ὁ: child, boy

	Entry	Part of Speech	Form ID
Ex. παιδείᾳ	*A*	*adjective*	*dat. sg. f.*
1. παιδευτήν			
2. παιδείοις			
3. ἐπαίδευον			
4. παιδί			
5. παίζειν			
6. παίδειοι			
7. ἔπαισαν			
8. παῖδες			
9. παιδευταῖς			
10. παιδεῦσαι			

Exercise 8.6.   Translate into English.

1. ἐκέλευσα πάντας τὸν μέγαν λέοντα φυγεῖν.
2. ὁ κῆρυξ οὔτε τοῖς τοῦ φύλακος λόγοις ἐπίστευσεν οὔτε λιπεῖν ἠθέλησεν.
3. τὸν σοφὸν ποιητὴν τῶν νεανιῶν τινας τοῖς λόγοις διδάσκειν ἐθέλουσιν.
4. τὰ τῶν Ἀθηνῶν πράγματα εὖ ἐπράξατε, ὦ ἄρχοντες;
5. τίς ποτε οἷός τ᾽ ἐστὶ πάντας πείθειν;
6. ὁ ἡγεμὼν κακὸς ἦν· οὐ γὰρ ἔμελλε τὴν κώμην λαβεῖν.
7. τῇ χώρᾳ τὸ ὄνομά ἐστιν ἡ Ἑλλάς.
8. τοὺς ἵππους τοὺς τάλανας πρὸς τὸ ὕδωρ ἄγειν ἤθελες;
9. τὰ μὲν φέρομεν, τὰ δὲ φέρετε.
10. εἷς πείθει τοὺς ἡγεμόνας τούς τε ξένους καὶ τοὺς βαρβάρους σῶσαι.

Exercise 8.7.   Translate into Greek.

1. Young man, do you want to lead the camel out of the water again?
2. The whole province was big at that time.
3. The general will order the soldiers to march and bring the weapons.
4. One child receives one gift, the other (receives) ten.
5. Who was able to rule the fatherland?

Practice Sentences

1. πάντες γὰρ οἱ τῶν ἐπῶν ποιηταὶ οἱ ἀγαθοὶ οὐκ ἐκ τέχνης   (Plato, adapted)
   ἀλλ᾽ ἐκ τῆς Μούσης τὰ καλὰ λέγουσιν.

2. ἅπαντα τίκτει χθών, πάλιν τε λαμβάνει.   (Euripides)

3. κλέπτης οὐκ οἷός τ᾽ ἐστὶ πάντας ἐκδύειν.   (Demosthenes, adapted)

4. τοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων στρατηγοὺς ἐκέλευσεν   (Xenophon, adapted)
   ὁπλίτας ἀγαγεῖν περὶ τὴν σκηνήν.

Vocabulary:

ἐκδύω	strip away, rob	σκηνή, -ῆς ἡ	tent
ἐπῶν (*gen. pl.*)	epic poetry	τέχνη, -ης, ἡ	skill, art
κλέπτης, -ου ὁ	thief	τίκτω	give birth, produce
Μοῦσα, -ης, ἡ	Muse	χθών, -ονός, ἡ	earth
ὁπλίτης, -ου, ὁ	hoplite		

Chapter 8 Vocabulary (20)

Verbs:

ἄρχω, ἄρξω, ἦρξα (+ *gen.*)	rule, command; begin
ἐθέλω, ἐθελήσω, ἠθέλησα	want, be willing
sometimes written θέλω	
κελεύω, κελεύσω, ἐκέλευσα	order, give an order; urge
μέλλω, μελλήσω, ἐμέλλησα	be likely to (+ *pres. inf.*); intend, delay; be about to (+ *fut. inf.*)
οἷός τέ εἰμι	be able, can

Nouns:

ἀρχή, ἀρχῆς, ἡ	rule; empire, province; beginning
ἄρχων, ἄρχοντος, ὁ	archon, leader, ruler
Ἑλλάς, Ἑλλάδος, ἡ	Greece
κάμηλος, καμήλου, ὁ/ἡ	camel
λέων, λέοντος, ὁ	lion
ποιητής, ποιητοῦ, ὁ	poet

Adjectives:

δέκατος, δεκάτη, δέκατον	tenth
μέγας, μεγάλη, μέγα	big, great; powerful
πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν	all, every, whole
sometimes written ἅπας, ἅπασα, ἅπαν	
τάλας, τάλαινα, τάλαν	wretched, miserable, suffering

Adverbs:

μή	not (*used for all commands, exhortations, and wishes; with most infinitives, etc.*)
πάλιν	back; again
ποτέ (*encl.*)	at some time, ever, in the world

Numerals:

δέκα (*not declinable*)	ten
εἷς, μία, ἕν	one

1. **3rd declension noun variations**
2. **Present active imperative of thematic verbs and εἰμί**
3. **Personal pronouns, 1st and 2nd persons**
4. **Personal pronoun, 3rd person**
5. **αὐτός, adjectival use**
6. **Time expressions**
7. **Accusative of extent of space**
8. **Compounds with οὐ and μή**

1. 3rd declension noun variations

A few 3rd declension nouns vary from the regular pattern in form, accent or both. For example, μήτηρ, 'mother' has an ε/η vowel except in the genitive singular and the dative forms. ἀνήρ, 'man,' has the ε/η vowel only in the nominative and vocative singular. (The δ appears simply because the combination νρ was hard to pronounce without it.)

These nouns tend to have their accent on the last syllable in the genitive and dative, regularly in the singular, less often in the plural. This is also true of most 3rd declension nouns with a stem of one syllable.

			mother		**man**		**woman**		**child**
sing.	Nom.	ἡ	μήτηρ	ὁ	ἀνήρ	ἡ	γυνή	ὁ/ἡ	παῖς
	Gen.		μητρός		ἀνδρός		γυναικός		παιδός
	Dat.		μητρί		ἀνδρί		γυναικί		παιδί
	Acc.		μητέρα		ἄνδρα		γυναῖκα		παῖδα
	Voc.		μῆτερ		ἄνερ		γύναι		παῖ
plur.	Nom./Voc.		μητέρες		ἄνδρες		γυναῖκες		παῖδες
	Gen.		μητέρων		ἀνδρῶν		γυναικῶν		παίδων
	Dat.		μητράσι(ν)		ἀνδράσι(ν)		γυναιξί(ν)		παισί(ν)
	Acc.		μητέρας		ἄνδρας		γυναῖκας		παῖδας

Exercise 9.1.   Identify each of the following by case and number.

1. πατέρα
2. χεῖρες
3. ποσί

4. παῖ
5. νυκτί
6. πυρός

Exercise 9.2.   Fill in the blank with the form needed to complete each phrase. Add the accent. *After* filling in the blank, translate the phrase.

1. τῇ δεκατ___ γυν___
2. τὰς μακρ___ νυκτ___
3. τοῖς πολεμι___ πατρ___

4. παντ___ τὰ πυρ___
5. τῶν τοῦ ἀνδρ___ ποδ___
6. τὴν χειρ___ τὴν τῆς μητ___

2. Present active imperative of thematic verbs and εἰμί

Greek has four moods: indicative, imperative, subjunctive and optative (Ch. 2.1). The indicative verb forms you have learned so far state a fact or ask a simple question. *Imperative* verbs express a command or prohibition, in Greek as in English: 'Sit!,' 'Stay!,' 'Don't touch that!.'

For thematic verbs, the 2nd person of the present imperative is formed by adding **-ε** (singular) or **-ετε** (plural) to the present stem. The imperative singular of εἰμί is irregular.

singular	*plural*	
παῦε	παύετε	stop!
ἄρχε	ἄρχετε	begin! rule!
ἴσθι	ἔστε	be!

Note: The form of the 2nd plural imperative is the same as the indicative. The context usually makes clear which mood is intended.

The person addressed is in the vocative case, usually preceded by ὦ (Ch. 3). The negative is μή.

Tenses of the imperative express aspect, not time. A present imperative expresses a general command or prohibition ('Keep doing that,' 'Don't ever do that'). The aorist imperative will be presented in Ch. 18.3.

<u>φύλαττε</u> τοὺς ἐν τῇ κώμῃ ἵππους, ὦ νεανία.
    Young man, *keep guarding* the horses in the village.

ἀεὶ <u>πιστεύετε</u> τῷ ἡγεμόνι.
    Always *trust* your (pl.) guide.

μὴ κακαὶ <u>ἔστε</u>, ὦ γυναῖκες.
    Do not *be* bad, women.

Exercise 9.3.   Translate each sentence.

1. ὦ Ἀθηναῖοι, πιστεύετε τῷ κήρυκι.
2. μὴ ἴσθι χαλεπὸς τοῖς φίλοις, ὦ πάτερ.
3. Children, pursue justice, not war.
4. Don't take the weapons, guard.

3. Personal pronouns, 1st and 2nd persons

The personal pronouns 'I,' 'we' and 'you, you (*pl.*)' are formed in Greek as follows.

		I	**you**
sing.	Nom.	ἐγώ	σύ
	Gen.	ἐμοῦ / μου	σοῦ / σου
	Dat.	ἐμοί / μοι	σοί / σοι
	Acc.	ἐμέ / με	σέ / σε

		we	**you (*pl.*)**
plur.	Nom.	ἡμεῖς	ὑμεῖς
	Gen.	ἡμῶν	ὑμῶν
	Dat.	ἡμῖν	ὑμῖν
	Acc.	ἡμᾶς	ὑμᾶς

Note: Unlike possessive genitive nouns (Ch. 6.2), the possessive genitive of personal pronouns appears in the predicate position: οἱ ἵπποι ἡμῶν ('our horses').

The forms without accents are enclitic, therefore they can never begin a clause. They are rarely used after a preposition. The accented forms are generally more emphatic. The nominative can be used for extra emphasis, since the verb ending already gives the same information.

unemphatic	*emphatic*
πιστεύει μοι.	ἐμοὶ πιστεύει.
He trusts me.	He trusts *me* [and not you].
τὴν Ἑλλάδα ἔσωσας.	σὺ ἔσωσας τὴν Ἑλλάδα.
You saved Greece.	It was *you* who saved Greece!

4. Personal pronoun, 3rd person

The pronoun αὐτός, 'he, she, it' has regular 1st and 2nd declension endings, except in the nominative and accusative singular neuter, which end in **-o** (like the article). There is no vocative case.

		m.	f.	n.
sing.	Nom.	αὐτός	αὐτή	αὐτό
	Gen.	αὐτοῦ	αὐτῆς	αὐτοῦ
	Dat.	αὐτῷ	αὐτῇ	αὐτῷ
	Acc.	αὐτόν	αὐτήν	αὐτό
plur.	Nom.	αὐτοί	αὐταί	αὐτά
	Gen.	αὐτῶν	αὐτῶν	αὐτῶν
	Dat.	αὐτοῖς	αὐταῖς	αὐτοῖς
	Acc.	αὐτούς	αὐτάς	αὐτά

Only the genitive, dative and accusative cases of αὐτός are used as personal pronouns. The nominative case is used only with an emphatic meaning, discussed in the next section.

> οἱ λόγοι <u>αὐτῆς</u> πείθουσι τοὺς πολίτας.
> > *Her* words persuade the citizens.

> ἔγραφόν τι <u>αὐτῇ</u>.
> > I was writing something *to her*.

> πέμπομεν <u>αὐτοὺς</u> εἰς τὴν ἀγοράν.
> > We send *them* into the marketplace.

Note: As with the 1st and 2nd person pronouns, the possessive genitive of αὐτός appears in predicate position.

5. αὐτός, adjectival use

- 'self': In the predicate position, αὐτός means 'himself, herself,' etc. By itself in the nominative, it modifies a subject understood from the verb ending: 'he himself,' 'she herself,' etc.

  > <u>αὐτὴ</u> ἔχει τὰς καμήλους.
  > > *She herself* has the camels.

  > τοὺς παῖδας πρὸς <u>τὸν ἄρχοντα αὐτὸν</u> πέμψω.
  > > I will send the children to *the archon himself.*

  > καὶ γὰρ <u>αὐτοῖς τοῖς φύλαξι</u> πιστεύομεν.
  > > We trust *the guards themselves.*

- 'same': In the attributive position, αὐτός means 'the same'

    ταῖς αὐταῖς θεαῖς θύομεν.

    > We sacrifice to *the same goddesses*.

    τὸ αὐτὸ ἔλεγεν.

    > He kept saying *the same thing*.

EXERCISE 9.4.   Translate the underlined material only:

1. ὁ αὐτὸς στρατηγὸς κελεύει ἡμᾶς.
2. ἦγον ἵππον τῷ ἀνδρὶ αὐτῷ.
3. ἐκέλευσα αὐτὸν λιπεῖν τὸν ποταμόν.
4. τῇ μητρὶ αὐτοῦ πιστεύετε;
5. We ourselves were friendly.
6. You will lead the same children to the village.
7. He is bringing their weapons.
8. The archons themselves brought justice to the city.

6. Time expressions

The genitive, dative and accusative cases without a preposition are used for different expressions of time.

- The genitive expresses a *range* of time. It indicates the period *within which* something happens:

    στρατιώτας δέκα ἡμερῶν πέμψει.

    > He will send soldiers *within ten days*.

    τῆς νυκτὸς ἔλεγον ἐν τῇ οἰκίᾳ.

    > *During the night* they were speaking in the house.

- The dative expresses a *point* in time. It pinpoints the time *when* something happens:

    ὁ στρατηγὸς ἡμᾶς ἔσωσε τῇ δεκάτῃ ἡμέρᾳ.

    > The general saved us *on the tenth day*.

    τῇ νυκτὶ ἐθύσαμεν τῷ θεῷ.

    > *At night* we sacrificed to the god.

- The accusative expresses *length* of time. It indicates *how long* something lasts:

    δέκα ἡμέρας οἱ πολέμιοι ἔφευγον.

    > The enemy were fleeing *for ten days*.

    τὴν πᾶσαν νύκτα ἐφύλαττες;

    > Were you keeping watch *for the whole night / all night long*?

You can visualize the accusative expression as a *line* along which an event continues; the dative as a *point* pinpointing the moment of an event; and the genitive as a *circle* representing the time within which an event occurs.

Expressions of Time

Accusative

Length of Time
for 10 days

Genitive

Time Within Which
within 10 days /
during the tenth day

Dative ⬤
Time When / Point in Time
on the tenth day
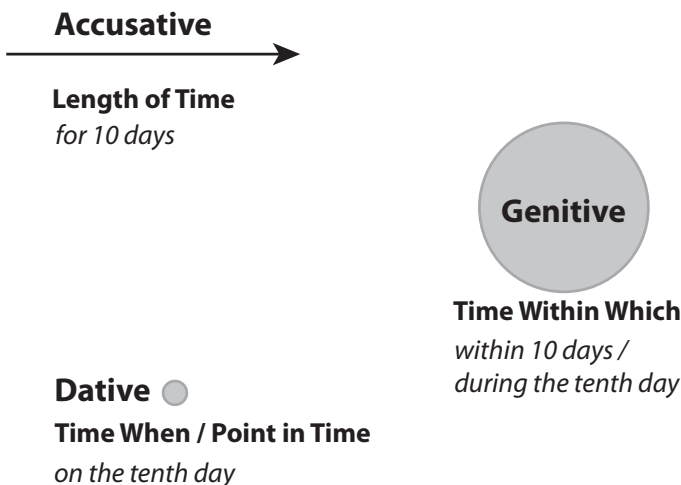
7. Accusative of extent of space

The accusative case without a preposition can express the extent of space over which a motion occurs.

> τοὺς ἵππους <u>δέκα στάδια</u> ἤγαγον.
> They led the horses *ten stades.*

> <u>μακρὰν ὁδὸν</u> ἐστράτευσεν.
> He marched (*along*) *a long road.*
> He marched *a long way.*

Exercise 9.5.   Translate each sentence.
1. ὁ σρατηγὸς ὑμᾶς τὴν πᾶσαν ἡμέραν στρατεύειν ἐκέλευσεν.
2. τίνες τῆς νυκτὸς πρὸς τῷ ποταμῷ ἐφύλαττον;
3. Did you carry the water one stade?
4. On the tenth day the men seized the lion.

8. Compounds with οὐ and μή

The negatives οὐ and μή can appear in a variety of compounds. You have already learned οὔτε … οὔτε, 'neither ... nor' and οὐδέ, 'and not, but not' (Ch. 6). Other common examples include:

οὐ + ποτέ   οὔποτε, 'never'

οὐδέ + εἷς, μία, ἕν   οὐδείς, οὐδεμία, οὐδέν, 'no one, nothing'

Whenever the context calls for μή instead of οὐ, the compound is formed with μή: μήτε, μηδέ, μήποτε, μηδείς.

οὐδείς / μηδείς can appear both as a pronoun and as an adjective:

> οὐδὲν χαλεπόν ἐστιν.
>> Nothing is difficult.

> οὐδεμία γυνὴ ἔθυεν.
>> No woman was sacrificing.

> μηδένα φεύγειν ἐθέλω.
>> I want nobody to flee.

Note: In Greek, multiple negatives cancel each other out if the last one is οὐ or μή.

> οὐδεὶς ὕδωρ οὐκ ἔχει.
>> Everyone has water. (Nobody doesn't have water.)

If the compound comes last, the negatives strengthen each other.

> ὕδωρ οὐκ ἔχει οὐδείς.
>> No one has water.

EXERCISE 9.6.   Translate into English.

1. διὰ τὸν πόλεμον πάντες οἱ σὺν τοῖς ἄρχουσι ὅπλα εἶχον.
2. μέγα πῦρ ἐν τῇ κώμῃ ἡμῶν ἦν· τῆς οὖν νυκτὸς κακῶς ἐπράττομεν.
3. τίς ἐκέλευσεν ὑμᾶς μηδὲν πᾶσαν ἡμέραν πράττειν; οὐδείς.
4. οὔποτε στάδια δέκα μικροῦ χρόνου στρατεύειν ἐμέλλομεν.
5. πάντες τῷ αὐτῷ χρόνῳ φυγεῖν ἦρξαν.
6. οὐδὲ ὁ πατὴρ αὐτὸς οὐχ οἷός τ' ἦν πεῖσαι τὸν παῖδα ὕδωρ τοῖς καμήλοις φέρειν.
7. δέκα ἡμέρας φύλαττε τὰ ἐν τῇ οἰκίᾳ ἄλλα, ὦ στρατιῶτα.
8. οἱ Ἕλληνες αὐτοὶ τοὺς βαρβάρους ἀδελφοὺς ὀνομάζουσιν.
9. σὺ ἐκέλευσας τοὺς παῖδας τὰ δῶρα λιπεῖν;
10. σοφὸς ἴσθι, ὦ νεανία, καὶ πίστευε τοῖς λόγοις αὐτοῦ.

Exercise 9.7.   Translate into Greek.

1. The lion was pursuing us for a long time, but we escaped.
2. I sent one herald to the same country with the women.
3. Nobody can bring the men to Athens again within ten days.
4. The island has a beautiful name. (*Use dative of possession*)
5. For ten days the poets fared badly on the sea.

Reading: Socrates (Plato, adapted)

Two friends discuss Socrates, whom the Athenians put to death.

Ἐχεκράτης
    αὐτός, ὦ Φαίδων, ἦσθα σὺν Σωκράτει τῇ αὐτῇ ἡμέρᾳ ἢ ἄλλου τινὸς
    ἤκουσας;

Φαίδων
    αὐτός, ὦ Ἐχέκρατες.

Ἐχεκράτης
    τί οὖν δὴ εἶπεν ὁ ἀνὴρ πρὸ τοῦ θανάτου; καὶ γὰρ οὔτε τις φίλος
    οὔτε τις ξένος ἡμῖν τὰ πράγματα αὐτοῦ εἶπεν.

Φαίδων
    ἐγώ σοι ἐξ ἀρχῆς πάντα λέξω. ὁ Σωκράτης χρόνον μακρὸν ἦν ἐν τῷ
    δεσμωτηρίῳ μετὰ τὴν δίκην.

Vocabulary:

ἀκούω, ἀκούσω,	hear (from)	Ἐχεκράτης, ὁ	Echecrates
ἤκουσα		Σωκράτης, ὁ	Socrates
δεσμωτήριον, -ου, τό	prison	Σωκράτει (*dat.*)	
δή	indeed	Φαίδων, ὁ	Phaedo

Practice Sentences

1. τί σε μήτηρ ἐν δεκάτῃ ἡμέρᾳ μετὰ τὸ τόκον   (Euripides, adapted)
   ὠνόμαζεν;

2. ἔστι γὰρ ὁ φίλος ἄλλος αὐτός.   (Aristotle)

3. δὶς εἰς τὸν αὐτὸν ποταμὸν οὐκ οἷός τ' εἶ ἐμβαίνειν.   (Plato, adapted)

4. Δημήτηρ δὲ μετὰ λαμπάδων νυκτός τε καὶ ἡμέρας   (Apollodorus)
   κατὰ πᾶσαν τὴν γῆν ... περιῄει.

Vocabulary:

γῆ, γῆς, ἡ	earth	κατά (+ *acc.*)	over
Δημήτηρ, ἡ	Demeter	λαμπάς, -άδος, ἡ	torch
δίς	twice	περιῄει (3 *sg. impf.*)	go around
ἐμβαίνω	step in	τόκος, -ου, ὁ	birth

Chapter 9 Vocabulary (20)

Nouns:

ἀνήρ, ἀνδρός, ὁ	man, husband
γυνή, γυναικός, ἡ	woman, wife
δίκη, δίκης, ἡ	justice; trial, lawsuit; penalty
μήτηρ, μητρός, ἡ	mother
νύξ, νυκτός, ἡ	night
παῖς, παιδός, ὁ/ἡ	child, boy, girl
πατήρ, πατρός, ὁ	father
πούς, ποδός, ὁ	foot
πῦρ, πυρός, τό	fire
στάδιον, σταδίου, τό	stade (*3/5 of a mile*)
χείρ, χειρός, ἡ	hand
χρόνος, χρόνου, ὁ	time

Pronouns:

αὐτός, αὐτή, αὐτό   (*gen.*, *dat.*, *acc.*) him, her, it, them
    adjectival use   (*attributive*) same
                            (*predicate*) (he) himself, *etc.*

ἐγώ, ἡμεῖς   I, we
οὐδείς, οὐδεμία, οὐδέν   nobody, no one, nothing
    μηδείς, μηδεμία, μηδέν   (*when the negative is* μή)
    adjectival use   no, not any
σύ, ὑμεῖς   you, you (*pl.*)

Adjective:
ἄλλος, ἄλλη, ἄλλον   other, another
Adverb:
οὔποτε / μήποτε   never
Conjunctions:
μηδέ   and not, but not; nor; not even
μήτε … μήτε   neither … nor

CHAPTER 10

1. **Dependent clauses**
2. **Adverbial clauses**
3. **Conditions**
   - **Simple conditions**
   - **Contrary to fact conditions**
4. **Contract verbs**
5. **Contract verbs in -εω**
6. **Contract verbs in -αω**
7. **The verb ζάω**
8. **Verbs with two accusatives**

1. Dependent clauses

A *dependent* (*subordinate*) *clause* is one that cannot stand alone as a complete sentence.

dependent clause	*complete sentence*
When he comes to Athens ...	He comes to Athens.
If they release the horses ...	They release the horses.

A dependent clause has its own verb and is often marked by a *subordinating conjunction* (clause marker), which connects the dependent clause to the main clause. Unlike *coordinating conjunctions* (Ch. 3.7), a subordinating conjunction does not connect items with the same function. Dependent clauses can function like adverbs, adjectives or nouns.

2. Adverbial clauses

The dependent clauses in this chapter function like adverbs, adding information about the main verb that answers questions such as 'if,' 'when,' 'why.' They are introduced by a clause marker that carries the adverbial information:

εἰ	if
ἐπεί	since, because; when, after
ὅτι	because
ὅτε	when

Exercise 10.1.   Bracket all dependent clauses in the sentences below.

1. They have peace because the citizens are happy.
2. When we defeat the enemy, the war will end.
3. Did the boys ride the horse after they found him?
4. If the shoe fits, wear it.

Exercise 10.2.   Bracket the dependent clause; then translate each sentence.

1. ὅτε οἱ Ἕλληνες τῆς πατρίδος ἦρχον τὴν εἰρήνην εἴχομεν.
2. πάντες οἱ παῖδες τάλανές εἰσιν ὅτι ὁ πατὴρ ἀποθηνήσκει.
3. ἐπεὶ ὁ ἄρχων μέγας ἦν, οἱ πολῖται χρόνον μακρὸν εὖ ἔπραττον.

3. Conditions

An adverbial clause introduced by εἰ, 'if' is also called a conditional clause; it sets forth the condition under which an action occurs, or might occur. The if-clause (*protasis*) expresses the condition; the main clause (*apodosis*) states the outcome.

> If it rains, we will stay home.

> If you're happy, raise your hand.

The negative in the protasis of any condition is μή; in the apodosis the negative is οὐ or μή depending on the mood of the verb.

There are several types of conditions in Greek. This chapter presents conditions that use only the indicative or imperative (for other types, see Ch. 22.3, 23.3).

- **Simple conditions**

    The most straightforward type of condition is the *simple condition*. It can refer to the present or to the past.

protasis	*apodosis*
εἰ + indicative	indicative (or other)

    εἰ ὁ πατὴρ μὴ ἀγαθός, οἱ παῖδες τάλανές εἰσιν.
      If the father is not good, his children are wretched.

    εἰ ὁ στρατηγὸς σοφὸς ἦν, τῷ ἡγεμόνι οὐκ ἐπίστευσεν.
      If the general was wise, he did not trust the guide.

    εἰ ὁ παῖς φεύγει, μὴ δίωκε αὐτόν.
      If the child flees, do not pursue him.

- **Contrary to fact conditions – ἄν**

    A *contrary to fact condition* describes what might be happening now, but isn't, or what might have happened, but didn't, because the condition was not met. (Some grammars call this an 'unreal condition.')

    > If I were rich (but I'm not), I would be happy (but I'm not).

If it had not rained, I would have gone out.

If I had worked harder, I would be rich now.

A contrary to fact condition can refer to the present or to the past but not to the future (future facts are not yet known). An imperfect verb refers to the present; an aorist, to the past; conditions can be mixed as in the 3rd example below. The negative in the apodosis is οὐ.

The apodosis includes the particle ἄν, which is not translated but is an important signpost, showing that the main clause is a contrary to fact statement or question. ἄν with the indicative marks impossibility.

protasis	*apodosis*
εἰ + indicative (impf. or aor.)	indicative (impf. or aor.) + ἄν

<u>εἰ αὐτῷ συνεβούλευον</u>, εὖ ἂν ἔπραττεν.
> *If I were advising him*, he would be doing well.

<u>εἰ εὖ ἐλέξαμεν</u>, ὑμᾶς ἂν ἐπείσαμεν;
> *If we had spoken well*, would we have persuaded you (pl.)?

εἰρήνη ἡμῖν οὐκ ἂν ἦν, <u>εἰ μὴ ἐλύσαμεν τοὺς Πέρσας</u>.
> We would not have peace, *if we had not destroyed the Persians*.

EXERCISE 10.3. Bracket the dependent clause and identify the kind of condition; then translate each sentence.

1. εἰ τὸν πόδα βλάπτεις, πᾶσαν ἡμέραν πράγματα ἔχεις.
2. εἰ αὐτὸν τῆς νυκτὸς ἐφύλαξα, ἐκ τῆς οἰκίας οὐκ ἂν ἔφυγεν.
3. οἱ πολῖται ἐπίστευον ἂν τοῖς συμμάχοις, εἰ σοφοὶ ἦσαν.
4. εἰ τοῖς θεοῖς ἔθυον, δῶρα ἔπεμπον πρὸς ἐμέ.
5. ἐφύγετε ἂν εἰ ὁ στρατηγὸς αὐτὸς ὑμᾶς μὴ ἔπαυσεν;

4. Contract verbs

Contract verbs are thematic verbs whose present stem ends in a short vowel (α, ε, or ο). The dictionary entry lists the uncontracted form, but the stem vowel contracts with the thematic vowel (Ch. 2.4) in the present and imperfect tenses (1st principal part). This chapter covers contract verbs in -εω and -αω, and the verb ζάω, 'live.' Contract verbs in -οω are uncommon, and will be presented later (Ch. 26.1).

5. Contract verbs in -εω

For the **-εω** contracts, the contractions are:

ε + ε	=	ει		ε + ο	=	ου
ε + ει	=	ει		ε + ου	=	ου
				ε + ω	=	ω

INDICATIVE

		present		**imperfect**	
sing.	1st	φιλῶ	(φιλέ-ω)	ἐφίλουν	(ἐφίλε-ον)
	2nd	φιλεῖς	(φιλέ-εις)	ἐφίλεις	(ἐφίλε-ες)
	3rd	φιλεῖ	(φιλέ-ει)	ἐφίλει	(ἐφίλε-ε)
plur.	1st	φιλοῦμεν	(φιλέ-ομεν)	ἐφιλοῦμεν	(ἐφιλέ-ομεν)
	2nd	φιλεῖτε	(φιλέ-ετε)	ἐφιλεῖτε	(ἐφιλέ-ετε)
	3rd	φιλοῦσι(ν)	(φιλέ-ουσι)	ἐφίλουν	(ἐφίλε-ον)

IMPERATIVE

sing.	2nd	φίλει	(φίλε-ε)
plur.	2nd	φιλεῖτε	(φιλέ-ετε)

INFINITIVE   φιλεῖν   (φιλέ-ε-εν)

> **Note:** The accent is already in place before the contraction occurs. If an accented syllable is contracted, the accent remains on the contracted syllable, and follows the accent rule for its new position.

6. Contract verbs in -αω

For the **-αω** contracts, the contractions are:

$$\alpha + \varepsilon \; = \; \bar{\alpha} \qquad\qquad \alpha + o \; = \; \omega$$
$$\alpha + \varepsilon\iota \; = \; \bar{\alpha} \qquad\qquad \alpha + o\upsilon \; = \; \omega$$
$$\qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad \alpha + \omega \; = \; \omega$$

INDICATIVE

		present		**imperfect**	
sing.	1st	τιμῶ	(τιμά-ω)	ἐτίμων	(ἐτίμα-ον)
	2nd	τιμᾷς	(τιμά-εις)	ἐτίμας	(ἐτίμα-ες)
	3rd	τιμᾷ	(τιμά-ει)	ἐτίμα	(ἐτίμα-ε)
plur.	1st	τιμῶμεν	(τιμά-ομεν)	ἐτιμῶμεν	(ἐτιμά-ομεν)
	2nd	τιμᾶτε	(τιμά-ετε)	ἐτιμᾶτε	(ἐτιμά-ετε)
	3rd	τιμῶσι(ν)	(τιμά-ουσι)	ἐτίμων	(ἐτίμα-ον)

IMPERATIVE

sing.	2nd	τίμα	(τίμα-ε)
plur.	2nd	τιμᾶτε	(τιμά-ετε)

INFINITIVE   τιμᾶν   (τιμά-ε-εν)

> **Fun fact**: There is no iota in τιμᾶν, because **α** contracts with the thematic vowel **ε** before the **ε** contracts with the infinitive ending **-εν** (Ch. 8.5).

7. The verb ζάω

The verb ζάω 'live' is one of a small number of verbs that show **η** instead of **α**.

INDICATIVE

		present	**imperfect**
sing.	1st	ζῶ	ἔζων
	2nd	ζῇς	ἔζης
	3rd	ζῇ	ἔζη
plur.	1st	ζῶμεν	ἔζωμεν
	2nd	ζῆτε	ἔζητε
	3rd	ζῶσι(ν)	ἔζων

IMPERATIVE

sing.	2nd	ζῇ
plur.	2nd	ζῆτε

INFINITIVE   ζῆν

EXERCISE 10.4. Using the chapter vocabulary, identify each verb as indicative (with person, number, and tense) or infinitive (with tense); then translate. Notice that the imperfect of ὁράω, 'see' is ἑώρων.

Example: ποιοῦμεν: 1st plural present; 'we make'

1. ποιεῖτε
2. ὁρᾷς
3. ἔδρων
4. τιμῶμεν
5. δρᾶν
6. ἐφιλοῦμεν
7. ζῆτε
8. ἐκάλει
9. ἑώρα

8. Verbs with two accusatives

In Greek, some verbs can occur with two accusatives in various constructions. English has similar constructions:

>He made me a general.
>
>He made me a cake.

- *Predicate accusative.* When both accusatives refer to the same person or thing (as in 'he made me a general'), the second one is called a *predicate accusative*.

  >τὴν χώραν Ἀθήνας ὠνόμασαν.
  >>They named the place Athens.

  >τὸν ποιητὴν στρατηγὸν ποιοῦμεν.
  >>We are making the poet a general.

- *Internal and external objects.* When the accusatives are unrelated (as in 'he made me a cake'), the *internal* (direct) object is a thing, the *external* is a person. English often expresses the external object with a prepositional phrase.

  >τοὺς παῖδας λόγον διδάσκω.
  >>I teach the children reason.

  >τοὺς συμμάχους ἀγαθὰ ἔλεγεν.
  >>He said good things about the allies.

Exercise 10.5.   Translate into English.

1. ὅτι τὴν γῆν εὖ ποιεῖτε, μεγάλην ἐλπίδα ἔχομεν.
2. καὶ γὰρ οὐδενὸς συμμάχου ἀκούω εἰ οὐκ εὖ λέγει.
3. οἱ Πέρσαι νῦν ἂν ἦρχον τῆς Ἑλλάδος εἰ οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι μὴ αὐτοὺς ἔπαυσαν.
4. οἱ ποιηταὶ αὐτοὶ τὴν γῆν μητέρα ὠνόμασαν.
5. τί τις ὁρᾷ εἰ πῦρ τῇ νυκτὶ ποιοῦμεν;
6. κατὰ γῆν τε καὶ κατὰ θάλατταν εὖ ἔπραττον, καὶ μεγάλα δράσειν ἔμελλον.
7. κατὰ τοὺς ποιητὰς ἡ δίκη καὶ ὁ λόγος πάντων ἐν ἀνδράσι τότ' ἦρχον.
8. ὅτε ὁ τάλας τοὺς παῖδας ἐκάλεσεν, τοὺς λόγους ἤκουσαν.
9. εἰ καὶ ἡ ἐλπὶς καὶ ὁ χρόνος σοί εἰσιν, δρᾶν τι οἷός τ' εἶ.
10. ἐπειδὴ ὁ Ξενοφῶν τινα ἐν τῇ οἰκίᾳ τῆς νυκτὸς εἶδεν, τοὺς φύλακας ἐκάλεσεν.

Exercise 10.6.   Translate into Greek.

1. After the long war some people are living well, others are dying.
2. Because their father treats the children badly, they have a difficult life.
3. If she had another horse, she would have brought it to the marketplace.
4. After they marched ten stades on foot*, we tried to honor every soldier.
   by means of feet
5. If the Greeks want to save their fatherland, they are noble.

Reading: Alcestis' Death (Euripides, adapted)

Queen Alcestis has agreed to die in place of her husband Admetus. Her old nurse tells the Chorus that she is dying.

Χορός
ἡ γυνὴ ζῇ ἢ ἀπέθανε;

Θεράπαινα
καὶ ζῇ καὶ ἀποθνήσκει.

Χορός
πῶς ζῆν καὶ ἀποθνήσκειν οἷά τέ ἐστιν;

Θεράπαινα
τάλαινα καὶ ἀσθενής ἐστιν.

Χορός
ἐλπὶς δ᾽ οὔκ ἐστι σῶσαι βίον;
καὶ νῦν στενάζει Ἄδμητος τοῖς κακοῖς,
εἰ ἀγαθὴ γυνὴ ἀποθνήσκει;

Θεράπαινα
κλαίει τε καὶ γυναῖκα ἐν χερσὶ φίλην ἔχει.

Vocabulary:

Ἄδμητος, -ου, ὁ	Admetus	στενάζω	groan
ἀσθενής, -ές	weak, sickly	τοῖς κακοῖς	for his evils
θεράπαινα, -ης, ἡ	nurse	φίλος, -η, -ον	dear, beloved
κλαίω	weep	χορός, -οῦ, ὁ	chorus
πῶς	how?		

Practice Sentences

1. εἰ θεοί τι δρῶσιν αἰσχρόν, οὔκ εἰσιν θεοί.   (Euripides)

2. ἐν μὲν εἰρήνῃ οἱ παῖδες τοὺς πατέρας θάπτουσι,   (Herodotus, adapted)
   ἐν δὲ τῷ πολέμῳ οἱ πατέρες τοὺς παῖδας.

3. Ὅμηρος Ἕλληνας οὔποτε τοὺς πάντας ἄνδρας   (Thucydides, adapted)
   ὠνόμασεν.

4. μήποτε κακὸν ἄνδρα φίλον ποίει,   (Theognis, adapted)
   ἀλλ᾽ ἀεὶ φεῦγε ὡς κακὸν λιμένα.

Vocabulary:

αἰσχρός, -ά, -όν	shameful	Ὅμηρος, -ου, ὁ	Homer
λιμήν, -ένος, ὁ	harbor	ὡς	like, as

Chapter 10 Vocabulary (20)

Verbs:

ἀκούω, ἀκούσομαι, ἤκουσα	hear, listen to (*usually + gen. person, +* *acc. thing*); hear of
ἀποθνῄσκω, ἀποθανοῦμαι, ἀπέθανον *also* θνῄσκω, θανοῦμαι, ἔθανον	die
δράω, δράσω, ἔδρασα	do, accomplish; act
ζάω, ζήσω, ἔζησα	live
καλέω, καλῶ, ἐκάλεσα	call, summon
ὁράω, ὄψομαι, εἶδον (*stem* ἰδ-) (*impf.* ἑώρων)	see
ποιέω, ποιήσω, ἐποίησα	make, do; treat
εὖ ποιέω	treat well
κακῶς ποιέω	treat badly
τιμάω, τιμήσω, ἐτίμησα	honor
φιλέω, φιλήσω, ἐφίλησα	love, like

Nouns:

γῆ, γῆς, ἡ (*from* γέ-ᾱ)	earth, land (*sg. only*)
εἰρήνη, εἰρήνης, ἡ	peace
ἐλπίς, ἐλπίδος, ἡ	hope, expectation
Ξενοφῶν, Ξενοφῶντος, ὁ	Xenophon
σύμμαχος, συμμάχου, ὁ	ally; allied with (+ *dat.*)

Preposition:

κατά (+ *gen.*)	down from, down upon
(+ *acc.*)	over, down along; according to; against, opposite
κατὰ γῆν	by land
κατὰ θάλατταν	by sea

Conjunctions:

εἰ	if
ἐπεί / ἐπειδή	when, since, after
ὅτε	when
ὅτι	because

Particle:

ἄν (*postpos.*)	(+ *indic.*) *marks impossibility*

1. **3rd declension nouns with stems in -εσ**
2. **3rd declension adjectives**
3. **Future active of liquid and nasal verbs (2nd principal part)**
4. **Aorist active of liquid and nasal verbs (3rd principal part)**
5. **Compound verbs**
6. **Adjectival relative clauses**

1. 3rd declension nouns with stems in -εσ

In nouns of this type, the **σ** drops out between the **ε** vowel of the stem and the vowel of the ending. The vowels then contract, following the same pattern you learned for contract verbs in **-εω** (Ch. 10.5):

ε + ε	=	ει		ε + o	=	ου
ε + ι	=	ει		ε + ω	=	ω
ε + α	=	η; ει (*acc. pl.*)				

Remember that the accent is already in place before the contraction occurs.

Most nouns of this type are neuter, and follow the paradigm of τεῖχος, 'wall.'

The vocative differs from the nominative only in the singular of masculine and feminine nouns.

			wall			**Socrates**	
sing.	Nom.	τὸ	τεῖχος		ὁ	Σωκράτης	
	Gen.		τείχους	(τείχε-ος)		Σωκράτους	
	Dat.		τείχει	(τείχε-ι)		Σωκράτει	
	Acc.		τεῖχος			Σωκράτη	(Σωκράτε-α)
	Voc.		τεῖχος			Σώκρατες	
plur.	Nom./Voc.		τείχη	(τείχε-α)			
	Gen.		τειχῶν	(τειχέ-ων)			
	Dat.		τείχεσι(ν)				
	Acc.		τείχη	(τείχε-α)			

2. 3rd declension adjectives

3rd declension adjectives have the same endings for masculine and feminine. Adjectives like εὐδαίμων, εὔδαιμον follow the pattern of the noun ἡγεμών (Ch. 7.1); the paradigm of εὐδαίμων is given in the Reference Morphology. Adjectives like ἀληθής follow the pattern of -εσ stem nouns in the previous section.

true

		m./f.		n.	
sing.	Nom.	ἀληθής		ἀληθές	
	Gen.	ἀληθοῦς	(ἀληθέ-ος)	ἀληθοῦς	(ἀληθέ-ος)
	Dat.	ἀληθεῖ	(ἀληθέ-ι)	ἀληθεῖ	(ἀληθέ-ι)
	Acc.	ἀληθῆ	(ἀληθέ-α)	ἀληθές	
	Voc.	ἀληθές		ἀληθές	
plur.	Nom./Voc.	ἀληθεῖς	(ἀληθέ-ες)	ἀληθῆ	(ἀληθέ-α)
	Gen.	ἀληθῶν	(ἀληθέ-ων)	ἀληθῶν	(ἀληθέ-ων)
	Dat.	ἀληθέσι(ν)		ἀληθέσι(ν)	
	Acc.	ἀληθεῖς	(ἀληθέ-ας)	ἀληθῆ	(ἀληθέ-α)

EXERCISE 11.1.   Identify each of the following as a noun or adjective, then give case, number and gender. If the ending is ambiguous, include all possibilities.

1. τείχη
2. ἀσφαλῆ
3. ἀληθές
4. ἐτῶν

5. εὐδαίμων
6. Σώκρατες
7. ἔτει
8. ψευδεῖς

3. Future active of liquid and nasal verbs (2nd principal part)

The future of verbs whose stems end in a liquid (λ, ρ) or a nasal (μ, ν) (Ch. 1.3) is conjugated like the present tense of contract verbs in -εω (Ch. 10.5). This means you need to pay close attention to the principal parts to know whether you are seeing a present or future tense. This contracted future is often called the *liquid future*.

remain

sing.	1st	μενῶ	(μενέ-ω)
	2nd	μενεῖς	(μενέ-εις)
	3rd	μενεῖ	(μενέ-ει)
plur.	1st	μενοῦμεν	(μενέ-ομεν)
	2nd	μενεῖτε	(μενέ-ετε)
	3rd	μενοῦσι(ν)	(μενέ-ουσι)

4. Aorist active of liquid and nasal verbs (3rd principal part)

Some verbs whose stems end in a liquid or a nasal have *liquid aorists* as well as liquid futures. The liquid followed by the tense marker -**σ** creates an unacceptable consonant combination: ἔμενσα. The **σ** therefore drops out, and the stem vowel is lengthened to compensate (*compensatory lengthening*). The endings themselves are regular 1st aorist forms.

		remain
sing.	1st	ἔμεινα
	2nd	ἔμεινας
	3rd	ἔμεινε(ν)
plur.	1st	ἐμείναμεν
	2nd	ἐμείνατε
	3rd	ἔμειναν

5. Compound verbs

- **Formation**

  Often a preposition is added to the verb stem as a prefix to form a *compound verb* (ἀποθνήσκω, 'die,' Ch. 10). In past tenses the prefix stands in front of the augment, which is attached to the stem as usual:

ἀποθνήσκω	ἀπέθανον
ἐκπέμπω	ἐξέπεμψα

  These prefixes were originally adverbs, not attached to the verb. Therefore in most finite verb forms the accent does not recede onto the prefix, unless the verb is enclitic.

  εἰσῆγον

  σύνειμι, 'be with'

  Sometimes the spelling of the prefix is affected by the following letter (as with ἐξέπεμψα above):

  prefixes ending in a nasal consonant, like σύν, are affected as follows:

συμ- before a labial (π, β, φ)	συμβουλεύω
συγ- before a velar (κ, γ, χ)	συγγιγνώσκω
συλ- before λ	συλλαμβάνω

  most prepositions ending in a vowel elide the final vowel before another vowel (Ch. 7.5); περί does not:

ἀπάγω	ἀπήγαγον
περιβάλλω	περιέβαλον

- **Meaning**

Sometimes the prefix strengthens the meaning of the simple verb:

λύω	destroy
καταλύω	destroy utterly
φθείρω	destroy
διαφθείρω	destroy (completely)

Sometimes the meaning of the prefix is obvious:

ἄπειμι	be away, be absent	ἐκφεύγω	flee out of
εἰσπέμπω	send into	κατάγω	lead down

Compounds whose meanings are obvious are not included in the chapter vocabularies.

EXERCISE 11.2. Translate each of the following forms (guess where necessary) and give the 1st principal part of the verb.

1. ἀπέκτεινα
2. προσέφερε
3. κατέλυον
4. ἐξεπέμπομεν

5. συνεβούλευσαν
6. ἀπήγαγες
7. εἰσέβαλον
8. συγκαλεῖτε

EXERCISE 11.3. Give the 1st singular imperfect of the following verbs in Greek. Do not translate.

1. ἐξάγω
2. καταπέμπω
3. περιμένω

4. μεταβάλλω
5. διαλέγω
6. συμφέρω

6. Adjectival relative clauses

An adjectival relative clause is a dependent clause that functions like an adjective, modifying a noun in the main clause (its *antecedent*). The dependent clause is introduced by a *relative pronoun*, 'who,' 'which,' 'that.'

The boy *who likes horses* is my son.

I liked the books *that you recommended*.

The relative pronoun in Greek looks like the article in most forms, with a rough breathing instead of the initial τ-. Only the nominative singular masculine is different.

		m.	f.	n.
sing.	Nom.	ὅς	ἥ	ὅ
	Gen.	οὗ	ἧς	οὗ
	Dat.	ᾧ	ᾗ	ᾧ
	Acc.	ὅν	ἥν	ὅ
plur.	Nom.	οἵ	αἵ	ἅ
	Gen.	ὧν	ὧν	ὧν
	Dat.	οἷς	αἷς	οἷς
	Acc.	οὕς	ἅς	ἅ

A relative pronoun *agrees* with its antecedent in *gender* and *number*. However, its *case* depends on its own function in the relative clause.

ὁ παῖς <u>ὃς πέμπει δῶρον</u> ἀγαθός ἐστιν.
  The child *who sends a gift* is good.

ὁ παῖς <u>οὗ ὁ πατὴρ λέγει</u> ἀγαθός ἐστιν.
  The child *whose father is speaking* is good.

ἡ πόλις <u>ἐν ᾗ μένομεν</u> μικρά ἐστιν.
  The city *in which we are staying* is small.

ὁ παῖς <u>ὃν ἐδίδαξα</u> ἔχει ἵππον.
  The child *whom I taught* has a horse.

These examples illustrate two important points:

- the relative pronoun is always the first word in its clause, unless it is the object of a preposition; then, as in English, the preposition comes before the pronoun.

- the relative clause is not split up; once it starts, it finishes before you get back to the main clause. The pronoun marks the beginning of the clause, and the verb often comes at the end of the clause.

EXERCISE 11.4.   Bracket the relative clause and draw an arrow to the antecedent; then translate each sentence.

1. οἱ λόγοι οὓς ἔλεξεν ὁ Σωκράτης ἀληθεῖς ἦσαν.
2. ὁρῶμεν τὸν ἄνδρα ὃς βλάπτει τὰς οἰκίας.
3. οὐχ οἷοί τ᾽ ἐστὲ βοηθεῖν ταῖς γυναιξὶν ἃς οἱ Πέρσαι ἔλαβον;
4. ἀσφαλεῖς οἱ σύμμαχοι οἷς τείχη μακρά ἐστιν.
5. τὰ ὅπλα ἃ οἱ πολέμιοι βάλλουσιν ὑμᾶς ἀποκτενεῖ.

EXERCISE 11.5.   Translate into English.

1. εἰ μὴ ἀπέθανεν, νῦν στρατηγὸς ἂν ἦν.
2. αἱ γυναῖκες ἃς ἐμένομεν ὕδωρ ἀπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ πάλιν ἤνεγκον.
3. τοὺς παῖδας μένειν μακρὸν χρόνον ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ ἐκέλευσα ἐπεὶ αὐτοὺς εἰς τὴν κώμην ἠγάγομεν.
4. οἱ ἄνδρες οἳ ἐν τῇ νήσῳ ζῶσιν ἡμῖν βοηθεῖν μέλλουσιν.
5. τοὺς μεγάλους πόδας τοὺς λέοντός ποτ᾽ εἴδετε ἢ οὔ;
6. κατὰ τὸν Ξενοφῶντα, ὁ Σωκράτης ἀεὶ τοὺς τῶν Ἀθηνῶν θεοὺς ἐτίμα.
7. εἰ οὖν οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι εἰρήνην μὴ ἐποίησαν πρὸς ἡμᾶς, οἱ Πέρσαι εἰς τὰς Ἀθήνας ἂν εἰσέβαλον.
8. τίνες προύπεμψαν τοὺς ἄλλους ἵππους σὺν τῷ κήρυκι αὐτῷ;
9. οὐδεὶς τοῖς ξένοις βοηθήσει ἀφ᾽ ὧν ψευδῆ περὶ τοῦ ἄρχοντος ἠκούσαμεν.
10. αὐτὸς τῷ Σωκράτει οὐκ ἂν ἐπίστευον εἰ τοῖς λόγοις τοὺς νεανίας διέφθειρεν.

EXERCISE 11.6.   Translate into Greek.

1. If there is a camel in the house, do not stay!
2. Not even the Persians who invaded Greece then were able to defeat Athens.
3. If we had remained on the walls with you (pl.) we would be safe.
4. I always advise you not to listen to bad men.
5. We all honor the Greeks; for they accomplished great things.

READING: Spartan Assembly (Thucydides, adapted)

The Spartan assembly debates whether to declare war on Athens, following accusations by various cities and a response by representatives from Athens. The speaker urges war.

τοὺς μὲν λόγους τοὺς μακροὺς τῶν Ἀθηναίων οὐ γιγνώσκω· εἰ
γὰρ πρὸς τοὺς Πέρσας ἦσαν ἀγαθοὶ τότε, πρὸς δ᾽ ἡμᾶς κακοὶ νῦν,
διπλασίας ζημίας ἄξιοί εἰσιν, ὅτι ἀγαθοὶ μὲν τότε ἦσαν, κακοὶ δὲ νῦν.
ἡμεῖς δὲ ὅμοιοι καὶ τότε καὶ νῦν ἐσμεν, καὶ τοῖς ἀνδράσιν, οἳ κακῶς
πράττουσιν, βοηθήσομεν. ἄλλοις μὲν γὰρ χρήματά ἐστι καὶ νῆες καὶ
ἵπποι, ἡμῖν δὲ σύμμαχοι ἀγαθοὶ οὓς σώζειν οἷοί τ᾽ ἐσμέν.

Vocabulary:

γιγνώσκω	understand	νῆες (*nom. pl.*)	ships
διπλάσιος, -α, -ον	twofold, double	ὅμοιος, -α, -ον	the same
ζημία, -ας, ἡ	penalty		

Practice sentences

1. θνητῶν γὰρ οὐδείς ἐστιν εὐδαίμων ἀνήρ.   (Euripides)

2. λόγος γὰρ τοὔργον οὐ νικᾷ ποτε.   (Euripides)

3. μήποτε κακῷ βούλευε σὺν ἀνδρί.   (Theognis, adapted)

4. τῶν τις Λυδῶν ... συνεβούλευσε Κροίσῳ τάδε.   (Herodotus)

5. Κῦρον δὲ καλεῖ ἀπὸ τῆς ἀρχῆς, ἧς αὐτὸν   (Xenophon, adapted)
   σατράπην ἐποίησε, καὶ στρατηγὸν δὲ αὐτὸν ποιεῖ.

Vocabulary:

θνητός, -ή, -όν	mortal	σατράπης, -ου, ὁ	satrap, provincial
Κροῖσος, -ου, ὁ	Croesus		governor
Κῦρος, -ου, ὁ	Cyrus	τάδε	these things
Λυδός, -οῦ, ὁ	Lydian	τοὔργον	= τὸ ἔργον

Chapter 11 Vocabulary (18)

Verbs:

ἀποκτείνω, ἀποκτενῶ, ἀπέκτεινα	kill
βάλλω, βαλῶ, ἔβαλον	throw
εἰσβάλλω (+ εἰς)	throw into; invade
περιβάλλω	throw around, surround
βοηθέω, βοηθήσω, ἐβοήθησα (+ *dat.*)	help
βουλεύω, βουλεύσω, ἐβούλευσα	plan
συμβουλεύω, συμβουλεύσω,	advise
συνεβούλευσα (+ *dat.*)	
διαφθείρω, διαφθερῶ, διέφθειρα	destroy; corrupt
μένω, μενῶ, ἔμεινα	remain, stay; wait for
νικάω, νικήσω, ἐνίκησα	win; conquer, defeat

Nouns:

ἔτος, ἔτους, τό	year
Σωκράτης, Σωκράτους, ὁ	Socrates
τεῖχος, τείχους, τό	wall
χρῆμα, χρήματος, τό	thing, matter; (*pl.*) goods, money

Pronoun:

ὅς, ἥ, ὅ	who, which, that

Adjectives:

ἀληθής, ἀληθές	true
τὰ ἀληθῆ	the truth
ἄξιος, ἀξία, ἄξιον	worthy; worthy of (+ *gen.*)
ἀσφαλής, ἀσφαλές	safe
εὐδαίμων, εὔδαιμον	happy, fortunate
ψευδής, ψευδές	false

Preposition:

ἐπί (+ *gen.*)	on, upon
(+ *dat.*)	on, at, near
(+ *acc.*)	toward, against; upon, on to, up to

1. **Deponent verbs – present and future tenses**
2. **3rd declension nouns with genitive singular in -εως**
3. **Indirect statement**
4. **The infinitive in indirect statement**
5. **The adjective πολύς, πολλή, πολύ**

1. Deponent verbs – present and future tenses

So far all the verbs you have learned have had active endings. Some Greek verbs have a different set of endings in one or more of the tenses, as if they had put aside their active forms. These are traditionally called *deponent* verbs (*deponent* means 'put aside'). They are easy to identify, because the 1st or 2nd principal part ends in **-ομαι** instead of **-ω**. The present and future tenses use the same endings, which are given here; the past tense endings will be presented in Ch. 16.1.

INDICATIVE

sing.	1st	-μαι
	2nd	-σαι (-εσαι > -ει)
	3rd	-ται
plur.	1st	-μεθα
	2nd	-σθε
	3rd	-νται

INFINITIVE   -σθαι

Deponent thematic verbs have the thematic vowel as usual. Contract verbs undergo the same contractions as in the active voice (Ch. 10.5, 6). Here are the paradigms of βούλομαι, 'want' and ἡγέομαι, 'believe':

		want	**believe**	
INDICATIVE				
sing.	1st	βούλομαι	ἡγοῦμαι	(ἡγέ-ομαι)
	2nd	βούλει	ἡγεῖ	(ἡγέ-εσαι)
	3rd	βούλεται	ἡγεῖται	(ἡγέ-εται)
plur.	1st	βουλόμεθα	ἡγούμεθα	(ἡγε-όμεθα)
	2nd	βούλεσθε	ἡγεῖσθε	(ἡγέ-εσθε)
	3rd	βούλονται	ἡγοῦνται	(ἡγέ-ονται)
INFINITIVE		βούλεσθαι	ἡγεῖσθαι	(ἡγέ-εσθαι)

Note: In the 2nd person singular of thematic verbs, the **σ** drops out and the contraction **ε + αι** usually appears as -**ει**. (In Attic Greek before the 4th century B.C. the contraction resulted in -**η**). The form in -**ει** is the same as the 3rd singular active of non-deponent verbs, so you have to be careful to distinguish the two.

Here are the verbs from previous chapters that have this set of endings in the future:

ἀκούω, ἀκούσομαι, ἤκουσα	hear, listen to	Ch. 10
ἀποθνήσκω, ἀποθανοῦμαι, ἀπέθανον	die	Ch. 10
εἰμί, ἔσομαι, —	be	Ch. 7
λαμβάνω, λήψομαι, ἔλαβον	take, seize; receive	Ch. 7
ὁράω, ὄψομαι, εἶδον	see	Ch. 10
φεύγω, φεύξομαι, ἔφυγον	flee, avoid, escape	Ch. 5

Note: The 3rd person singular of ἔσομαι does not have the thematic vowel: ἔσται.

EXERCISE 12.1. Translate the following verb forms.

1. ἀκούσεται
2. ἡγεῖσθαι
3. βούλει
4. φεύξονται
5. ὀψόμεθα
6. λήψεσθε

2. 3rd declension nouns with genitive singular in -εως

The accusative singular ending in -ν is fairly common in nouns with stems in -ι and -υ.

		city	**town**	**king**
sing.	Nom.	ἡ πόλις	τὸ ἄστυ	ὁ βασιλεύς
	Gen.	πόλεως	ἄστεως	βασιλέως
	Dat.	πόλει	ἄστει	βασιλεῖ
	Acc.	πόλιν	ἄστυ	βασιλέᾱ
	Voc.	πόλι	ἄστυ	βασιλεῦ
plur.	Nom./Voc.	πόλεις	ἄστη	βασιλεῖς
	Gen.	πόλεων	ἄστεων	βασιλέων
	Dat.	πόλεσι(ν)	ἄστεσι(ν)	βασιλεῦσι(ν)
	Acc.	πόλεις	ἄστη	βασιλέᾱς

Note: The genitive ending -εως was originally -ηος, but the length of the last two vowels was reversed (a process called *quantitative metathesis*). The accent was not adjusted to the new form; the genitive plural accent copies the genitive singular.

EXERCISE 12.2.   Translate each sentence.
1. εἰς τὸ ἄστυ ὁ εὐδαίμων βασιλεὺς ἐλεύσεται.
2. μάχην μεγάλην ἐν τῇ πόλει μαχόμεθα.
3. Socrates' wife is calling him.
4. Did the allies wait for their cavalry?

3. Indirect statement

A *direct* statement is like a quotation: it gives a person's words or thoughts in their original form. An *indirect* statement reports the original words or thoughts.

direct	*indirect*
They are coming.	I think that they are coming.
	He said they were coming.

EXERCISE 12.3.   Write out in English the direct form of each indirect statement.
1. They say that the men will train the horses.
2. You said that he would train the horses.
3. We think that we ourselves speak well.
4. We think that the orator spoke well.
5. The shopkeeper thought the camel had eaten the money.

4. The infinitive in indirect statement

An *indirect statement* is a dependent clause that appears as the object of verbs of thinking and some verbs of saying. The structure of an indirect statement is the same as that of an indirect command (Ch. 8.8): the verb is an infinitive and its subject is in the accusative case. If the subject of the infinitive is also the subject of the main verb it is usually left out; anything modifying it is nominative. The negative is usually οὐ.

> οἱ παῖδες νομίζουσι <u>τὸν Σωκράτη σοφὸν εἶναι</u>.
> > The children think (*that*) *Socrates is wise.*

> ὁ Σωκράτης οὐ νομίζει <u>σοφὸς εἶναι</u>.
> > Socrates does not think (*that*) *he is wise.*

Verbs of thinking and other verbs of mental action commonly use this construction. Here are some examples:

νομίζω	think	ἐλπίζω	hope; expect
δοκέω	think; seem (Ch. 13)	φημί	say (Ch. 17)
ἡγέομαι	believe	οἴομαι	think (Ch. 21)
ὁμολογέω	agree; admit		

The infinitive used in an indirect statement expresses time *relative to the main verb*:

- present infinitive   same time as the main verb
- future infinitive   time after the main verb
- aorist infinitive   time before the main verb

> *same time as main verb*
> > νομίζω τὸν στρατηγὸν <u>πέμπειν</u> συμμάχους.
> > > I think (that) the general *is sending* allies.

> > ἐνόμισα τὸν στρατηγὸν <u>πέμπειν</u> συμμάχους.
> > > I thought (that) the general *was sending* allies.

> *time after main verb*
> > ἐλπίζω τὸν στρατηγὸν <u>πέμψειν</u> συμμάχους.
> > > I hope (that) the general *will send* allies.

> > ἤλπισα τὸν στρατηγὸν <u>πέμψειν</u> συμμάχους.
> > > I hoped (that) the general *would send* allies.

> *time before main verb*
> > νομίζω τὸν στρατηγὸν <u>πέμψαι</u> συμμάχους.
> > > I think (that) the general *sent* allies.

> > ἐνόμισα τὸν στρατηγὸν <u>πέμψαι</u> συμμάχους.
> > > I thought (that) the general *had sent* allies.

Exercise 12.4. Identify the tense of the infinitive and say whether it indicates the same time as, time before, or time after the main verb; then translate each sentence.

1. ἡγεῖσθε τὸν βασιλέα τὴν πόλιν σώσειν;
2. ἐνομίζομεν τοὺς ἱππέας ἔρχεσθαι.
3. τὸν κήρυκα τὸν σύμμαχον ἀποκτεῖναι ἐνόμισεν.
4. τὴν βασίλειαν ἡγοῦμαι εὖ μάχεσθαι.
5. τοὺς μετ' αὐτοῦ ἀξίους τῆς τιμῆς εἶναι ὡμολογήσαμεν.

5. The adjective πολύς, πολλή, πολύ

πολύς, 'much,' 'many' is an adjective of mixed declension. Like μέγας (Ch. 8.2), it has 3rd declension endings only in the masculine and neuter nominative and accusative singular. The stem of these forms ends in -λ; the rest of the paradigm has a stem in -λλ and 1st / 2nd declension endings.

much; (*pl.*) many

		m.	f.	n.
sing.	Nom.	πολύς	πολλή	πολύ
	Gen.	πολλοῦ	πολλῆς	πολλοῦ
	Dat.	πολλῷ	πολλῇ	πολλῷ
	Acc.	πολύν	πολλήν	πολύ
plur.	Nom.	πολλοί	πολλαί	πολλά
	Gen.	πολλῶν	πολλῶν	πολλῶν
	Dat.	πολλοῖς	πολλαῖς	πολλοῖς
	Acc.	πολλούς	πολλάς	πολλά

EXERCISE 12.5. Dictionary practice. In the chart below, identify each word based on the dictionary entries given. Be sure to give all possibilities for ambiguous forms.

In the Entry column, write A, B, C, D or E

For **nouns** and **adjectives**: give case, number, and gender

For **verbs**: finite – give person, number, tense, voice (active), and mood (indicative)
infinitive – give tense and voice and identify as infinitive

    A. πόλεμος, πολέμου, ὁ: war
    B. πολέμιος, πολεμία, πολέμιον: hostile
    C. πολίζω, πολίσω, ἐπόλισα: found a city
    D. πόλις, πόλεως, ἡ: city
    E. πολύς, πολλή, πολύ: much, many

		Entry	Part of Speech	Form ID
Ex.	πολλῆς	*E*	*adjective*	*gen. sg. f.*
1.	πόλει			
2.	πολίσει			
3.	πολεμίοις			
4.	πολύν			
5.	πόλεμοι			
6.	πόλιν			
7.	πολίζεις			
8.	πολλά			
9.	πολεμίων			
10.	πολίζειν			

Exercise 12.6. Identify the use of each infinitive; then translate each sentence into English.

1. οἱ μὲν στρατιῶται τοῖς πολεμίοις ὅπλοις μάχονται, οἱ δὲ πυρί.
2. πολλοὶ πολῖται βούλονται τὸν ποιητὴν βασιλέα γίγνεσθαι.
3. τοῖς συμμάχοις αὐτοῖς χάριν ἔχομεν ὅτι τὴν πατρίδα ἔσωσαν.
4. βούλομαι ἡγεῖσθαι τὴν βασίλειαν τὰ ἀληθῆ λέγειν.
5. ὡμολογεῖτε τοῖς πολλοῖς τὰ τῆς πόλεως ἡμῶν μεγάλα εἶναι;
6. ὁ λέων διὰ τὴν φύσιν τε καὶ τὴν δύναμιν πολλοὺς ἀποκτείνειν οἷός τ᾽ ἦν.
7. ὁ Σωκράτης ἀκοῦσαι τοῦ θεοῦ ἐνόμισεν.
8. χαλεπὸν μὲν εἶναι νομίζω, πρᾶξαι δὲ βούλομαι.
9. πολλά ἔτη εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα εἰσβάλλειν ἐβούλευσεν.
10. τίς ἐκέλευσεν αὐτοὺς τὴν πόλιν τείχει περιβαλεῖν;

Exercise 12.7. Translate into Greek.

1. We think that the Persians live well.
2. If the enemy had invaded our town, the cavalry would have killed many of them.
3. The soldiers thought that both the women and the children had fled.
4. Did the foreigners who came to your (pl.) city see everything?
5. The citizens admitted that they did not trust Socrates.

Reading: Cyrus is Helped by Camels (Herodotus, adapted)

Croesus, king of Lydia (in Asia Minor, modern Turkey), after conquering most of the Greek cities east of the Aegean, attacked Persia in 546 B.C. in an attempt to crush the power of Cyrus the Great, king of the Medes and Persians.

ὅτε ἐβασίλευε τῶν Περσῶν, ὁ Κῦρος ἤγαγε τὴν στρατιὰν ἐς τὴν
Λυδίαν· τὸν γὰρ Κροῖσον, τὸν βασιλέα τῶν Λυδῶν, νικᾶν ἠθέλησεν.
ἀλλὰ οἱ Λυδοὶ ἦσαν ἱππεῖς ἀγαθοί. ὁ οὖν Κῦρος πάσας τὰς καμήλους
αἳ σῖτον τε καὶ σκευὴν τῆς στρατιᾶς ἔφερον ἤθροισεν, καί τινας τῶν
ἀνδρῶν αὐτὰς ἀναβαίνειν ἐκέλευσεν. ὄπισθε δὲ τῶν καμήλων
στρατιώτας ποσὶ στρατεύειν ἐκέλευσε καὶ ὄπισθε τοῦ πεζοῦ ἔταξε
πάντας τοὺς ἱππέας. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος τὰς καμήλους ἔταξε ἀντία τῶν τοῦ
Κροίσου ἱππέων· οἱ γὰρ ἵπποι οὐχ οἷοί τ᾽ εἰσὶ φέρειν οὔτε τὴν ἰδέαν
οὔτε τὴν ὀδμὴν τῶν καμήλων. ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ ἵπποι τὰς καμήλους εἶδον,
ἔφυγον καὶ τῷ Κροίσῳ οὐδεμία ἐλπὶς ἦν.

Vocabulary:

ἀθροίζω, *aor.* ἤθροισα	gather	Λυδία, -ας, ἡ	Lydia
ἀναβαίνω	mount, climb onto	Λυδός, -οῦ, ὁ	(a) Lydian
ἀντία (+ *gen.*)	facing	ὀδμή, -ῆς, ἡ	smell
ἐς	= εἰς	ὄπισθε (+ *gen.*)	behind
ἰδέα, -ας, ἡ	appearance	πεζός, -οῦ, ὁ	footsoldier, infantry
Κροῖσος, -ου, ὁ	Croesus	σῖτος, -ου, ὁ	food
Κῦρος, -ου, ὁ	Cyrus	σκευή, -ῆς, ἡ	equipment
		τάττω, *aor.* ἔταξα	draw up, arrange

Practice Sentences

1. νομίζουσι τὴν ἀρχὴν ἥμισυ εἶναι παντός.   (Aristotle, adapted)

2. εἰ οἷός τε ἦν τις ἄνδρα λόγον διδάσκειν,   (Theognis, adapted)
   οὔποτε ἂν ὁ ἀγαθοῦ πατρὸς παῖς κακὸς ἐγένετο·
   ἀλλὰ οὔποτε ποιήσεις τὸν κακὸν ἄνδρα ἀγαθόν.

3. ἦλθον, εἶδον, ἐνίκησα.   (Plutarch)

4. ἐπί γε τὰ κακὰ οὐδεὶς ἑκὼν ἔρχεται.   (Plato)

Vocabulary:

γε	indeed	ἥμισυ (*acc. sg.*)	half
ἑκών, -οῦσα, -όν	willingly		

Chapter 12 Vocabulary (18)

Verbs:

βούλομαι, βουλήσομαι	want
γίγνομαι, γενήσομαι, ἐγενόμην	become, be; happen
ἐλπίζω, ἐλπιῶ, ἤλπισα	hope; expect
ἔρχομαι, ἐλεύσομαι, ἦλθον (*stem* ἐλθ-)	come; go
ἡγέομαι, ἡγήσομαι, ἡγησάμην	believe; lead, be a leader of (+ *gen.*)
μάχομαι, μαχοῦμαι, ἐμαχεσάμην (+ *dat.*)	fight (against)
νομίζω, νομιῶ, ἐνόμισα	think; believe in
ὁμολογέω, ὁμολογήσω, ὡμολόγησα	agree; admit

Nouns:

ἄστυ, ἄστεως, τό	town
βασιλεύς, βασιλέως, ὁ	king
βασίλεια, βασιλείας, ἡ	queen
δύναμις, δυνάμεως, ἡ	power, strength, ability
ἱππεύς, ἱππέως, ὁ	horseman, rider; charioteer; (*pl.*) cavalry
μάχη, μάχης, ἡ	battle
πόλις, πόλεως, ἡ	city
στρατιά, στρατιᾶς, ἡ	army
φύσις, φύσεως, ἡ	nature; character, temperament; regular order of nature
χάρις, χάριτος, ἡ	grace; thanks
χάριν ἔχω	be grateful, give thanks

Adjective:

πολύς, πολλή, πολύ	much, many
οἱ πολλοί	the majority

CHAPTER **13**

1. **Participles**
2. **Present active participle of thematic verbs and εἰμί (1st principal part)**
3. **Future active participle of thematic verbs (2nd principal part)**
4. **Aorist active participle of thematic verbs (3rd principal part)**
5. **Tense of participles**
6. **Participle uses**
    - **Attributive**
    - **Circumstantial**
    - **Supplementary**

1. Participles

A participle is a verbal adjective, so it has attributes of both an adjective and a verb:

The *barking* dog wagged its tail.	The dog *running* to me wagged its tail.
We visited the *destroyed* city.	We visited the city *destroyed* by the storm.
Having eaten her dinner, the dog slept.	*After she ate* her dinner, the dog slept.

Like other Greek adjectives, a participle must agree with the word it modifies in case, number and gender (Ch. 6.1). Like other verb forms, Greek participles also express time, can be modified, and can take an object.

2. Present active participle of thematic verbs and εἰμί (1st principal part)

The present participle has the thematic vowel **o** throughout the paradigm. The masculine and neuter are declined like ἄρχων, ἄρχοντος (Ch. 8.1); the feminine is declined like θάλαττα, θαλάττης (Ch. 3.4). The accent is fixed, like those of other adjectives, and stands on the stem vowel, except in the feminine genitive plural.

Notice that the endings are the same as the present participle of εἰμί, 'be.'

		stopping			**being**		
		m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
sing.	N./V.	παύων	παύουσα	παῦον	ὤν	οὖσα	ὄν
	Gen.	παύοντος	παυούσης	παύοντος	ὄντος	οὔσης	ὄντος
	Dat.	παύοντι	παυούσῃ	παύοντι	ὄντι	οὔσῃ	ὄντι
	Acc.	παύοντα	παύουσαν	παῦον	ὄντα	οὖσαν	ὄν
plur.	N./V.	παύοντες	παύουσαι	παύοντα	ὄντες	οὖσαι	ὄντα
	Gen.	παυόντων	παυουσῶν	παυόντων	ὄντων	οὐσῶν	ὄντων
	Dat.	παύουσι(ν)	παυούσαις	παύουσι(ν)	οὖσι(ν)	οὔσαις	οὖσι(ν)
	Acc.	παύοντας	παυούσας	παύοντα	ὄντας	οὔσας	ὄντα

Note: The masculine and neuter plural dative (**-ουσι**) forms have the same ending as the 3rd plural present active indicative; the context will make clear which form is intended.

Fun fact: The noun ἄρχων (Ch. 8.1) is actually a participle, 'the ruling one.'

In contract verbs, the stem vowel contracts as usual, with the thematic vowel **o** (Ch. 10.5, 6). The full paradigms are given in the Reference Morphology.

	m.	f.	n.
φιλέω			
Nom.	φιλῶν	φιλοῦσα	φιλοῦν
	(φιλέ-ων)	(φιλέ-ουσα)	(φιλέ-ον)
Gen.	φιλοῦντος	φιλούσης	φιλοῦντος
	(φιλέ-οντος)	(φιλε-ούσης)	(φιλέ-οντος)
τιμάω			
Nom.	τιμῶν	τιμῶσα	τιμῶν
	(τιμά-ων)	(τιμά-ουσα)	(τιμά-ον)
Gen.	τιμῶντος	τιμώσης	τιμῶντος
	(τιμά-οντος)	(τιμα-ούσης)	(τιμά-οντος)

3. Future active participle of thematic verbs (2nd principal part)

The *future active* participle has the thematic vowel and the same endings as the present, attached to the future stem: παύσων, παύσουσα, παῦσον. Verbs with a liquid or nasal future (Ch. 11.3) have forms that look like the present participle of φιλέω above.

EXERCISE 13.1. Match each participle to the noun it agrees with.

1.	λέγοντας	A.	νεανίαις
2.	νικώσῃ	B.	ἱππέως
3.	διαφθεροῦντι	C.	μάχας
4.	φεύγοντος	D.	στρατιᾷ
5.	βλαπτούσας	E.	Ἕλληνας
6.	πιστεύσουσι	F.	συμμάχῳ

4. Aorist active participle of thematic verbs (3rd principal part)

- The *1st aorist active* participle has the regular marker **-σα**, just like the indicative (Ch. 5.3). This participle is declined like the adjective πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν (Ch. 8.1). Verbs with a liquid or nasal aorist (Ch. 11.4) have the same endings but without the **-σ** (μείνας, μείνασα, μεῖναν).

		m.	f.	n.
sing.	N./V.	παύσας	παύσασα	παῦσαν
	Gen.	παύσαντος	παυσάσης	παύσαντος
	Dat.	παύσαντι	παυσάσῃ	παύσαντι
	Acc.	παύσαντα	παύσασαν	παῦσαν
plur.	N./V.	παύσαντες	παύσασαι	παύσαντα
	Gen.	παυσάντων	παυσασῶν	παυσάντων
	Dat.	παύσασι(ν)	παυσάσαις	παύσασι(ν)
	Acc.	παύσαντας	παυσάσας	παύσαντα

- The 2nd aorist active participle has the thematic vowel **o**. Thus the endings are the same as in the present tense above. The accent, however, is on the thematic vowel, except in the feminine genitive plural (Ch. 3.4). This is an important signal that the form is aorist, not present.

		m.	f.	n.
sing.	N./V.	λιπών	λιποῦσα	λιπόν
	Gen.	λιπόντος	λιπούσης	λιπόντος
	Dat.	λιπόντι	λιπούσῃ	λιπόντι
	Acc.	λιπόντα	λιποῦσαν	λιπόν
plur.	N./V.	λιπόντες	λιποῦσαι	λιπόντα
	Gen.	λιπόντων	λιπουσῶν	λιπόντων
	Dat.	λιποῦσι(ν)	λιπούσαις	λιποῦσι(ν)
	Acc.	λιπόντας	λιπούσας	λιπόντα

Note: The aorist participle has no augment. The augment only appears on indicative forms (Ch.5.2).

Exercise 13.2. Match each participle to the noun or pronoun it agrees with and identify the tense of the participle.

<div>

1. βουλεύων
2. λιπούσας
3. δράσαντος
4. οἴσοντας
5. πείθοντες
6. εὑροῦσι
7. καλῶν
8. λαμβάνουσαι
9. βλάψαν
10. διωξόντων

A. ἡμῖν
B. λεόντων
C. πατήρ
D. ἄνθρωποι
E. ἀδελφοῦ
F. υἱός
G. πῦρ
H. στρατιάς
I. ἱππέας
J. χεῖρες

</div>

5. Tense of participles

The tense of a participle can show aspect alone or, as with the infinitive in indirect statement (Ch. 12.4), time *relative to the main verb*.

- present participle: incomplete action (interruptible);
                                  same time as the main verb

- future participle: action not yet started or about to be started;
                                  time after the main verb

- aorist participle: action viewed as a whole (uninterruptible);
                                  time before the main verb

6. Participle uses

Participles in Greek have three common uses in a main clause.

- **Attributive**

    When a participle occurs with an article, it is in the *attributive* position and is the equivalent of a relative clause (Ch. 11.6).

    οἱ φεύγοντες στρατιῶται οὐκ ἀσφαλεῖς.
        The soldiers *who are fleeing* are not safe.
        The *fleeing* soldiers are not safe.

    τιμῶ τὸν νεανίαν τὸν λέγοντα.
        I honor the young man *who is speaking*.

    Like other adjectives, the attributive participle can be used with an article to create a noun phrase (Ch. 7.6).

    οἱ ἐν τῇ πόλει μένοντες τοῖς τείχεσι πιστεύουσιν.
        Those who remain in the city trust the walls.

    οἱ ἐν τῇ πόλει μένοντες τοῖς τείχεσι ἐπίστευσαν.
        Those who remained in the city trusted the walls.

τιμῶμεν <u>τοὺς</u> ἐκ τῆς μάχης οὐ <u>φυγόντας</u>.
> We honor *the people who did not flee* from battle.

<u>οἱ</u> τὴν ἀρετὴν <u>διώκοντες</u> τὸν Σωκράτη τιμῶσιν.
> *Those who are pursuing* virtue honor Socrates.

- **Circumstantial**

When a participle occurs without an article, it is *circumstantial* and is the equivalent of an adverbial clause beginning 'if,' 'when,' 'since,' 'after,' 'although,' and the like (Ch. 10.2). The main clause will usually clarify how best to understand the participial phrase.

> <u>ἵππους ἀγαθοὺς μὴ ἔχοντες</u> εὐδαίμονες οὔκ ἐσμεν.
>> *If we do not have good horses* we are not happy.

> <u>τὰ ἀληθῆ λέγων</u>, ἀεὶ πείθεις τοὺς πολίτας.
>> *Since you speak the truth*, you always persuade the citizens.

> οὐκ ἀσφαλεῖς ἦσαν <u>τοὺς λέοντας διώκοντες</u>.
>> They were not safe *when they were chasing the lions*.

> <u>τὸν πόλεμον νικήσαντες</u> οἱ στρατιῶται ἐχαίρησαν.
>> *After they won the war*, the soldiers rejoiced.

- **Supplementary**

A *supplementary* participle agreeing with the subject is used to complete the meaning of a few verbs, just as the complementary infinitive does with certain other verbs (Ch. 8.6). Verbs of emotion, verbs describing the phase of an action (begin, continue, stop), and a few other verbs commonly take this construction:

ἥδομαι	enjoy	ἄρχομαι	begin (middle voice, Ch. 16.1)
χαίρω	enjoy	παύομαι	stop (middle voice, Ch. 16.1)
τυγχάνω	happen to		

> <u>ἡδόμεθα ἀκούοντες</u> τοῦ ποιητῆς.
>> *We enjoy listening* to the poet.

> <u>ἔτυχε φεύγων</u>.
>> *He happened to be fleeing*.

> **Fun fact**: because verbs showing phase of action always describe an interruptible action, the participle is always present.

The negative with most participles is οὐ. μή is used in two particular cases:

- attributive participles referring to indefinite or generic people / things.

> <u>οἱ μὴ ἔχοντες ἀγαθοὺς ἡγεμόνας</u> οὐκ εὐδαίμονες εἰσιν.
>> *Those who do not have good leaders* are not fortunate.

> <u>ὁ μὴ ἔχων ὅπλα</u> μάχεσθαι οὐκ ἐθέλει.
>> *A man who does not have weapons* is not willing to fight.

- circumstantial participles with conditional meaning ('if').

    <u>μὴ ἔχων ὅπλα</u> μάχεσθαι οὐκ ἐθέλει.
    If he does not have weapons he is unwilling to fight.

EXERCISE 13.3. Identify the participle and its use (attributive, circumstantial or supplementary); then translate each sentence.

1. φεύγων τὸν πόδα ἔβλαψας.
2. τιμῶ τοὺς ξένους τοὺς δῶρα φέροντας.
3. τοὺς ξένους τιμῶ δῶρα φέροντας.
4. οἱ πόλεμον φιλοῦντες οὐ σώφρονες ἦσαν.
5. λέοντας διώκοντες οἱ υἱοὶ οὐ σώφρονές εἰσιν.
6. χαίρω τὸν τοῦ βασιλέως λόγον ἀκούων.
7. οἱ πολέμιοι ὅπλοις ἠδίκουν τοὺς ἐπὶ τοῦ τείχους μένοντας.
8. ὁ πατήρ μου πολλὰ ἡμῖν διδάσκων τότ᾽ ἦρξεν.

EXERCISE 13.4. Translate into English.

1. οἱ μὲν λέγοντες πολλοὺς τῶν πολιτῶν πείσουσιν, οἱ δ᾽ ἄρχοντες μήποτε μαχεῖσθαι ἐλπίζουσιν.
2. κατὰ τὸν νόμον ὁ ἀδικῶν κακοῦ τινος ἄξιός ἐστιν.
3. τοὺς πολεμίους πρὸς τὸν ποταμὸν διώξαντες, αὐτοὺς ἀπεκτείναμεν.
4. τὸν πόλεμον τέλος παύσαντες, πρὸς τὴν πατρίδα εὐθὺς ἀπήλθετε.
5. τοῖς τὴν πόλιν φυλάττουσι πιστεύειν δοκεῖς;
6. καὶ τοὺς λέοντας καὶ τὰς καμήλους ὁρῶν ᾔδει.
7. ποῦ ἔρχεται ἡ ψυχὴ ἐκ τοῦ σώματος λιποῦσα;
8. τὸν τοὺς ἵππους μου λαβόντα πολὺν χρόνον ἐζήτησα.
9. τίς τὸν τοῦ βασιλέως υἱὸν ἐν τῷ ποταμῷ εὑρὼν ἔτυχεν;
10. πᾶσιν ἀνθρώποις ἐστὶν τέλος τοῦ βίου θάνατος.

EXERCISE 13.5. Translate into Greek.

1. Never trust those who flee; for they are not worthy of honor!
2. You did not stop speaking even when your father finally began sacrificing to the gods.
3. According to some people, Socrates happened to be both good and wise.
4. After he sent out the cavalry, the general accomplished many things.
5. Do you (pl.) want the foreigners to leave the city immediately?

Reading 1: Rulers and Law (Plutarch, excerpted)

τίς οὖν ἄρξει τοῦ ἄρχοντος; ὁ νόμος ὁ πάντων βασιλεὺς θνητῶν τε καὶ
ἀθανάτων ὃς ἔμψυχός ἐστιν ἐν αὐτῷ λόγος. … δίκη μὲν οὖν νόμου
τέλος ἐστί, νόμος δ᾽ ἄρχοντος ἔργον, ἄρχων δ᾽ εἰκὼν θεοῦ τοῦ πάντα
κοσμοῦντος.

Vocabulary:

εἰκών, -όνος, ἡ	image	θνητός, -ή, -όν	mortal
ἔμψυχος, -ον	having life	κοσμέω	order, arrange

Reading 2: Xerxes Whips the Sea – 1 (Herodotus, adapted)

King Xerxes of Persia decides to invade Greece in 480 B.C.

Δαρεῖος, ὁ τῶν Περσῶν βασιλεύς, περὶ τῆς μάχης τῆς ἐν Μαραθῶνι
ἀκούσας, ἠθέλησε μὲν στρατεύειν ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα, ἀλλ᾽ οὐχ οἷος τ᾽
ἦν. μετὰ δὲ τὸν θάνατον αὐτοῦ, ὁ υἱὸς, ὀνόματι Ξέρξης, τῶν Περσῶν
ἦρχε καὶ αὐτοῖς ἔλεξε τάδε· Ὁ μὲν Δαρεῖος ἀπέθανεν, ἐγὼ δὲ ὑπέρ τ᾽
αὐτοῦ καὶ τῶν ἄλλων Περσῶν διαφθερῶ τοὺς Ἀθηναίους· καὶ γὰρ ἐμὲ
καὶ τὸν πατέρα μου ἠδίκησαν. στρατιὰν οὖν διὰ τῆς Εὐρώπης ἐπὶ τὴν
Ἑλλάδα ἄξω καὶ χώρας πάσας ἐγὼ ὑμῖν μίαν χώραν ποιήσω, ἐπεὶ διὰ
πάσης τῆς Εὐρώπης ἦλθον.

Vocabulary:

Δαρεῖος, -ου, ὁ	Darius	Ξέρξης, -ου, ὁ	Xerxes
Εὐρώπη, -ης, ἡ	Europe	ὅδε, ἥδε, τόδε	this, the following
Μαραθῶν, -ῶνος, ὁ	Marathon		

Practice Sentences

1. δίκαια δράσας συμμάχους ἕξεις θεούς.   (Menander)

2. ἀνάγκῃ δ᾽ οὐδὲ θεοὶ μάχονται.   (Plato)

3. καὶ τίς θανόντων ἦλθεν ἐξ Ἅιδου πάλιν;   (Euripides)

4. ἀνὴρ ὁ φεύγων καὶ πάλιν μαχήσεται.   (Menander)

5. ἀλλ᾽ ἥδομαι, ὦ Κλέαρχε, ἀκούων σου φρονίμους λόγους.   (Xenophon)

6. κακῆς ἀπ᾽ ἀρχῆς γίγνεται τέλος κακόν.   (Euripides)

Vocabulary:

Ἅιδου (*gen. sg.*)	Hades' (house)	μαχήσεται	= μαχεῖται
Κλέαρχος, -ου, ὁ	Clearchus	φρόνιμος, -ον	sensible

Chapter 13 Vocabulary (18)

Verbs:

ἀδικέω, ἀδικήσω, ἠδίκησα	do wrong; injure
δοκέω, δόξω, ἔδοξα	think; seem, seem good / best (to) (+ *dat.*)
εὑρίσκω, εὑρήσω, ηὗρον / εὗρον	find, discover
ζητέω, ζητήσω, ἐζήτησα	seek, look for; investigate
ἥδομαι, ἡσθήσομαι	enjoy, be glad; delight in (+ *dat.*)
τυγχάνω, τεύξομαι, ἔτυχον	happen to (+ *part.*); meet, happen upon (+ *gen.*)
χαίρω, χαιρήσω, ἐχαίρησα	enjoy, rejoice (at); be glad

Nouns:

ἀνάγκη, ἀνάγκης, ἡ	necessity
νόμος, νόμου, ὁ	law; custom, tradition
σῶμα, σώματος, τό	body
τέλος, τέλους, τό	end; aim
τέλος (*acc.*) *as adv.*	finally, in the end
υἱός, υἱοῦ, ὁ	son
ψυχή, ψυχῆς, ἡ	soul; breath, life

Adjectives: *a few 1st and 2nd declension adjectives use the same endings for masculine and feminine, like 3rd declension adjectives* (Ch. 11.2)

ἄδικος, ἄδικον	unjust
ἀθάνατος, ἀθάνατον	immortal
σώφρων, σῶφρον	prudent, sensible; self-controlled

Adverbs:

εὐθύς	immediately
ποῦ	where?

1. **Demonstrative pronouns**
2. **Adjectival use of the demonstrative pronoun**
3. **Adjectives of the ἡδύς type**
4. **Genitive absolute**
5. **Dative of interest**
6. **Dative of manner**

1. Demonstrative pronouns

Greek has three demonstrative pronouns, used to point out or refer to a specific person or thing: 'did you hear *that* (*man*)?'; 'he likes *these* (*things*).'

- οὗτος, αὕτη, τοῦτο is the most common of the demonstratives. It has a rough breathing in the masculine and feminine nominative, but begins with a **τ** in all other forms. It has the same endings as the article, except for the nominative singular masculine -**ος.** οὗτος typically refers to a person or thing already mentioned:

  τούτους τοὺς λόγους ἔλεξεν.   He spoke these (the preceding) words.

  Note: The stem vowel of οὗτος alternates between -**o**- and -**α**-, to match the vowel of the ending: τούτοις / ταύταις. In the genitive plural, the feminine uses the same form as the masculine and neuter (*paradigmatic leveling*, Ch. 6.1).

  <table>
  <tr><td colspan="4" align="center">**this; (*pl.*) these**</td></tr>
  <tr><td></td><td></td><td align="center">m.</td><td align="center">f.</td><td align="center">n.</td></tr>
  <tr><td>*sing.*</td><td>Nom.</td><td>οὗτος</td><td>αὕτη</td><td>τοῦτο</td></tr>
  <tr><td></td><td>Gen.</td><td>τούτου</td><td>ταύτης</td><td>τούτου</td></tr>
  <tr><td></td><td>Dat.</td><td>τούτῳ</td><td>ταύτῃ</td><td>τούτῳ</td></tr>
  <tr><td></td><td>Acc.</td><td>τοῦτον</td><td>ταύτην</td><td>τοῦτο</td></tr>
  <tr><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr>
  <tr><td>*plur.*</td><td>Nom.</td><td>οὗτοι</td><td>αὗται</td><td>ταῦτα</td></tr>
  <tr><td></td><td>Gen.</td><td>τούτων</td><td>τούτων</td><td>τούτων</td></tr>
  <tr><td></td><td>Dat.</td><td>τούτοις</td><td>ταύταις</td><td>τούτοις</td></tr>
  <tr><td></td><td>Acc.</td><td>τούτους</td><td>ταύτας</td><td>ταῦτα</td></tr>
  </table>

- ἐκεῖνος, ἐκείνη, ἐκεῖνο has the same endings as οὗτος.

that; (*pl.*) those

		m.	f.	n.
sing.	Nom.	ἐκεῖνος	ἐκείνη	ἐκεῖνο
	Gen.	ἐκείνου	ἐκείνης	ἐκείνου
	Dat.	ἐκείνῳ	ἐκείνῃ	ἐκείνῳ
	Acc.	ἐκεῖνον	ἐκείνην	ἐκεῖνο
plur.	Nom.	ἐκεῖνοι	ἐκεῖναι	ἐκεῖνα
	Gen.	ἐκείνων	ἐκείνων	ἐκείνων
	Dat.	ἐκείνοις	ἐκείναις	ἐκείνοις
	Acc.	ἐκείνους	ἐκείνας	ἐκεῖνα

- ὅδε, ἥδε, τόδε is the article with the suffix **-δε** added to it. It often refers to a person or thing actually present: ὅδε 'this (man) here'; otherwise it typically refers to what follows:

τούσδε τοὺς λόγους ἔλεξεν·	He spoke these (the following) words: He spoke as follows:

this; (*pl.*) these

		m.	f.	n.
sing.	Nom.	ὅδε	ἥδε	τόδε
	Gen.	τοῦδε	τῆσδε	τοῦδε
	Dat.	τῷδε	τῇδε	τῷδε
	Acc.	τόνδε	τήνδε	τόδε
plur.	Nom.	οἵδε	αἵδε	τάδε
	Gen.	τῶνδε	τῶνδε	τῶνδε
	Dat.	τοῖσδε	ταῖσδε	τοῖσδε
	Acc.	τούσδε	τάσδε	τάδε

Fun fact: The article was originally a demonstrative pronoun, and often served as the 3rd person personal pronoun. This function can be seen in Homer, and in Attic prose with conjunctions like μέν and δέ (Ch. 8.3).

2. Adjectival use of the demonstrative pronoun

As in English, these pronouns can also be used as adjectives. When used as a modifier the pronoun is in the predicate position (Ch. 6.3).

ἥδε ἡ γυνή	this woman
τὰ τείχη ταῦτα	these walls
ἐκείνων τῶν πολιτῶν	of those citizens

EXERCISE 14.1.   Translate each sentence into English.

1.   οὗτοι τὰ ἀληθῆ ζητεῖν βούλονται.
2.   ποῦ ἐκείνους τοὺς ἄνδρας ηὗρες;
3.   τῇδε μὴ πιστεύετε.
4.   ὑμῖν τήνδε τὴν ἀλήθειαν διδάξω.
5.   ποῦ ἐκεῖνα τὰ πράγματα ἔλιπες;
6.   ταῦτα ὁρῶντες ἥδονται.

3. Adjectives of the ἡδύς type

Adjectives like ἡδύς, 'sweet' 'pleasant' have a stem ending in -ε, except in the nominative, accusative and vocative singular masculine and neuter forms, which have -υ. Like some other adjectives you have seen, they have 3rd declension masculine and neuter endings, and 1st declension feminine endings.

		sweet		
		m.	f.	n.
sing.	Nom.	ἡδύς	ἡδεῖα	ἡδύ
	Gen.	ἡδέος	ἡδείας	ἡδέος
	Dat.	ἡδεῖ	ἡδείᾳ	ἡδεῖ
	Acc.	ἡδύν	ἡδεῖαν	ἡδύ
	Voc.	ἡδύ	ἡδεῖα	ἡδύ
plur.	N./V.	ἡδεῖς	ἡδεῖαι	ἡδέα
	Gen.	ἡδέων	ἡδειῶν	ἡδέων
	Dat.	ἡδέσι(ν)	ἡδείαις	ἡδέσι(ν)
	Acc.	ἡδεῖς	ἡδείας	ἡδέα

Note: There is no contraction in the genitive, or in the nominative and accusative plural neuter.

EXERCISE 14.2.   For each noun below, provide the correct form of the modifier.

Example: φίλοι (ἡδύς): ἡδεῖς

1.   ἔτους (οὗτος)
2.   ὁδῷ (βραχύς)
3.   μάχη (ὅδε)
4.   ἵπποις (ταχύς)
5.   πόδα (ταχύς)
6.   δεσπότας (ἐκεῖνος)
7.   γῆν (ἡδύς)
8.   τέχναι (οὗτος)

4. Genitive absolute

A *genitive absolute* consists of a circumstantial participle (Ch. 13.6) in the genitive case, modifying a genitive noun (or pronoun) that is not otherwise attached to the sentence (*absolute* means 'free from'). Like any other circumstantial participial phrase, the genitive absolute is often best translated with a clause beginning 'if,' 'when,' 'while,' 'after,' 'since,' or 'although.'

τοῦ λέοντος ἐλθόντος, πάντες ἐφύγομεν.
After the lion came, we all fled.

τοῦ βασιλέως δύναμιν μεγάλην ἔχοντος, οἱ ἐν τῇ πόλει εὖ πράττουσιν.
Since the king has great power, those in the city fare well.

EXERCISE 14.3.   Identify the use of each participle (attributive, circumstantial, genitive absolute, supplementary); then translate the sentence.

1.   ἐκεῖνοι οἱ στρατιῶται μόνον μίαν ἡμέραν στρατεύοντες ἔχαιρον.
2.   ἀκούσας ταῦτα ὁ ἡγεμὼν πάντας τοὺς Ἕλληνας ἐκάλει.
3.   τῶν ποιητῶν πολλὴν τέχνην ἐχόντων, τὸ τῶν Ἀθηνῶν ὄνομα μέγα γίγνεται.
4.   τῆς δεκάτης νυκτὸς οἱ πῦρ φέροντες τὸ σῶμα ηὗρον.

5. Dative of interest

In Greek the dative may indicate the person interested in an action or statement, or for whose advantage or disadvantage something is done. Reference grammars often subdivide this use into specific categories (reference, advantage or disadvantage, ethical, feeling), but this book will use the general term *dative of interest* for all of these. Note that in this use the dative noun (or pronoun) is almost always a person.

τοῖς πολίταις νόμους ἔγραψεν.
He wrote laws *for the citizens*.

ὁ θάνατος ἀνάγκη ἀνθρώποις πᾶσιν ἐστίν.
Death is a necessity *for all men*.

6. Dative of manner

The dative is also used to express the *manner* in which an action is done, functioning like an adverb. In this use the dative is usually an abstract noun.

ἐκείνη ἔλεξε πολλῇ δίκῃ.
That woman spoke *with much justice*.

ἀπέφυγον φόβῳ.
They fled away *in fear / fearfully*.

EXERCISE 14.4.   Translate into English.

1. τοῦ κήρυκος εὖ λέξαντος, ὁ ἄρχων εἰρήνην εὐθὺς ποιεῖν βούλεται.
2. εἶτα οἱ ἀδελφοὶ ἐκεῖνοι ἀλλήλους τοῖς λόγοις βλάπτειν ἔμελλον.
3. τέλος κελεύοντος τοῦ δεσπότου, οἱ νέοι τοῖς τάλασι βοηθοῦσιν.
4. ἐλπίζομεν τοὺς ἄνδρας τοὺς δύναμιν φύσει ἔχοντας ἀεὶ νικᾶν.
5. ἡ μὲν νῆσος τῇ ἀληθείᾳ ἡδεῖα ἦν, οἱ δ’ ἐν αὐτῇ ζῶντες οὔ.
6. πᾶς Ἕλλην τέχνῃ νικῶν μάλιστα ἔχαιρεν.
7. τοῖς ταχέσιν ἵπποις ἡ ὁδὸς βραχεῖα ἦν.
8. σώφρονος τυράννου ἄρχοντος, τοῖς πολίταις οὐδὲ πολέμου φόβος ἦν.
9. τῷ ὄντι τὸ τοῦ βίου τέλος τῇ ἀθανάτῳ ψυχῇ ἀρχή τις γίγνεται.
10. τῆς πόλεως ἀσφαλοῦς οὔσης, αἱ ἡμέραι χαλεπαὶ ταύταις οὐκ ἦσαν.

EXERCISE 14.5.   Translate into Greek; use participles wherever possible.

1. After the enemy fled out of the city, the citizens rejoice.
2. Although they loved each other very much, they had many battles.
3. In that province only the fathers educated their sons.
4. When the general gave the order, all the soldiers began throwing their weapons.
5. If the gods are immortal, do they have souls?

READING: Xerxes Whips the Sea – 2 (Herodotus, adapted)

The bridges referred to were built across the Hellespont between Abydos and Sestos and were nearly a mile long.

ὁ δὲ Ξέρξης εἰσβάλλειν εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα ἐθέλων, τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον διαβαίνειν ἐβούλευσεν· Φοίνικας οὖν καὶ Αἰγυπτίους, οἳ σύμμαχοι ἦσαν τῶν Περσῶν, ἐκέλευσε δύο γεφύρας κατασκευάζειν. τὸ δ' ἔργον πραξάντων ἐκείνων, χειμὼν μέγας τὰς γεφύρας διέφθειρεν. μάλιστα ἐχαλέπαινε ὁ Ξέρξης, ἐκέλευσε δὲ τοὺς ἄνδρας τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον τριακοσίαις πληγαῖς τύπτειν, λέγοντας τάδε· Ὦ πικρὸν ὕδωρ, δεσπότης δίκην πέμπει τήνδε, ὅτι μιν ἠδίκησας οὐδὲ ἀπ' ἐκείνου ἄδικον λαβόν. ἔπειτα τὰς τῶν μὲν ἐπιστατῶν κεφαλὰς ἀποτέμνειν ἐκέλευσεν ὁ βασιλεὺς, ἄλλους δ' ἐπιστάτας νέας γεφύρας κατασκευάζειν.

Vocabulary:

Αἰγύπτιος, -ου, ὁ	an Egyptian	Ξέρξης, -ου, ὁ	Xerxes
γέφυρα, -ας, ἡ	bridge	πικρός, -ά, -όν	bitter
διαβαίνω	cross	πληγή, -ῆς, ἡ	blow
δύο	two	τριακόσιοι, -αι, -α	300
Ἑλλήσποντος, -ου, ὁ	Hellespont	τύπτω	strike, hit
ἐπιστάτης, -ου, ὁ	overseer	Φοῖνιξ, Φοίνικος, ὁ	a Phoenician
κατασκευάζω	build, construct	χαλεπαίνω	grow annoyed
κεφαλή, -ῆς, ἡ	head	χειμών, -ῶνος, ὁ	storm
μιν (*acc.*)	him		

PRACTICE SENTENCES

1. ἥδε ἡ ἡμέρα τοῖς Ἕλλησι μεγάλων κακῶν ἄρξει.   (Thucydides)

2. λόγῳ γὰρ ἦσαν οὐκ ἔργῳ φίλοι.   (Euripides)

3. ὁ βίος βραχύς, ἡ δὲ τέχνη μακρά.   (Hippocrates)

4. καὶ πόλεμον ... ἡγῇ σὺ εἶναι τῷ ὄντι ἐν τοῖς θεοῖς πρὸς ἀλλήλους;   (Plato)

5. ἀλήθεια δὴ πάντων μὲν ἀγαθῶν θεοῖς ἡγεῖται, πάντων δὲ ἀνθρώποις.   (Plato)

Chapter 14 Vocabulary (18)

Verb:

τρέφω, θρέψω, ἔθρεψα	nourish, feed; rear, educate

Nouns:

ἀλήθεια, ἀληθείας, ἡ	truth
δεσπότης, δεσπότου, ὁ	master, lord
τέχνη, τέχνης, ἡ	art, skill, craft
φόβος, φόβου, ὁ	fear, panic

Pronouns:

ἀλλήλων, ἀλλήλων, ἀλλήλων	each other, one another (*reciprocal*)
(*doesn't occur in the nominative*)	
ἐκεῖνος, ἐκείνη, ἐκεῖνο	that (one); (*pl.*) those
ὅδε, ἥδε, τόδε	this (one, *as follows*); (*pl.*) these
οὗτος, αὕτη, τοῦτο	this (one, *already mentioned*); (*pl.*) these

Adjectives:

βραχύς, βραχεῖα, βραχύ	short, brief
ἡδύς, ἡδεῖα, ἡδύ	sweet, pleasant
μόνος, μόνη, μόνον	alone, single
μόνον (*acc. n.*) *as adv.*	only
νέος, νέα, νέον	new; young
ταχύς, ταχεῖα, ταχύ	fast, swift, quick

Adverbs:

δή (*postpos.*)	indeed, really
εἶτα / ἔπειτα (ἐπὶ + εἶτα)	then, next
μάλιστα	very much, most; especially; certainly
τῷ ὄντι	in fact, really

CHAPTER 15

1. Passive voice

In the *active* voice, the subject of the verb performs the action. In the *passive* voice, the subject of the verb *receives* the action.

Active	Passive
The boy *writes*.	The boy *is taught*.
The horse *was running*.	The horse *was being ridden*.

2. Present and imperfect passive of thematic verbs (1st principal part)

The present passive endings of thematic verbs are the same as those you learned for deponent verbs (Ch. 12.1). Deponent verbs also share the same imperfect endings as the passive:

		present	imperfect
sing.	1st	-μαι	-μην
	2nd	-σαι	-σο
	3rd	-ται	-το
plur.	1st	-μεθα	-μεθα
	2nd	-σθε	-σθε
	3rd	-νται	-ντο

In the 2nd person singular of thematic verbs, the **σ** drops out and the thematic vowel contracts with the ending as follows:

-εσαι > -ει   -εσο > -ου

The following paradigms illustrate the pattern for regular thematic verbs and contract verbs in **-εω** and **-αω**.

INDICATIVE			**stop**	**love**	**honor**
present					
	sing.	1st	παύομαι	φιλοῦμαι	τιμῶμαι
		2nd	παύει	φιλεῖ	τιμᾷ
		3rd	παύεται	φιλεῖται	τιμᾶται
	plur.	1st	παυόμεθα	φιλούμεθα	τιμώμεθα
		2nd	παύεσθε	φιλεῖσθε	τιμᾶσθε
		3rd	παύονται	φιλοῦνται	τιμῶνται
imperfect					
	sing.	1st	ἐπαυόμην	ἐφιλούμην	ἐτιμώμην
		2nd	ἐπαύου	ἐφιλοῦ	ἐτιμῶ
		3rd	ἐπαύετο	ἐφιλεῖτο	ἐτιμᾶτο
	plur.	1st	ἐπαυόμεθα	ἐφιλούμεθα	ἐτιμώμεθα
		2nd	ἐπαύεσθε	ἐφιλεῖσθε	ἐτιμᾶσθε
		3rd	ἐπαύοντο	ἐφιλοῦντο	ἐτιμῶντο
INFINITIVE			παύεσθαι	φιλεῖσθαι	τιμᾶσθαι

EXERCISE 15.1.   Identify these passive verbs as indicative (with person, number and tense) or infinitive (with tense); then translate.

1. σῳζόμεθα
2. ἠκούοντο
3. παύει
4. διαφθείρεσθαι
5. ἐλείπου
6. νικᾶται
7. καλεῖσθε
8. ἠγγέλλετο

EXERCISE 15.2.   Translate into English.

1. τὰ ἀληθῆ ἐζητεῖτο.
2. ποῦ διδασκόμεθα;
3. αἱ δειναὶ μάχαι αἱ ἐν τῷ ἄστει ἀγγέλλονται.
4. οἱ νικήσαντες ἐτιμῶντο.
5. τί τῆς νυκτὸς ηὑρίσκετο;
6. τὸ τοῦ βασιλέως γένος θαυμάζεται.

3. Future and aorist passive of thematic verbs (6th principal part)

The 6th principal part gives the stem for both the future and aorist passive (see the tense formation chart on p. 277). (The 4th and 5th principal parts give perfect tense stems – Ch. 24.2-3.) The stem of the 6th principal part ends in -**θη** / -**η**. Before the -**θ** of the stem, **ττ** becomes **χ**, a dental becomes **σ** (Ch. 2.6), and other stop consonants (Ch. 1.3) are aspirated:

	labial	*dental*	*velar*
unvoiced	π	τ	κ
voiced	β	δ, ζ	γ
aspirated (+ *h*)	φ	θ	χ

Here are the verbs of these types from previous chapters and one from this chapter:

1st principal part	**6th principal part**
ἄγω	ἤχθην
ἄρχω	ἤρχθην
βλάπτω	ἐβλάφθην (or ἐβλάβην)
διδάσκω	ἐδιδάχθην
διώκω	ἐδιώχθην
ἥδομαι	ἥσθην
θαυμάζω	ἐθαυμάσθην
λαμβάνω	ἐλήφθην
λέγω	ἐλέχθην
λείπω	ἐλείφθην
νομίζω	ἐνομίσθην
πέμπω	ἐπέμφθην
πράττω	ἐπράχθην
φέρω	ἠνέχθην
φυλάττω	ἐφυλάχθην

- **Future Passive.** The future forms add -**σ**- to the stem, and have the same primary endings (Ch. 2.1) as the present passive.

INDICATIVE			**stop**	**write**	*endings*
sing.	1st		παυθήσομαι	γραφήσομαι	-μαι
	2nd		παυθήσει	γραφήσει	-σαι (-ει)
	3rd		παυθήσεται	γραφήσεται	-ται
plur.	1st		παυθησόμεθα	γραφησόμεθα	-μεθα
	2nd		παυθήσεσθε	γραφήσεσθε	-σθε
	3rd		παυθήσονται	γραφήσονται	-νται
INFINITIVE			παυθήσεσθαι	γραφήσεσθαι	-σθαι

- **Aorist Passive.** The aorist forms have *active* secondary endings. You will have to pay attention to the stem to see that the form is passive.

INDICATIVE					*endings*
sing.	1st		ἐπαύθην	ἐγράφην	-ν
	2nd		ἐπαύθης	ἐγράφης	-ς
	3rd		ἐπαύθη	ἐγράφη	--
plur.	1st		ἐπαύθημεν	ἐγράφημεν	-μεν
	2nd		ἐπαύθητε	ἐγράφητε	-τε
	3rd		ἐπαύθησαν	ἐγράφησαν	-σαν
INFINITIVE			παυθῆναι	γραφῆναι	-ναι

Note: The infinitive accent always falls on the penult.

EXERCISE 15.3. Transform each of the following present passive forms into the tense indicated, keeping the same person and number; then translate the new form.

1. ζητοῦμαι (imperfect)
2. διώκει (aorist)
3. λέγεται (aorist)
4. φιλοῦνται (future)
5. ἄγεσθαι (aorist)
6. τιμώμεθα (future)
7. πέμπει (imperfect)
8. νομίζεσθε (future)

EXERCISE 15.4. Translate into English.

1. οἱ στρατιῶται ἐν τῷ πολέμῳ ἠδικήθησαν.
2. ἡ πατρὶς ἡμῶν νικηθήσεται;
3. μάλιστα ἐφιλήθημεν.
4. ἡ σὺν τοῖς Λακεδαιμονίοις ἀπεπέμφθη.
5. διαφθαρήσει;
6. τὰ δῶρα ληφθήσεται.

4. Genitive of agent

In Greek, the person (*agent*) performing the action of a passive verb is expressed by the preposition ὑπό, 'by' and a genitive noun or pronoun.

ἐβλάβημεν <u>ὑπὸ τῶν πολεμίων</u>.
    We were harmed *by the enemy.*

οὐδεὶς <u>ὑπὸ τοῦ κήρυκος</u> πιστεύεται.
    Nobody is trusted *by the herald.*

Note: For actions done by a thing, the *dative of means* (Ch. 4.6) is used.

EXERCISE 15.5. Translate the underlined words into Greek.

1. <u>He kept being injured</u> in the war.
2. I was appointed <u>by this man</u>.
3. <u>We will be sent</u> on a quest.
4. You will be hit <u>with a rock</u>.
5. You were harmed <u>by his words</u>.
6. <u>They will be led</u> to Athens.

EXERCISE 15.6. Translate into English.

1. ὁ εὐδαίμων υἱὸς ὑπὸ τοῦ πατρὸς ἐδιδάχθη.
2. τῇ τοῦ ἡλίου δυνάμει ἐβλάπτου;
3. πολλοὶ λίθοι ὑπὸ τῶν κακῶν παίδων βάλλονται.
4. αἱ Ἀθῆναι τοῖς μακροῖς τείχεσι σωθήσεται.
5. ἡ εἰρήνη ὑπὸ τῶν συμμάχων τῇ δίκῃ ποιεῖσθαι οἷά τ' ἐστίν;
6. οὐ πειθόμεθα τῷ ἐκείνου λόγῳ.

5. Adverbial accusative and accusative of respect

Some accusative words and phrases function as adverbs. You have already seen two examples:

| τέλος | finally, in the end | (Ch. 13) |
| μόνον | only | (Ch. 14) |

Other common examples are:

οὐδέν	in no way, not at all
πρῶτον	first, at first (Ch. 19)
τί	why?
τι	somewhat
τόνδε τὸν τρόπον	in this way

The *accusative of respect* is a specialized form of the adverbial accusative. It is used with adjectives and verbs (rarely with nouns) to specify in what respect something is true. This construction is common with parts of the body.

ἀγαθός ἐστι <u>τὴν μάχην</u>.
   He is good *at battle*.

<u>τὴν καρδίαν</u> χαίρω.
   I rejoice *in my heart*.

οὗτος <u>γένος</u> Πέρσης ἦν.
   This man was Persian *by* (*in respect to*) *birth*.

6. Explanatory infinitive

The *explanatory infinitive* is also used to specify in what respect something is true. This use is especially common with adjectives denoting ability (or its lack).

ἀγαθός ἐστι <u>μάχεσθαι</u>.
   He is good *at fighting*.

ἐκεῖνος ἄξιος οὐκ ἦν <u>ἄρχειν</u>.
   That man was not worthy *to rule*.

EXERCISE 15.7.   Dictionary practice. In the chart below, identify each word based on the dictionary entries given. Be sure to give all possibilities for ambiguous forms.

In the Entry column, write A, B, C, D or E

For **nouns** and **adjectives**: give case, number, and gender

For **verbs**: finite – give person, number, tense, voice (act., pass.) and mood (indic., imper.)

   infinitive – give tense and voice and identify as infinitive

   participle – give case, number, gender, tense and voice (active) and identify as a participle

   A.   δοκεύς, δοκέως, ὁ: main beam

   B.   δοκεύω, δοκεύσω, ἐδόκευσα, ... ἐδοκεύθην: watch, see

   C.   δοκέω, δοκήσω, ἐδόκησα, ... ἐδοκήθην: think; seem (good)

D. δοκή, δοκῆς, ἡ: vision

E. δόκημα, δοκήματος, τό: opinion, expectation

		Entry	Part of Speech	Form ID
Ex.	δοκῇ	*D*	*noun*	*dat. sg. f.*
1.	δοκάς			
2.	ἐδοκοῦντο			
3.	δόκευε			
4.	δοκέων			
5.	δοκοῦντος			
6.	δοκήμασι			
7.	δοκεύεσθαι			
8.	ἐδοκήθημεν			
9.	δοκήματι			
10.	δοκεύσασαν			

Exercise 15.8.   Translate into English.

1. οὐ μόνον ὑπὸ ἀνδρῶν ἀλλὰ καὶ ὑπὸ τῶν θεῶν αἱ πόλεις ἡμῶν σωθήσονται.
2. ἐκεῖνοι οἱ νεανίαι ὑπὸ ἑνὸς ἀνδρὸς διεφθείροντο.
3. ἐκεῖνος ὁ ἄρχων πάντα κακὸς εἶναι ὑπὸ πολλῶν τῶν πολιτῶν ἐλέχθη.
4. αἱ γυναῖκες, ἃς ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ εἴδομεν, ῥᾴδιαι θαυμάζειν ἦσαν.
5. οὗτος πολλὰ κακὰ ἔπαθεν ὅτε ἐπὶ τὴν κεφαλὴν ἔπεσεν.
6. οὐ παρῆμεν ἐπειδὴ ὁ τοῦ Σωκράτους θάνατος ἠγγέλθη.
7. μετὰ δέκα ἔτη τὰ ἔργα ἡμῶν ἔτι λέγεται ὑπὸ τῶν ἀνθρώπων.
8. ἡμεῖς δεινοὶ βοηθεῖν ἄλλοις τέλος γιγνόμεθα.
9. ὑπὸ τοῦ φόβου ὁ τάλας κῆρυξ ἀπέφυγεν ἀπὸ τῆς μάχης.
10. τίνα τρόπον οἱ Ἕλληνες τῶν Περσῶν διαφέρουσιν;

Exercise 15.9.   Translate into Greek.

1. That family suffered terrible things, because the master was unjust.
2. Why was the head of the lion made of stone?
3. The river was one stade away from the town.
4. From whom were you (pl.) learning the customs of the Spartans?
5. No horse was being harmed by the enemy who were throwing rocks.

READING 1: Forms of Government (Xenophon, adapted)

Xenophon reflects on the fragility of democracy and monarchy as forms of government.

ἔννοιά ποθ᾽ ἡμῖν ἦλθεν ὅτι πολλαὶ δημοκρατίαι κατελύθησαν
ὑπὸ τῶν ἀνδρῶν οἳ οὐ βούλονται ζῆν ἐν δημοκρατίᾳ, καὶ ὅτι τῶν
πολλῶν τυραννεῖν ἐπιχειρησάντων οἱ μὲν ταχὺ κατελύθησαν, οἱ
δὲ πολὺν χρόνον ἄρχοντες θαυμάζονται ὡς σοφοί τε καὶ εὐτυχεῖς
ἄνδρες.

Vocabulary:

δημοκρατία, -ας, ἡ	democracy	ὅτι	that
ἔννοια, -ας, ἡ	notion	ταχύ	*acc. as adv.*
ἐπιχειρέω	attempt	τυραννέω	be a ruler
εὐτυχής, -ές	lucky	ὡς	as

READING 2: Cyrus Marches against Artaxerxes (Xenophon, adapted)

In 401 B.C. Cyrus has gathered troops to march on Babylon and attack his brother, the king of the Persian empire.

ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει ἐπὶ τὸν Εὐφράτην ποταμόν, ὄντα τὸ εὖρος
τεττάρων σταδίων· καὶ πόλις αὐτόθι ᾠκεῖτο μεγάλη καὶ εὐδαίμων
Θάψακος ὄνομα. ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινεν ἡμέρας πέντε.

ἐντεῦθεν ἡ ὁδὸς ἦν πρὸς βασιλέα μέγαν εἰς Βαβυλῶνα, καὶ Κῦρος
καλέσας τοὺς στρατηγοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων κελεύει αὐτοὺς λέγειν ταῦτα
τοῖς στρατιώταις. οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται ἐχαλέπαινον τοῖς στρατηγοῖς καὶ
χρήματα ἠθέλησαν. ὅτε Κῦρος ὡμολόγησεν, τὸ δὴ πολὺ τῆς Ἑλληνικῆς
στρατιᾶς ἐπείσθη.

Vocabulary:

αὐτόθι	on the very spot	Εὐφράτης, -ου, ὁ	Euphrates
Βαβυλών, -ῶνος, ἡ	Babylon	Θάψακος, -ου, ὁ	Thapsacus
Ἑλληνικός, -ή, -όν	Greek	Κῦρος, -ου, ὁ	Cyrus
ἐνταῦθα	there	οἰκέω	inhabit, settle
ἐντεῦθεν	from there	πέντε	five
ἐξελαύνω	march (forth)	τέτταρες, τέτταρα	four
εὖρος, -εος, τό	width	χαλεπαίνω	be angry (at)

Practice Sentences

1. ἀνὴρ ἀτυχῶν δὲ σῴζεται ταῖς ἐλπίσιν.   (Menander)

2. ἐν νυκτὶ βουλὴ τοῖς σοφοῖσι γίγνεται.   (Menander)

3. οὐδεὶς δ' ἀνθρώπων αὐτὸς ἅπαντα σοφός.   (Theognis)

4. διαφέρει γυνὴ ἀνδρὸς τὴν φύσιν.   (Plato)

5. εἰρήνην ἢ πόλεμον ἀγγελῶ;   (Xenophon, adapted)

6. τὰ αὐτὰ ... μισεῖταί τε ὑπὸ τῶν θεῶν καὶ φιλεῖται.   (Plato)

Vocabulary:

ἀτυχέω	be unlucky	μισέω	hate
βουλή, -ῆς, ἡ	plan; counsel	σοφοῖσι	= σοφοῖς

Chapter 15 Vocabulary (18)

From now on any existing 6th principal part of verbs is included in the chapter vocabulary. A full list of principal parts is given beginning on p. 278.

Verbs:

ἀγγέλλω, ἀγγελῶ, ἤγγειλα, ... ἠγγέλθην	announce, report, tell
διαφέρω, διοίσω, διήνεγκα / διήνεγκον	go through (with), endure; (*intrans.*) differ from (+ *gen.*), make a difference (to) (+ *dat.*)
θαυμάζω, θαυμάσομαι, ἐθαύμασα, ... ἐθαυμάσθην	admire, wonder (at)
πάρειμι, παρέσομαι	be present
πάσχω, πείσομαι, ἔπαθον	suffer; experience
πίπτω, πεσοῦμαι, ἔπεσον	fall, fall down
πυνθάνομαι, πεύσομαι, ἐπυθόμην	learn (*by asking*)

Nouns:

γένος, γένους, τό	race, family; kind
ἥλιος, ἡλίου, ὁ	sun
καρδία, καρδίας, ἡ	heart
κεφαλή, κεφαλῆς, ἡ	head
λίθος, λίθου, ὁ	stone, rock
τρόπος, τρόπου, ὁ	way, manner; turn; habit
τρόπον (*acc.*) *as adv.*	in (some) way

Adjectives:

δεινός, δεινή, δεινόν	clever (at), skillful; terrible; awesome
Λακεδαιμόνιος, Λακεδαιμονία, Λακεδαιμόνιον	Spartan
ῥᾴδιος, ῥᾳδία, ῥᾴδιον	easy

Adverb:

ἔτι	still, yet

Preposition:

ὑπό (+ *gen.*)	(from) under; by (*agent*); because of
(+ *dat.*)	under, beneath, at the foot of
(+ *acc.*)	(down) under

CHAPTER 16

1. **Middle voice**
2. **Present and imperfect middle of thematic verbs (1st principal part)**
3. **Future and aorist middle of thematic verbs (2nd and 3rd principal parts)**
4. **Indirect perception**
5. **Indirect statement with ὅτι or ὡς**
6. **Irregular 3rd declension nouns**

1. Middle voice

So far you have learned the active and passive voices of the Greek verb. The subject of an active verb performs the action of the verb; the subject of a passive verb receives the action. Greek also has a third voice, appropriately called the *middle*. The middle voice adds an element of self-interest or self-involvement ('subject affectedness') that the active voice does not: the subject of a middle verb does something to or for himself.

ACTIVE	MIDDLE	PASSIVE
I stop (the train).	I stop (myself).	I am stopped (by the train).

Note: Deponent verbs (Ch. 12.1) show an inherent sense of subject affectedness, so they naturally use middle-passive forms instead of active ones.

Some verbs take on a meaning in the middle that is different from the active meaning. The self-interest or involvement of the subject is usually clear.

	ACTIVE	MIDDLE
αἱρέω	take	choose
γράφω	write	prosecute
παύω	stop (*trans.*)	cease, stop (*intrans.*)
πείθω	persuade (+ *acc.*)	obey (+ *dat.*)
πορεύω	carry, convey	march, journey
συμβουλεύω	advise (+ *dat.*)	consult (+ *dat.*)
φοβέω	scare, put to flight	fear, flee in fear
φυλάττω	guard	guard against

> **Fun fact**: πείθω / πείθομαι shows that for the Greeks, obedience was linked to persuasion rather than to compulsion; 'I obey' implies 'I persuade myself / I am persuaded.'

2. Present and imperfect middle of thematic verbs (1st principal part)

The present and imperfect middle endings are the same as those of the passive (Ch. 15.2).

INDICATIVE			**present**	**imperfect**
sing.	1st		-μαι	-μην
	2nd		-σαι	-σο
	3rd		-ται	-το
plur.	1st		-μεθα	-μεθα
	2nd		-σθε	-σθε
	3rd		-νται	-ντο
INFINITIVE			-σθαι	

Context will usually make clear which voice is being used. For example, a middle verb can have a direct object, but a passive verb cannot. ὑπό + genitive agent is likely to appear only with a passive verb.

EXERCISE 16.1.   Identify the voice of all verbs (active, middle, passive); then translate each sentence. (Identify deponent verbs as middle-passive unless your instructor gives you different instructions.)

1. ὀλίγοι ταῦτα ἐκ τῆς πόλεως εἷλον.
2. ἐκεῖνος ὁ τάλας λίθοις ἐβλάπτετο.
3. τίς πρὸς τοὺς ἄρχοντας ἀποκρινεῖται;
4. τῷ δεσπότῃ ὃν οὐδεὶς φιλεῖ πείθεσθέ ποτε;
5. τοὺς Πέρσας οὐδὲν ἐθαυμάζομεν.
6. ὑπὸ δεινοῦ λέοντος ἐδιώχθη ὁ υἱός μου.

3. Future and aorist middle of thematic verbs (2nd and 3rd principal parts)

Greek distinguishes the middle from the passive in the future and aorist. The middle forms add middle-passive endings to the 2nd and 3rd principal parts:

		future	**1st aorist**	**2nd aorist**
sing.	1st	παύσομαι	ἐπαυσάμην	ἐλιπόμην
	2nd	παύσει	ἐπαύσω	ἐλίπου
	3rd	παύσεται	ἐπαύσατο	ἐλίπετο
plur.	1st	παυσόμεθα	ἐπαυσάμεθα	ἐλιπόμεθα
	2nd	παύσεσθε	ἐπαύσασθε	ἐλίπεσθε
	3rd	παύσονται	ἐπαύσαντο	ἐλίποντο
INFINITIVE		παύσεσθαι	παύσασθαι	λιπέσθαι

In the 2nd person singular indicative, the **σ** drops out and contractions result:

-εσαι > -ει   -ασο > -ω   -εσο > -ου

EXERCISE 16.2.   Identify the tense of each verb; then transform the verb from active to the voice indicated, keeping the same person, number and tense.

1. λύσετε (middle)
2. ζητεῖ (passive)
3. ἔθυσας (middle)
4. ἐνίκα (passive)
5. εὕρομεν (middle)
6. ἄξουσι (passive)

4. Indirect perception

Ch. 12.4 introduced indirect statement with an infinitive as the object of most verbs of thinking and some verbs of saying. An *indirect perception* is a dependent clause that appears as the object of verbs of perceiving, knowing, learning and a few others. It uses a participle instead of the infinitive, but otherwise has the same structure as an indirect statement. (Some grammars call this construction 'indirect statement with a participle.') The negative is οὐ.

In an indirect perception, the participle agrees in case, number and gender with its subject, which is nominative if it is the subject of the main verb, and accusative if it is not. As in indirect statement, the tense of the participle expresses time relative to the main verb:

- present   same time as the main verb
- future   time after the main verb
- aorist   time before the main verb

Verbs that commonly govern an indirect perception include:

ἀγγέλλω	announce	μιμνήσκομαι	remember (Ch. 24)
αἰσθάνομαι	perceive	οἶδα	know (Ch. 24)
ἀκούω	hear	ὁράω	see
ἐπιλανθάνομαι	forget	πυνθάνομαι	learn
εὑρίσκω	discover		

> αἰσθάνομαι <u>οὐ σοφὸς ὤν</u>.
> I perceive *that I am not wise.*

> εἶδον <u>τὴν γυναῖκα μου σοφὴν οὖσαν</u>.
> I saw *that my wife was wise.*

> ἐπιλανθάνεται <u>αὐτὸς ποιήσας τοῦτο</u>.
> He forgets *that he himself did this.*

Note: A participle in indirect perception can look like a circumstantial participle. The context sometimes provides clues to help you distinguish between them.

indirect perception	*circumstantial*
ἀκούω <u>αὐτὸν λέγοντα</u>.	ἀκούω <u>αὐτοῦ λέγοντος</u>.
I hear *that he is speaking.*	I hear *him speaking.*

EXERCISE 16.3. Identify the use of each participle as attributive, circumstantial, genitive absolute or indirect perception; then translate the sentence.

1. ἠκούσαμεν τοὺς ἵππους τὰ χρήματα ταῦτα πορεύσοντας.
2. τοὺς τὰ ὅπλα ἐκ τῆς ὁδοῦ ἕλοντας ἐκάλει.
3. τὸν υἱὸν ὀνομάσας ὁ σώφρων πατὴρ ἔχαιρεν.
4. τῶν νόμων ἰσχυρῶν ὄντων, τοὺς ἀδίκους εὐθὺς γραφόμεθα.

5. Indirect statement with ὅτι or ὡς

In addition to indirect statement with an infinitive (Ch. 12.4) and indirect perception with a participle, Greek can also express indirect statement with a noun clause introduced by ὅτι or ὡς, 'that' and a finite verb. This construction is common after verbs of speaking (except φημί, Ch. 17.6), including some verbs that can also use the participle construction. The negative is οὐ.

As in the other indirect constructions, the tense of the dependent verb expresses time relative to the main verb. ὅτι usually indicates an objective fact, ὡς a personal opinion. Verbs that commonly govern an indirect statement with ὅτι or ὡς include:

ἀγγέλλω	announce	γιγνώσκω	know (Ch. 19)
ἀποκρίνομαι	answer	λέγω	say

λέγει <u>ὅτι οὐκ ἔθυσεν</u>.
He says *that he did not sacrifice.*

εἶπον <u>ὡς ὁ Σωκράτης σοφός ἐστιν</u>.
I / They said *that Socrates was wise.*

EXERCISE 16.4.   Translate into English and identify the dependent construction.
1. τίς ὅτι οἱ στρατιῶται ἡμῶν νικῶσιν ἀγγελεῖ;
2. τοὺς στρατιώτας ὑμῶν νικᾶν τις εἶπεν.
3. πρὸς ἐμὲ ἀπεκρίνατο ὡς ὁ θεὸς τρόπον τι ἔστιν.
4. αἰσθάνομαι ὀλίγους τῷ ὄντι δεινοὺς λέγειν ὄντας.

6. Irregular 3rd declension nouns

Some 3rd declension nouns are irregular, though they mainly have normal 3rd declension endings. Ζεύς exists only in the singular, of course.

			ship		**Zeus**
sing.	Nom.	ἡ	ναῦς	ὁ	Ζεύς
	Gen.		νεώς		Διός
	Dat.		νηί		Διί
	Acc.		ναῦν		Δία
	Voc.		ναῦ		Ζεῦ
plur.	N./V.		νῆες		
	Gen.		νεῶν		
	Dat.		ναυσί(ν)		
	Acc.		ναῦς		

EXERCISE 16.5.   Translate into English.
1. οὐδεὶς τῶν τούτου τοῦ στρατηγοῦ ἀξίων ἔργων ἐπελάθετο.
2. οἱ πολῖται τέλος ἔκριναν τὸν ἄρχοντα φίλιον τοῖς πολεμίοις εἶναι.
3. εἰ ναῦς ὀλίγας μόνον ἔσχομεν, οὐκ ἂν πάντες εἰς τὴν νῆσον ἐπορεύθημεν.
4. ὁ ἄρχων ὑμῶν τοὺς ἐκείνην τὴν ναῦν διαφθείραντας γράφεται;
5. εἶτα ὁ μὲν παῖς τοῦτον τὸν λίθον τὸν καλὸν εἷλε, ἐγὼ δὲ ἄλλον εἱλόμην.
6. ἐπαυσάμεθα θαυμάζοντες τὸν Λακεδαιμόνιον ὃς πᾶσι ψευδῆ ἔλεγεν.
7. οἱ ξένοι οὐ φοβοῦνται οὔτε τὸν Δία οὔτε τοὺς ἄλλους θεοὺς ἡμῶν.
8. ἀπεκρινάμην ὅτι περὶ τοῦτο τὸ ὄρος πολλῷ πόνῳ ἐπορευσάμην.
9. ἐπύθου οὐδένα ἐκείνῳ τῷ δεσπότῃ συμβουλεύοντα.
10. δεινὰ πείσεσθε τῶν Λακεδαιμονίων εἰσβαλόντων εἰς τὴν πατρίδα ὑμῶν.

Exercise 16.6. Translate into Greek.

1. Will he prosecute that strong man or not?
2. I heard that only the good die young.
3. The enemy was about to seize the swift ships of the Greeks.
4. They say that that soldier is good at judging horses.
5. We see that few young men differ from their fathers.

Reading: The Cunning of Artemisia – 1 (Herodotus, adapted)

The Persian ally Queen Artemisia takes a desperate step during the naval battle of Salamis in 480 B.C. Here, after their losses at Thermopylae, the Greeks defeated the Persian fleet led by King Xerxes.

παρῆν δ’ ἐν τῇ ναυμαχίᾳ ἡ τῶν Ἁλικαρνασσέων βασίλεια, ὀνόματι
Ἀρτεμισία. ἐπεὶ δ’ εἰς θόρυβον πολὺν ἀφίκετο τὰ βασιλέως πράγματα,
ἡ ναῦς ἡ τῆς Ἀρτεμισίας ἐδιώκετο ὑπὸ νεὼς Ἀττικῆς. καὶ ἡ Ἀρτεμισία
οὐκ οἵα τ’ ἦν διαφυγεῖν, ἔμπροσθε γὰρ αὐτῆς ἦσαν ἄλλαι νῆες φίλιαι,
ἡ δὲ ἑαυτῆς ναῦς πρὸς τοῖς πολεμίοις μάλιστα ἐτύγχανε οὖσα. ἔδοξεν
οὖν αὐτῇ τόδε ποιῆσαι· φιλίᾳ νηὶ ἐνέβαλεν, καὶ αὐτὴν καταδύσασα,
δύο ἑαυτῇ ἀγαθὰ ἔπραξεν.

Vocabulary:

Ἁλικαρνασσεύς, -έως, ὁ/ἡ	a Halicarnassian	ἑαυτῆς	her own; of herself
Ἀρτεμισία, -ας, ἡ	Artemisia	ἐμβαλλω (+ *dat.*)	ram
Ἀττικός, -ή, -όν	Attic	ἔμπροσθε (+ *gen.*)	in front of
ἀφικνέομαι, *aor.* ἀφίκετο (+ *prep.*)	come into	θόρυβος, -ου, ὁ	confusion
		καταδύω	sink
διαφεύγω	escape	ναυμαχία, -ας, ἡ	sea battle

Practice Sentences:

1. ἡ τέχνη μιμεῖται τὴν φύσιν.   (Aristotle)
2. χαίρω γὰρ ἀκούων ὑμῶν τῶν σοφῶν.   (Plato)
3. ἀκούσασι τοῖς στρατηγοῖς ταῦτα ἔδοξε.   (Xenophon)
4. αὐτῷ Κῦρον ἐπιστρατεύοντα πρῶτος ἤγγειλα.   (Xenophon)
5. Ζεὺς γὰρ κακὸν μὲν Τρωσί, πῆμα δ’ Ἑλλάδι   (Euripides)
   θέλων γενέσθαι ταῦτ’ ἐβούλευσεν πατήρ.

Vocabulary:

Κῦρος, -ου, ὁ	Cyrus	πῆμα, -ατος, τό	pain, misery
μιμέομαι	imitate	Τρώς, -ωός, ὁ	(a) Trojan

Chapter 16 Vocabulary (18)

Verbs:

αἱρέω, αἱρήσω, εἷλον (*stem* ἑλ-), ... ᾑρέθην	take, seize; (*mid.*) choose
αἰσθάνομαι, αἰσθήσομαι, ᾐσθόμην	perceive
ἀποκρίνομαι, ἀποκρινοῦμαι, ἀπεκρινάμην, ... ἀπεκρίθην	answer
γράφομαι	prosecute (*middle of* γράφω)
ἐπιλανθάνομαι, ἐπιλήσομαι, ἐπελαθόμην (+ *gen.*)	forget
κρίνω, κρινῶ, ἔκρινα, ... ἐκρίθην	judge, decide, determine
πείθομαι, πείσομαι, ἐπιθόμην (+ *dat.*)	obey (*middle of* πείθω)
πορεύω, πορεύσω, ἐπόρευσα, ... ἐπορεύθην	convey, carry; (*mid.*) march, journey
φοβέω, φοβήσω, ἐφόβησα, ... ἐφοβήθην	scare, put to flight; (*m-p*) fear, be afraid of, flee (in fear)

Nouns:

Ζεύς, Διός, ὁ	Zeus
ναῦς, νεώς, ἡ	ship
ὄρος, ὄρους, τό	mountain, hill
πόνος, πόνου, ὁ	work, labor; stress, trouble, pain

Adjectives:

ἰσχυρός, ἰσχυρά, ἰσχυρόν	strong
ὀλίγος, ὀλίγη, ὀλίγον	little, small, few
φίλιος, φιλία, φίλιον	friendly

Conjunctions:

ὅτι	that
ὡς	that

1. **Athematic (-μι) verbs**
2. **Present active of athematic (-μι) verbs (1st principal part)**
3. **Imperfect active of athematic (-μι) verbs (1st principal part)**
4. **Aorist active of athematic (-μι) verbs (3rd principal part)**
5. **Present and imperfect middle-passive and aorist middle of athematic (-μι) verbs**
6. **The verb φημί**
7. **The infinitive as a noun (articular infinitive)**
8. **Impersonal expressions**

1. Athematic (-μι) verbs

All the verbs you have learned so far are *thematic* (Ch. 2.1, 2.4) except εἰμί, 'be' (Ch. 7.2). Verbs that end in **-μι** are *athematic* in the present, and in some imperfect and aorist forms. In these athematic forms, the verb's own stem vowel appears instead of the thematic vowel. The stem vowel is long in the singular and short in the plural.

2. Present active of athematic (-μι) verbs (1st principal part)

Athematic verbs have different present active endings than thematic verbs, except in the 1st and 2nd plural indicative:

sing.	1st	-μι	*plur.*	1st	-μεν
	2nd	-ς		2nd	-τε
	3rd	-σι(ν)		3rd	-ᾱσι(ν)

The present stem of four common **-μι** verbs is *reduplicated*: that is, a prefix is added to the verb stem. This prefix consists of the initial consonant as seen in the 2nd principal part plus the vowel **ι**.

στήσω	>	ἵστημι: initial σ (*σίστημι) drops out, leaving a rough breathing
θήσω	>	τίθημι: initial θ (*θίθημι) becomes τ
ἥσω	>	ἵημι: a more complicated process here results in a rough breathing
δώσω	>	δίδωμι

		stand (stem ἰστα-)	**put** (stem τιθε-)	**throw** (stem ἰε-)	**give** (stem διδο-)
INDICATIVE					
sing.	1st	ἵστημι	τίθημι	ἵημι	δίδωμι
	2nd	ἵστης	τίθης	ἵης	δίδως
	3rd	ἵστησι(ν)	τίθησι(ν)	ἵησι(ν)	δίδωσι(ν)
plur.	1st	ἵσταμεν	τίθεμεν	ἵεμεν	δίδομεν
	2nd	ἵστατε	τίθετε	ἵετε	δίδοτε
	3rd	ἱστᾶσι(ν)	τιθέασι(ν)	ἱᾶσι(ν) (ἱέ-ασι)	διδόασι(ν)
INFINITIVE		ἱστάναι	τιθέναι	ἱέναι	διδόναι

EXERCISE 17.1.   Identify the person and number of each verb; then transform from singular to plural or plural to singular.

1. δίδωμι
2. τίθεμεν
3. διδόασι
4. ἱστᾶσι

5. ἵημι
6. ἵστης
7. τίθησι
8. ἵετε

3. Imperfect active of athematic (-μι) verbs (1st principal part)

The imperfect of athematic verbs has the same secondary endings as thematic verbs except in the 3rd plural:

sing.	1st	-ν	*plur.*	1st	-μεν
	2nd	-ς		2nd	-τε
	3rd	—		3rd	-σαν

The imperfect active of athematic verbs is an amalgam. The plural forms are regularly athematic; the singular forms with diphthongs are thematic and the thematic vowel contracts with the stem vowel:

		stand	**put**	**throw**	**give**
sing.	1st	ἵστην	ἐτίθην	ἵην	ἐδίδουν (ἐδίδο-ον)
	2nd	ἵστης	ἐτίθεις (ἐτίθε-ες)	ἵεις (ἵε-ες)	ἐδίδους (ἐδίδο-ες)
	3rd	ἵστη	ἐτίθει (ἐτίθε-ε)	ἵει (ἵε-ε)	ἐδίδου (ἐδίδο-ε)
plur.	1st	ἵσταμεν	ἐτίθεμεν	ἵεμεν	ἐδίδομεν
	2nd	ἵστατε	ἐτίθετε	ἵετε	ἐδίδοτε
	3rd	ἵστασαν	ἐτίθεσαν	ἵεσαν	ἐδίδοσαν

Note: In ἵστημι and ἵημι, the augmented long ῑ of the imperfect looks like the short ι of the present (Ch. 7.4). Therefore the tense of 2nd person forms and the 1st plural must be determined from their context.

EXERCISE 17.2.   Transform each of the following forms from present to imperfect, keeping the same person and number; then translate the new form.

1. ἱᾶσι   5. δίδωσι
2. ἵστης   6. τίθετε
3. διδόασι   7. ἵσταμεν
4. τίθησι   8. ἵημι

4. Aorist active of athematic (-μι) verbs (3rd principal part)

The aorist forms of athematic verbs do not have the reduplication of the 1st principal part. The plural aorist endings are the same as for the imperfect. The singular forms with **κ** are thematic because they derive from an alternate verb stem. The aorist of ἵημι is normally seen only in compound verbs.

		stand	**put**	**throw away**	**give**
INDICATIVE					
sing.	1st	ἔστην	ἔθηκα	ἀφῆκα	ἔδωκα
	2nd	ἔστης	ἔθηκας	ἀφῆκας	ἔδωκας
	3rd	ἔστη	ἔθηκε	ἀφῆκε(ν)	ἔδωκε
plur.	1st	ἔστημεν	ἔθεμεν	ἀφεῖμεν	ἔδομεν
	2nd	ἔστητε	ἔθετε	ἀφεῖτε	ἔδοτε
	3rd	ἔστησαν	ἔθεσαν	ἀφεῖσαν	ἔδοσαν
INFINITIVE		στῆναι	θεῖναι	ἀφεῖναι	δοῦναι

ἵστημι has two aorists, with different meanings. The 2nd aorist is given in the paradigm above.

- The 1st aorist is *transitive*; that is, it takes a direct object (Ch. 2.1):
  > ἔστησα τοὺς ἄνδρας ἐπὶ τοῦ τείχους.
  >> I made the men stand on the wall / I stood the men on the wall.

- The 2nd aorist is *intransitive*; that is, it does not take a direct object (Ch. 2.1):
  > ἔστην ἐπὶ τοῦ τείχους.
  >> I stood on the wall.

In other tenses of ἵστημι, the intransitive meaning is expressed by the middle voice (see below).

EXERCISE 17.3.   Identify the person, number and tense of the verb; then translate each sentence.

1. ταῦτα τὰ ὅπλα τότε ἵετε;   4. τόδε ἐν χερσὶν αὐτῆς θήσουσιν.
2. πρὸς τῷ ποταμῷ ἔστημεν.   5. ταύτῃ δῶρα ἐδίδους;
3. τίς ἐκεῖνα ἀφῆκεν;   6. νόμον νέον ἔστησαν.

5. Present and imperfect middle-passive and aorist middle of athematic (-μι) verbs

Athematic verbs have the same middle-passive endings as thematic verbs, but use the short version of their stem vowel in place of the thematic vowel. Here is the paradigm for δίδωμι. The paradigms of other athematic verbs are given in the Reference Morphology.

INDICATIVE

		present	imperfect	aorist
sing.	1st	δίδομαι	ἐδιδόμην	ἐδόμην
	2nd	δίδοσαι	ἐδίδοσο	ἔδοσο
	3rd	δίδοται	ἐδίδοτο	ἔδοτο
plur.	1st	διδόμεθα	ἐδιδόμεθα	ἐδόμεθα
	2nd	δίδοσθε	ἐδίδοσθε	ἔδοσθε
	3rd	δίδονται	ἐδίδοντο	ἔδοντο
INFINITIVE		δίδοσθαι		δόσθαι

EXERCISE 17.4.   Translate into English.

1. εἰς μέγαν κίνδυνον ἐτέθησαν ὑπὸ τῶν λεόντων.
2. τὸ πλῆθος τοὺς ἵππους πρὸ τοῦ τείχους ἵστη.
3. κατὰ τῆς νεώς τις καθεῖτο;
4. πολλὰ δῶρα τοῖς νικήσασι τίθεται.
5. αὗται αἱ ἐν τῇ Ἑλλάδι πόλεις τοῖς πολεμίοις δοθήσονται.
6. τί ὁ παῖς ὕδωρ ἐπὶ τὴν κεφαλὴν σοῦ ἵετο;

6. The verb φημί

Another common athematic verb is φημί, 'say' (stem **φα-**). Like εἰμί, 'be' (Ch. 7.2) it is enclitic in the present indicative, except for the 2nd singular. The imperfect is much more common than the 1st aorist and is often translated as an aorist. (It is sometimes classified as a 2nd aorist.)

INDICATIVE

		present	imperfect
sing.	1st	φημί	ἔφην
	2nd	φής	ἔφησθα
	3rd	φησί(ν)	ἔφη
plur.	1st	φαμέν	ἔφαμεν
	2nd	φατέ	ἔφατε
	3rd	φασί(ν)	ἔφασαν
INFINITIVE		φάναι	

The verb φημί means 'say, assert'; the negative means 'say not, deny.' φημί introduces an indirect statement with the infinitive (Ch. 12.4).

> οἱ παῖδες <u>τὴν μητέρα</u> φασὶ <u>σοφὴν εἶναι</u>.
>   The children say *that their mother is wise.*

> ὁ Σωκράτης οὔ φησιν <u>αὐτὸς σοφὸς εἶναι</u>.
>   Socrates says *that he himself is not wise.*
>   Socrates denies *that he himself is wise.*

7. The infinitive as a noun (articular infinitive)

So far you have seen four uses of the infinitive:

> complementary (Ch. 8.6)
> objective (Ch. 8.8)
> indirect statement (Ch. 12.4)
> explanatory (Ch. 15.6).

When the infinitive is used as a noun, it is treated as *neuter* and *singular*. It can have its own object or modifier (e.g. adverb, prepositional phrase). If the infinitive has a subject, it is normally in the accusative case.

The tense of the infinitive shows aspect. The negative is μή.

In the genitive or dative case, and when it is the object of a preposition, the infinitive must have an article. When it is a subject, predicate nominative or direct object, the article is optional. The case of the article shows what the infinitive phrase is doing in the sentence.

> ἀγαθόν ἐστι χρήματα <u>ἔχειν</u>.   *To have* money is good.
>   *Having* money is good.
>   It is good *to have* money.

> πείθει τὸν ἀδελφὸν <u>τῷ νῦν λέξαι</u>.   He persuades his brother *by speaking now.*

> διὰ <u>τὸ μήποτε φεύγειν</u> ὁ στρατηγὸς   On account of *never fleeing*, the general
>   εἶχε τὴν τιμήν.   had honor.

Exercise 17.5.   Identify the use of the infinitive (complementary, objective, indirect statement, explanatory, as a noun); then translate each sentence.

1. ὁ ἱππεὺς τὸν ἵππον Ξενοφῶντα ὀνομάσαι βούλεται.
2. ὁ υἱὸς τῇ βασιλείᾳ τῷ γράφειν συμβουλεύει.
3. πολλάκις ἔφασαν οἱ κήρυκες τὸν βασιλέα δεινὸν εἶναι.
4. ἐκελεύθην ὑπὸ τοῦ πατρὸς ψευδῆ μὴ λέγειν.
5. ἐκεῖνος μόνος τὸ μάχεσθαι φιλεῖ.
6. ἔλεξαν ὡς τοῦτο ῥᾴδιον πράττειν οὐδὲν ἔσται.

8. Impersonal expressions

The articular infinitive (with or without an article) is often used as the subject of certain verbs or phrases. Among the most common are:

δεῖ	it is necessary, one must
δοκεῖ	it seems (good / best); often with dative, "it seems good *to me*"
ἔξεστι	it is possible; with dative, "it is possible *for me*"
χρή	it is necessary / right, one ought
ἀνάγκη ἐστί	it is necessary

> δεῖ ἡμᾶς μὴ φυγεῖν.
>> It is necessary for us not to flee.
>> We must not flee.

> δοκεῖ μοι ταῦτα πράττειν.
>> It seems good to me to keep doing these things.
>> Doing these things seems good to me.

> ἔξεστι τοῖς παισὶ σώφροσι γενέσθαι;
>> Is it possible for the children to become sensible?

> χρὴ ὑπὲρ τῆς πατρίδος μάχεσθαι.
>> It is necessary / right to fight on behalf of the fatherland.
>> One ought to fight on behalf of the fatherland.

Exercise 17.6.   Translate into English.

1. τοῦ χρόνου βραχέος ὄντος, ἡμῖν ἐδόκει ἐκείνην τὴν κώμην εὐθὺς ζητῆσαι.
2. καὶ γὰρ ἡδύ ἐστι τὸ τὰ χρήματά τινι δοῦναι ὃν φιλοῦμεν.
3. ἡ τοῦ πολέμου θεὰ παντὶ ἀνδρὶ τὴν ἀρετὴν ἐν τῇ μάχῃ δίδωσιν;
4. πολλοί φασι τοῦτο ῥᾴδιον μὲν βουλεύειν, χαλεπὸν δὲ δρᾶν εἶναι.
5. διὰ τὸ πλῆθος τῶν καμήλων, ὑμῖν συμβουλεύω μὴ πρὸς ἐκείνῳ τῷ ποταμῷ τοὺς ἵππους στῆσαι.
6. τοῦ υἱοῦ κατὰ φύσιν ἀγαθοῦ λέγειν ὄντος, τῷ παντὶ γένει μέγα ὄνομα ἦν.
7. ὁ κῆρύξ φησι τοὺς βαρβάρους λίθους ἐπ᾽ ἀλλήλοις ἰέναι.
8. τὰς ναῦς τότε ἀφεῖναι οὐκ ἐξῆν.
9. ἐν τοῖς Ἕλλησιν ὁ Σωκράτης δεινὸς μὲν διδάσκειν ἦν, μεγάλην δὲ δίκην ἔδωκεν.
10. τὸ εὖ ζῆν ἀνθρώπῳ μεγάλη ἀγαθὴ τύχη ἐστίν.

Exercise 17.7.   Translate into Greek.

1. My friend says that a man's soul is immortal, but his body is not.
2. If it were easy to learn the truth, we would all be wise.
3. Next the master denied that his family was Spartan.
4. To flee / Fleeing from battle is never good.
5. Was it really necessary to leave these things in the sun for the whole day?

Reading: The Cunning of Artemisia – 2 (Herodotus, adapted)

Artemisia's reputation benefits when everyone misinterprets her actions.

ὅτε γὰρ ὁ τῆς Ἀττικῆς νεὼς τριήραρχος εἶδεν αὐτὴν ἐμβάλλουσαν νηὶ
ἀνδρῶν βαρβάρων, νομίσας τὴν ναῦν τὴν Ἀρτεμισίας ἢ Ἑλληνικὴν
εἶναι ἢ αὐτομολεῖν ἐκ τῶν βαρβάρων, ἀποστρέψας ἄλλας ναῦς
ἐδίωξεν. καὶ ὁ Ξέρξης εἶδεν τὴν βασίλειαν τὴν ναῦν ἐμβαλοῦσαν, καὶ
δή τις τῶν παρόντων εἶπεν· Δέσποτα, ὁρᾷς Ἀρτεμισίαν εὖ πράττουσαν
καὶ ναῦν τῶν πολεμίων καταδύσασαν; Ξέρξης δὲ τὴν τῆς Ἀρτεμισίας
ἀρετὴν θαυμάζων ἔλεξεν· Οἱ μὲν ἄνδρες μου νῦν γυναῖκες γίγνονται,
αἱ δὲ γυναῖκες ἄνδρες.

Vocabulary:

ἀποστρέφω	turn away	ἐμβάλλω (+ *dat. or acc.*)	ram
Ἀρτεμισία, -ας, ἡ	Artemisia	καταδύω	sink
Ἀττικός, -ή, -όν	Attic	Ξέρξης, -ου, ὁ	Xerxes
αὐτομολέω	desert	τριήραρχος, -ου, ὁ	captain
Ἑλληνικός, -ή, -όν	Greek		

Practice Sentences

1. πάντα τύχη καὶ μοῖρα, Περίκλεες, ἀνδρὶ δίδωσιν.   (Archilochus)

2. θεῷ μάχεσθαι δεινόν ἐστι καὶ τύχῃ.   (Menander)

3. ἀδικεῖ πολλάκις ὁ μὴ ποιῶν τι, οὐ μόνον   (Marcus Aurelius)
    ὁ ποιῶν τι.

4. τούτων, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἀθηναῖοι, … ἀληθῆ μέν   (Demosthenes)
    ἐστι τὰ πολλά, … ἀλλ᾽ … οὐχ ἡδέα ἀκούειν.

5. ὅμως δ᾽ ἀνάγκη πημονὰς βροτοῖς φέρειν / θεῶν διδόντων.   (Aeschylus)

6. οὐκ εὐθὺς ἀφήσω αὐτόν.   (Plato)

Vocabulary:

βροτός, -οῦ, ὁ	(a) mortal	Περικλῆς, -έους, ὁ	Pericles
μοῖρα, -ας, ἡ	fate	πημονή, -ῆς, ἡ	calamity
ὅμως	nevertheless		

Chapter 17 Vocabulary (15)

Verbs:

δεῖ (*impf.* ἔδει) (*impers.*)	it is necessary, one must
δίδωμι, δώσω, ἔδωκα, ... ἐδόθην	give, grant
δίκην δίδωμι	pay a penalty
ἔξεστι (*impers.*) (+ *dat.*)	it is possible (for)
ἵημι, ἥσω, -ἧκα, ... -εἵθην	throw; throw at (+ *gen.*); utter (words)
ἀφίημι	throw away; send away, let go, get rid of
ἵστημι, στήσω, ἔστησα (*trans.*)	(*trans.*) make stand, set, place;
/ ἔστην (*intrans.*), ... ἐστάθην	appoint, establish; (*intrans.*) stand
τίθημι, θήσω, ἔθηκα, ... ἐτέθην	put, place; assign, award; establish, make
φημί, φήσω, ἔφησα / ἔφην	say, assert
(*pres. encl. except 2 sg.*)	
οὔ φημι	say not, deny
χρή (*impers.*)	it is necessary, it is right; one ought

Nouns:

ἀρετή, ἀρετῆς, ἡ	excellence; virtue; bravery
κίνδυνος, κινδύνου, ὁ	danger
κριτής, κριτοῦ, ὁ	judge
πλῆθος, πλήθους, τό	crowd; number, amount
τύχη, τύχης, ἡ	luck, fortune (good or bad); fate, chance

Adverb:

πολλάκις	often

Preposition:

πρό (+ *gen.*)	before, in front of

1. **Present and aorist active participles of athematic verbs**
2. **Middle and passive participles**
3. **Imperatives**
4. **Noun relative clauses**
5. **Result clauses**
6. **Reading skills**

1. Present and aorist active participles of athematic verbs

As in the indicative and infinitive, the present active participles of athematic verbs have their own stem vowels instead of the thematic vowel (Ch. 17.1). The accent stands on the stem vowel, except in the feminine genitive plural.

The aorist active participles look the same as the present, except that they lack the reduplication of the first principal part (Ch. 17.2, 4).

The declensions of these participles follow patterns you have already learned; full paradigms for all these verbs are given in the Reference Morphology.

ἵστημι: like the adjective πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν (Ch. 8.1)

δίδωμι: like participles of thematic verbs (Ch. 13.2) except in the masculine nominative singular: διδούς, διδοῦσα, διδόν

ἵημι: like τίθημι, shown here

		present			**aorist**		
		m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
sing.	Nom.	τιθείς	τιθεῖσα	τιθέν	θείς	θεῖσα	θέν
	Gen.	τιθέντος	τιθείσης	τιθέντος	θέντος	θείσης	θέντος
	Dat.	τιθέντι	τιθείσῃ	τιθέντι	*etc.*		
	Acc.	τιθέντα	τιθεῖσαν	τιθέν			
plur.	Nom.	τιθέντες	τιθεῖσαι	τιθέντα			
	Gen.	τιθέντων	τιθεισῶν	τιθέντων			
	Dat.	τιθεῖσι(ν)	τιθείσαις	τιθεῖσι(ν)			
	Acc.	τιθέντας	τιθείσας	τιθέντα			

2. Middle and passive participles

- **Middle participles**

  All middle participles have the element **-μεν-** followed by regular 1st and 2nd declension endings (**-ος, -η, -ον**).

	m.	f.	n.
present	παυόμενος	παυομένη	παυόμενον
future	παυσόμενος	παυσομένη	παυσόμενον
1st aorist	παυσάμενος	παυσαμένη	παυσάμενον
2nd aorist	λιπόμενος	λιπομένη	λιπόμενον

  Present middle participles of contract verbs (Ch. 10.5, 6) and future middle participles of liquid / nasal verbs (Ch. 11.3) undergo contractions as usual. **-μι** verbs use the short version of their own stem vowel.

	m.	f.	n.
φιλέω	φιλούμενος	φιλουμένη	φιλούμενον
μένω	μενούμενος	μενουμένη	μενούμενον
τιμάω	τιμώμενος	τιμωμένη	τιμώμενον
ἵστημι	ἱστάμενος	ἱσταμένη	ἱστάμενον
τίθημι	τιθέμενος	τιθεμένη	τιθέμενον
ἵημι	ἱέμενος	ἱεμένη	ἱέμενον
δίδωμι	διδόμενος	διδομένη	διδόμενον

- **Passive participles**

  Present passive participles have the same forms as middle participles.

  Future passive participles add **-σ-** to the stem of the 6th principal part (Ch. 15.3) and have the same endings as the present middle participles.

	m.	f.	n.
παύω	παυθησόμενος	παυθησομένη	παυθησόμενον
γράφω	γραφησόμενος	γραφησομένη	γραφησόμενον

  Aorist passive participles have active endings added to the aorist passive stem. These participles have the same endings and accents as the present active participle of τίθημι (see above).

	m.	f.	n.
παύω	παυθείς	παυθεῖσα	παυθέν
γράφω	γραφείς	γραφεῖσα	γραφέν

  Full paradigms for the participles of all these verbs are given in the Reference Morphology.

Like active participles (Ch. 13.6), middle and passive participles are often best translated by a clause.

<u>δῶρον δεχόμενος</u>, χάριν εἶχεν.   *When he received a gift*, he was grateful.

<u>τῇ ἀδικηθείσῃ</u> ἐβοήθουν.   I was helping *the woman who had been injured*.

EXERCISE 18.1. Identify each participle by tense, voice, case, number, and gender; then match it to the noun it agrees with.

1. ζητηθησομένην	A. στρατιῶται
2. ἱστᾶσι	B. παιδός
3. βλαβέντα	C. κριτής
4. δόντι	D. ἀλήθειαν
5. ἀποθανούμενοι	E. ἄνδρας
6. πιθομένης	F. τείχη
7. λέγων	G. φίλῳ
8. πυνθανομένους	H. ἱππεῦσι

3. Imperatives

Tenses of the imperative express aspect, not time. The present imperative expresses a general command or prohibition (Ch. 9.2). The aorist imperative expresses a specific command. (Specific prohibitions are expressed by the aorist subjunctive, Ch. 20.3.)

present	**aorist**

<u>μένε</u> ἐν τῇ οἰκίᾳ.
    Stay in the house.
	<u>δός</u> μοι ἐκεῖνο.
	    Give me that.

τὰ ἀληθῆ <u>λέγετε</u>.
    Keep telling the truth.
	νῦν <u>λύσατε</u> τὰς καμήλους.
	    Release the camels now.

2nd person imperatives in all voices are shown here. The less common 3rd person imperatives ('let him go,' 'he is to stop that') are given in the Reference Morphology.

Aorist imperatives have no augment. The negative with imperatives is μή.

The accent is recessive except on the following 2nd aorist forms, which have the accent on the ultima:

- the 2nd singular middle: λιποῦ

- the 2nd singular active of five verbs:

ἔρχομαι	ἐλθέ	λέγω (εἶπον)	εἰπέ
εὑρίσκω	εὑρέ	ὁράω	ἰδέ
λαμβάνω	λαβέ		

Fun fact: The imperative ἄγε or φέρε, 'come, (do this),' often precedes another imperative.

Note: The infinitive is sometimes used in place of the imperative.

<u>δοῦναι</u> μοι τὴν χεῖρα.	*Give* me (your) hand.
τοὺς κακοὺς <u>μὴ θαυμάζειν</u>.	*Don't admire* bad people.

- **Thematic verbs**

present		stop	love	honor
Active				
sing.	2nd	παῦε	φίλει	τίμα
plur.	2nd	παύετε	φιλεῖτε	τιμᾶτε

Middle-Passive

The 2nd singular ending is **-σο**. The **σ** drops out between the thematic vowel and the **o** and contractions result as usual.

sing.	2nd	παύου	φιλοῦ	τιμῶ
plur.	2nd	παύεσθε	φιλεῖσθε	τιμᾶσθε

1st aorist			stop	
		Active	Middle	Passive
sing.	2nd	παῦσον	παῦσαι	παύθητι
plur.	2nd	παύσατε	παύσασθε	παύθητε

2nd aorist			leave	
		Active	Middle	Passive
sing.	2nd	λίπε	λιποῦ	λείφθητι
plur.	2nd	λίπετε	λίπεσθε	λείφθητε

- **Athematic verbs**

present			stand	put	throw	give
ACTIVE						
sing.	2nd		ἵστη	τίθει	ἵει	δίδου
plur.	2nd		ἵστατε	τίθετε	ἵετε	δίδοτε
MIDDLE-PASSIVE						
sing.	2nd		ἵστασο	τίθεσο	ἵεσο	δίδοσο
plur.	2nd		ἵστασθε	τίθεσθε	ἵεσθε	δίδοσθε

aorist   The first aorist active of ἵστημι is transitive, the 2nd aorist active is intransitive (Ch. 17.4).

		stand	put	throw	give
ACTIVE					
sing.	2nd	στῆσον / στῆθι	θές	ἄφες	δός
plur.	2nd	στήσατε / στῆτε	θέτε	ἄφετε	δότε
MIDDLE					
sing.	2nd		θοῦ	ἀφοῦ	δοῦ
plur.	2nd		θέσθε	ἄφεσθε	δόσθε

EXERCISE 18.2.   Identify the tense and voice of each imperative; then translate the sentence.

1. τήνδε τὴν ναῦν ἐπὶ τῇ νήσῳ στῆσον.
2. δέξαι τοὺς ἵππους καὶ μένε σὺν αὐτοῖς.
3. ἀλλ’ ἄγε μοι τόδε εἰπέ.
4. ζήτει καὶ εὑρήσεις αὐτό.
5. μήποτε τὴν ἀλήθειαν φοβεῖσθε.
6. σὺ δὲ τῶν ἐμῶν λόγων ἄκουσον.

4. Noun relative clauses

An adjectival relative clause (Ch. 11.6) modifies a noun or pronoun in the main clause (its *antecedent*). A noun relative clause has no antecedent. This means the entire clause takes the place of a noun. The *case* of the relative pronoun depends on its function in the relative clause.

as a subject

<u>ὁ ἀνὴρ</u> ἀγαθός ἐστι.	*The man* is good.
<u>ὃς τοῖς νόμοις πείθεται</u> ἀγαθός ἐστι.	*Whoever / He who obeys the laws* is good.

as a direct object

<u>τούτους</u> φιλοῦμεν.	We like *these men.*
<u>οἷς ἡ ἀγαθὴ τύχη ἐστίν</u>, φιλοῦμεν.	We like *those who have good fortune.*

Both types of relative clause can be introduced by the relative pronoun (Ch. 11.6), or by the indefinite relative pronoun ('whoever,' 'whatever'), which is the relative pronoun with the indefinite pronoun (Ch. 6.5) added to it.

		m.	f.	n.
sing.	Nom.	ὅστις	ἥτις	ὅ τι
	Gen.	οὗτινος	ἧστινος	οὗτινος
	Dat.	ᾧτινι	ᾗτινι	ᾧτινι
	Acc.	ὅντινα	ἥντινα	ὅ τι
plur.	Nom.	οἵτινες	αἵτινες	ἅτινα
	Gen.	ὧντινων	ὧντινων	ὧντινων
	Dat.	οἷστισι(ν)	αἷστισι(ν)	οἷστισι(ν)
	Acc.	οὕστινας	ἅστινας	ἅτινα

Note: The neuter singular ὅ τι is written as two words to help distinguish it from ὅτι, 'that' or 'because.'

When you translate a noun relative clause into English, you need to supply an antecedent (he who ... / those who ... / anyone who ...) or use the English indefinite form (whoever ...).

σοφοὶ ἦσαν <u>οἳ ταῦτα εἶπον</u>.
   The men who / Those who said these things were wise.

<u>ὅστις τοῖς νόμοις πείθεται</u> πιστεύομεν.
   We trust *whoever obeys the laws.*

EXERCISE 18.3. Bracket the relative clauses in the following sentences and identify each as an adjective or noun clause; then translate the sentence.

1. ἅτινα βούλει οὐκ ἀεὶ λαβέσθαι δύνασαι.
2. ἐκεῖνοι οἳ εὖ μάχονται ὑπὸ τῶν τῆς πόλεως τιμηθήσονται.
3. πῶς τῇ γυναικὶ ἣ δεινὴ βουλεύειν ἐστὶ πιστεύσομεν;
4. ὃς ψευδῆ λέγει τέλος εὑρηθήσεται.
5. αὐτὴν ὅ τι εἶδεν ἐφόβησεν.
6. δεῖ ἀποκρίνεσθαι τὸν κριτὴν ὃς ἡμῶν ἀκούσεται.

5. Result clauses – ὥστε

A result clause expresses either an *actual* result (something that actually happens) or a *probable* result (something intended to happen or likely to happen).

I was so hungry (that) I ate the whole thing.	(*actual result*)
I was hungry enough to eat an ox.	(*probable result*)
He is so foolish as to believe them.	(*probable result*)
subject is so _____ that he probably does x	(*probable result*)

In Greek, both types of result clause are introduced by ὥστε '(so) that,' '(so) as to.' A signpost word such as οὕτω (οὕτως before a vowel) 'so' or τοσοῦτος 'so much,' often appears in the main clause.

- **actual result** – ὥστε + indicative; the negative is οὐ.
    ἀγαθὸς στρατηγὸς ἦν ὥστε ἔπαυσε τὴν μάχην.
        He was a good general *so (that) he stopped the battle.*

    οὕτω δεινός ἐστιν ὥστε οὐ πιστεύομεν αὐτῷ.
        He is *so* clever *that we do not trust him.*

- **probable result** – ὥστε + infinitive; the negative is μή.
    οὕτω ἄδικός ἐστι ὥστε λαβεῖν τὰ σὰ χρήματα.
        He is *so* unjust *as to take your money.*

    ἐκεῖνοι τῆς νυκτὸς ἔφυγον ὥστε μὴ ὁρᾶσθαι.
        Those men fled during the night *so they were not likely to be seen.*

6. Reading skills

Paying close attention to signpost words and clause markers will help you to expect what comes next in a sentence. This will automatically reduce the number of grammatical constructions you need to consider (the possibilities, in most cases, are quite limited). The following chart illustrates this process for result clauses:

οὕτω(ς) → ὥστε ↗ indicative (neg. οὐ) = actual result   *He is so wise that he did x.*

↘ infinitive (neg. μή) = probable result   *He is so wise as to do x.*

Exercise 18.4.   Translate into English.
1. ζητοῦμεν ὅστις ἀεὶ τὰ ἀληθῆ λέγειν δύναται.
2. ὁ πόνος τοσοῦτος ἦν ὥστε ὁ ἐμὸς φίλος φέρειν οὐκ ἐδύνατο.
3. ὦ παῖδες, ἀεὶ τὸν πατέρα καὶ τὴν μητέρα πάντα τιμᾶτε.
4. οἱ ἐν κινδύνῳ εἶναι αἱρούμενοι ἀποθανεῖσθαι ἐλπίζουσιν;
5. εὐθὺς ἔλθετε· οἱ γὰρ ἱππεῖς νῦν ἀφικνοῦνται.
6. ἀπὸ τῶν ποιητῶν ἐπυθόμην πάντας τοὺς τῷ Διὶ μαχομένους δίκην διδόντας.
7. μὴ λέγε ὅτι τοῦτο ἀδύνατόν ἐστιν.
8. δεῖ ἐκ τῆς πόλεως ἰέναι οἵτινες παρὰ τοὺς νόμους τὸν βίον ἄγουσιν.
9. ὁ Ζεὺς μέγας καὶ τοιοῦτός ἐστιν ὥστε πάντα ὁρᾶν καὶ πάντα ἀκούειν.
10. τῷ ἑτέρῳ ἀνδρὶ εἶπες ὅτι ἀγαθὰ ἐπάθομεν ἀφικόμενοι παρὰ τοὺς Πέρσας;

Exercise 18.5. Translate into Greek.

1. My brother was of such a sort as to obey all the laws.
2. They do not like whoever did those things.
3. A few of the guards were standing beside the fire so it was easy to see each other.
4. Those who will lead us alongside the river are coming now.
5. I admired the gifts that were being given to those who won.

Reading: Thermopylae – 1 (Herodotus, adapted)

In 480 B.C., 300 Spartans with their king, Leonidas, heroically tried to defend Greece against the army of Xerxes, king of Persia. The battle took place at Thermopylae, a narrow pass between the mountains and the sea along the coast of Thessaly.

Ξέρξου ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα στρατεύοντος, περὶ τοῦ πολέμου τούτου
ἡ Πυθία ἔφη ἢ Λακεδαίμονα διαφθαρήσεσθαι ὑπὸ τῶν βαρβάρων
ἢ βασιλέα Λακεδαιμονίων ἀποθανεῖσθαι. ὁ δὲ Λεωνίδης τοὺς
Λακεδαιμονίους ἐν τῷ ἐν ταῖς Θερμοπύλαις αὐχένι ἔστησεν. τῇ δὲ
τρίτῃ ἡμέρᾳ τῆς μάχης οἱ μετὰ τούτου, ὁμολογοῦντες τὸν θάνατον
ἐγγὺς εἶναι, ἐξῆλθον ἐκ τοῦ στενοῦ τοῦ αὐχένος εἰς τὸ εὐρύ.

τότε δὲ συμμίσγοντες ἔξω τῶν στενῶν ἔπιπτον πολλοὶ τῶν βαρβάρων·
ὄπισθε γὰρ οἱ τῶν Περσῶν ἡγεμόνες ἔχοντες μάστιγας ἐρράπιζον
πάντα ἄνδρα, ἀεὶ εἰς τὸ πρόσω ἐποτρύνοντες. πολλοὶ δὴ εἰσέπιπτον
αὐτῶν εἰς τὴν θάλατταν καὶ ἀπέθανον.

Vocabulary:

αὐχήν, -ένος, ὁ	mountain pass	μάστιξ, -ιγος, ἡ	whip
ἐγγύς (*adv.*)	near	ὄπισθε	from behind
ἔξω (+ *gen.*)	outside of	πρόσω	forward
ἐποτρύνω	urge on	Πυθία, -ας, ἡ	Pythia, priestess of
εὐρύς, -εῖα, -ύ	wide		the Delphic oracle
Θερμόπυλαι, -ων, αἱ	Thermopylae	ῥαπίζω	thrash
Λακεδαίμων,	Sparta	στενός, -ή, -όν	narrow
-ονος, ὁ		συμμίσγω	join battle
Λεωνίδης, -ου, ὁ	Leonidas	τρίτος, -η, -ον	third

Practice Sentences

1. ὃν οἱ θεοὶ φιλοῦσιν ἀποθνήσκει νέος.   (Menander)

2. ἀνὴρ δίκαιός ἐστιν, οὐχ ὁ μὴ ἀδικῶν,   (Menander)
    ἀλλ᾽ ὅστις ἀδικεῖν δυνάμενος μὴ βούλεται.

3. ἀλλ᾽ οὕτως ἰσχυρόν ἐστιν ἡ ἀλήθεια, ὥστε πάντων   (Aeschines)
    ἐπικρατεῖν τῶν ἀνθρωπίνων λογισμῶν.

4. γηράσκω δ᾽ ἀεὶ πολλὰ διδασκόμενος.   (Solon, adapted)

5. Ὦ ξεῖν,᾽ ἀγγέλλειν Λακεδαιμονίοις ὅτι τῇδε   (Herodotus)
    κείμεθα, τοῖς κείνων ῥήμασι πειθόμενοι.

6. καίτοι οὗτοι, εἰ ἦσαν ἄνδρες ἀγαθοί, ὡς σὺ φής, οὐκ ἄν   (Plato)
    ποτε ταῦτα ἔπασχον.

7. ἐγώ, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἥδομαι μὲν ὑφ᾽ ὑμῶν   (Xenophon)
    τιμώμενος ... καὶ χάριν ἔχω.

Vocabulary:

ἀνθρώπινος, -η, -ον	human	λογισμός, -οῦ, ὁ	calculation,
γηράσκω	grow old		argument
ἐπικρατέω (+ *gen.*)	prevail over	ξεῖν᾽	= ξένε
καίτοι	and yet	ῥῆμα, -ατος, τό	word
κεῖμαι	lie	τῇδε	in this place
κείνων	= ἐκείνων	ὡς	as

Chapter 18 Vocabulary (14)

Verbs:

ἀφικνέομαι, ἀφίξομαι, ἀφικόμην (*often + prep.*)	arrive (at), come to, reach
δέχομαι, δέξομαι, ἐδεξάμην, ... -εδέχθην	receive, accept, take
δύναμαι, δυνήσομαι, ... ἐδυνήθην	be able (to)

Pronoun:

ὅστις, ἥτις, ὅ τι	whoever, whichever; who, which

Adjectives:

ἀδύνατος, ἀδύνατον	powerless; impossible
δυνατός, δυνατή, δυνατόν	powerful, strong; able
ἐμός, ἐμή, ἐμόν; ἡμέτερος, ἡμετέρα, ἡμέτερον	my, our
σός, σή, σόν; ὑμέτερος, ὑμετέρα, ὑμέτερον	your, your (*pl.*)
τοιοῦτος, τοιαύτη, τοιοῦτο	such, of such a sort, of this sort
τοσοῦτος, τοσαύτη, τοσοῦτο	so large, so great; so much, so many (*pl.*)

Adverbs:

οὕτω οὕτως *before a vowel*	so, in this way
πῶς	how?

Preposition:

παρά (+ *gen.*)	from (the side of)
(+ *dat.*)	beside, by (the side of); with (someone), at someone's house
(+ *acc.*)	to (the side of), alongside; contrary to

Conjunction:

ὥστε	so that; so as to

1. Comparative and superlative adjectives

Greek *comparative* and *superlative* adjectives can be translated with an English comparative or superlative, or by a phrase:

positive	comparative	superlative
wise	wiser	wisest
	more wise	most wise
	fairly wise	very wise
	somewhat wise	really wise
	rather wise	

2. Comparative and superlative adjectives in -τερος, -τατος

Most 1st and 2nd declension adjectives have the element -τερ- in the comparative and -τατ- in the superlative attached to the masculine / neuter adjective stem.

The **o** of the stem is either long or short, opposite to the length of the previous syllable:

previous syllable long – short **o**	δεινός	δεινότερος
	δίκαιος	δικαιότερος
previous syllable short – long **ω**	σοφός	σοφώτερος
	χαλεπός	χαλεπώτερος

These forms have regular 1st and 2nd declension endings. For all comparative and superlative adjectives the neuter nominative singular form shows the position of the accent.

Adjectives like the following also have these comparative and superlative endings. Usually the ending is attached to the neuter nominative singular, but adjectives like εὐδαίμων have an extra syllable.

positive	comparative	superlative
ἀληθής (Ch. 11.2)	ἀληθέστερος	ἀληθέστατος
βραχύς (Ch. 14.3)	βραχύτερος	βραχύτατος
εὐδαίμων (Ch. 11.2)	εὐδαιμονέστερος	εὐδαιμονέστατος
τάλας (Ch. 8.2)	ταλάντερος	ταλάντατος

Exercise 19.1.   Supply the comparative or superlative form needed to complete each phrase.

Example: τῆς (φίλῐος) θεᾶς   comparative: φιλιωτέρας

1.   τοὺς (δεινός) λέοντας   comparative
2.   τῶν (τάλας) γυναικῶν   comparative
3.   τῷ (σώφρων) γένει   comparative
4.   οἱ (ἰσχῡρός) ἄρχοντες   superlative
5.   τοῖς (νέος) στρατιώταις   superlative
6.   τὸν (μᾱκρός) χρόνον   superlative

3. Comparative and superlative adjectives in -(ῑ)ων, -(ῐ)στος

For some adjectives, the comparative and superlative have different stems than the positive form. The comparative ends in -(ῑ)ων. The superlative ends in -(ῐ)στος, and has regular 1st and 2nd declension endings. Here is the paradigm of the comparative βελτίων, 'better.'

		better	
		m./f.	n.
sing.	Nom.	βελτίων	βέλτιον
	Gen.	βελτίονος	βελτίονος
	Dat.	βελτίονι	βελτίονι
	Acc.	βελτίονα / βελτίω	βέλτιον
plur.	Nom.	βελτίονες / βελτίους	βελτίονα
	Gen.	βελτιόνων	βελτιόνων
	Dat.	βελτίοσι(ν)	βελτίοσι(ν)
	Acc.	βελτίονας / βελτίους	βελτίονα

Note: The alternate Attic forms given above are common in informal speech.

For some adjectives in -**(ῑ)ων**, -**(ῐ)στος** the comparative and superlative stems differ only a little, if at all, from the positive:

positive	comparative	superlative
βραχύς	βραχίων, βράχιον	βράχιστος, -η, -ον
ἡδύς	ἡδίων, ἥδιον	ἥδιστος, -η, -ον
κακός	κακίων, κάκιον	κάκιστος, -η, -ον
καλός	καλλίων, κάλλιον	κάλλιστος, -η, -ον
ῥᾴδιος	ῥᾴων, ῥᾷον	ῥᾷστος, -η, -ον

Some important adjectives, however, have unpredictable comparative and superlative forms that you need to learn.

positive	comparative	superlative
ἀγαθός	ἀμείνων, ἄμεινον	ἄριστος (*bravery*)
	βελτίων, βέλτιον	βέλτιστος (*morals*)
	κρείττων, κρεῖττον	κράτιστος (*strength*)
κακός	ἥττων, ἧττον	ἥκιστος (*strength, number*)
	χείρων, χεῖρον (*also* κακίων)	χείριστος (*also* κάκιστος)
μέγας	μείζων, μεῖζον	μέγιστος
μῑκρός	ἐλάττων, ἔλαττον (*also* μικρότερος)	ἐλάχιστος (*also* μικρότατος)
πολύς	πλείων / πλέων, πλεῖον / πλέον	πλεῖστος
ταχύς	θάττων, θᾶττον	τάχιστος

EXERCISE 19.2.   Supply the comparative or superlative form needed to complete each phrase.

1. τῆς (κακός) ἀνάγκης   comparative
2. τὴν (ἀγαθός) φύσιν   comparative (*morals*)
3. (μῑκρός) πόλεις   comparative
4. τοῖς (ταχύς) πουσί   comparative
5. (πολύς) κριτάς   superlative
6. τῷ (μέγας) πυρί   superlative

EXERCISE 19.3. Transform each comparative to superlative and each superlative to comparative.

1. τὸν καλλίονα ἵππον
2. τῷ βραχίστῳ τείχει
3. τὰς ἀρίστας ψυχάς
4. τοῖς μείζοσι καρδίαις
5. τῶν ταχίστων ἱππέων
6. αἱ κρείττονες στρατιαί

4. Comparison with ἤ and the genitive of comparison

In Greek, there are two ways to express a comparison ('X is *bigger than* Y').

- with the conjunction ἤ, 'than'; the two items being compared are in the same case:

  > ὁ Σωκράτης σοφώτερος ἦν <u>ἢ οἱ ἄλλοι</u>.
  > > Socrates was wiser *than the others*.

  > τὸν Σωκράτη σοφώτερον εἶναι <u>ἢ τοὺς ἄλλους</u> ἐνομίσαμεν.
  > > We thought (that) Socrates was wiser *than the others*.

- with the *genitive of comparison*; the second item is in the genitive case:

  > ὁ Σωκράτης σοφώτερος ἦν <u>τῶν ἄλλων</u>.
  > > Socrates was wiser *than the others*.

  > τὸν Σωκράτη σοφώτερον εἶναι <u>τῶν ἄλλων</u> ἐνομίσαμεν.
  > > We thought (that) Socrates was wiser *than the others*.

EXERCISE 19.4.   Translate into English.

1. αἱ κάμηλοι δεινότεραι ἦσαν τοῖς ἵπποις ἢ οἱ στρατιῶται.
2. οὐδὲν ἥδιόν ἐστι τοῦ ὁμολογεῖν.
3. θάττονας ναῦς ἔχομεν ἢ οἱ βάρβαροι.
4. αἱ μὲν ἡμέραι μακρότεραι τῶν δέ.
5. τίς τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἄριστος τότε ἦν;
6. οἱ πρότεροι ἄνδρες ἀμείνονες βουλεύειν ἦσαν ἢ οἱ νῦν.

5. ὡς + superlative adjective

ὡς with a superlative adjective means 'as _____ as possible':

> <u>ὡς σοφώτατος</u> ἦν ὁ Σωκράτης.
> > Socrates was *as wise as possible*.

6. Athematic aorist of the verbs γιγνώσκω and βαίνω

A few verbs have 2nd aorists without the thematic vowel. Two common verbs of this type are βαίνω, 'go' and γιγνώσκω, 'know.' The forms of βαίνω are the same as those of the 2nd aorist of ἵστημι (Ch. 17.4).

		go	**know**	*endings*
INDICATIVE				
sing.	1st	ἔβην	ἔγνων	-ν
	2nd	ἔβης	ἔγνως	-ς
	3rd	ἔβη	ἔγνω	—
plur.	1st	ἔβημεν	ἔγνωμεν	-μεν
	2nd	ἔβητε	ἔγνωτε	-τε
	3rd	ἔβησαν	ἔγνωσαν	-σαν
IMPERATIVE				
sing.	2nd	βῆθι	γνῶθι	
plur.	2nd	βῆτε	γνῶτε	
INFINITIVE		βῆναι	γνῶναι	
PARTICIPLE		βάς, βᾶσα, βάν βάντος, *etc.*	γνούς, γνοῦσα, γνόν γνόντος, *etc.*	

Exercise 19.5. Dictionary practice. In the chart below, identify each word based on the dictionary entries given. Be sure to give all possibilities for ambiguous forms.

In the Entry column, write A, B, C, D or E

For **nouns** and **adjectives**: give case, number, and gender

For **verbs**: finite – give person, number, tense, voice (act., mid., pass.) and mood (indic., imper.)

infinitive – give tense and voice and identify as infinitive

participle – give case, number, gender, tense and voice and identify as a participle

A.   διδάσκω, διδάξω, ἐδίδαξα, ... ἐδιδάχθην: teach

B.   δίδωμι, δώσω, ἔδωκα, ... ἐδόθην: give

C.   δίδυμος, διδύμη, δίδυμον: double, twofold

D.   δωρότης, δωρότου, ὁ: giver of gifts

E.   δῶρον, δώρου, τό: gift

	Entry	Part of Speech	Form ID
Ex. διδάσκεσθε	*A*	*verb*	*2 pl. pres. mid./pass. indic.*
1. διδόασι			
2. διδάξονται			
3. δῶρα			
4. διδόναι			
5. δωρόται			
6. διδαχθέντες			
7. δώσων			
8. διδύμων			
9. ἐδίδους			
10. ἐδιδάχθη			

Exercise 19.6.   Translate into English.

1. λέγεται ὡς ὁ Σωκράτης τὸν ἥττονα λόγον κρείττονα ἐποίει.
2. ἡ κατὰ θάλατταν ὁδὸς οὕτω χαλεπὴ ἦν ὥστε εἰς τὸ τέλος ἀφικέσθαι ἀδύνατον ἦν.
3. ἔγνως τὸν Δία βασιλέα μέγιστον τῶν θεῶν ὄντα;
4. οὐδένα ἀξιώτερον σύμμαχον εὑρήσετε τῶν Λακεδαιμονίων.
5. πολλάκις ἄμεινον τὸ ἀκοῦσαι ἢ τὸ εἰπεῖν.
6. τὰ ἀληθῆ γνόντες ὑμῖν ἀγγελοῦμεν.
7. πλείονα παρὰ τὸν λόγον ἐκεῖνος ἄλλου τινὸς ἔλεγεν.
8. μετὰ βίον μακρότατον οὗτος ὁ ποιητὴς πρὸς τὴν πατρίδα πάλιν ἔβη καὶ ἐν τοῖς φίλοις ἐτελεύτησεν.
9. καὶ γὰρ οὐκ ἀεὶ τοῖς βελτίστοις νικᾶν ἔξεστιν.
10. ὅδε ἄξιός ἐστι τοῦ δοῦναι δίκην μείζονα ἢ πλεῖστοι.

Exercise 19.7.   Translate into Greek.

1. Who are by habit (in respect to habit) more hostile (πολέμῐος) to the Persians than we are?
2. The lions on this mountain are rather small.
3. This leader is weaker in power, so he is afraid to invade that country.
4. Is whoever has the most friends as happy as possible?
5. We honor the really wise judges who went to your (pl.) town.

READING: Thermopylae – 2 (Herodotus, adapted)

A Greek traitor named Ephialtes led the Persians through a mountain pass so they could attack the Spartans from behind. King Leonidas fought bravely and died before the final stage of the battle, which none of the Spartans fighting survived.

Λεωνίδης τε ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ μάχῃ ἔπεσεν ἀνὴρ γενόμενος ἄριστος, καὶ ἄλλοι μετ' αὐτοῦ Λακεδαιμονίων ὧν ἐγὼ ἐπυθόμην τὰ ὀνόματα. ὡς τοὺς σὺν Ἐφιάλτῃ ἐλθεῖν ἐπύθοντο οἱ Ἕλληνες, πάλιν εἰς τὸ στενὸν ἀνεχώρουν. ἐν τούτῳ μαχαίραις ἐμάχοντο, οἳ ἐτύγχανον ἔτι ἔχοντες, καὶ χερσὶ καὶ στόμασιν.

λέγεται δὲ ἀνὴρ μεγάλης ἀρετῆς γενέσθαι Λακεδαιμόνιος Διηνέκης. πρὸ δὲ τῆς μάχης, τῶν συμμάχων τις αὐτῷ ἔφη τοὺς βαρβάρους τοσούτους ὄντας τὸν ἥλιον διὰ τὸ πλῆθος τῶν ὀϊστῶν ἀποκρύπτειν. Διηνέκης δὲ τόδε ἔφη· Ἀγαθὰ ἀγγέλλεις· ἀποκρυπτόντων γὰρ τῶν Περσῶν τὸν ἥλιον, ὑπὸ σκιᾷ ἔσται πρὸς αὐτοὺς ἡ μάχη, καὶ οὐκ ἐν ἡλίῳ.

Vocabulary:

ἀναχωρέω	withdraw	Λεωνίδης, -ου, ὁ	Leonidas
ἀποκρύπτω	hide away	μάχαιρα, -ας, ἡ	knife
Διηνέκης, -ους, ὁ	Dieneces, a Spartan soldier	ὀϊστός, -οῦ, ὁ	arrow
		σκιά, -ᾶς, ἡ	shade
Ἐφιάλτης, -ου, ὁ	Ephialtes, a Greek traitor	στενός, -ή, -όν	narrow

PRACTICE SENTENCES

1. βέλτιόν ἐστι σῶμά γ' ἢ ψυχὴν νοσεῖν.   (Menander)

2. οὐ γὰρ δοκεῖν ἄριστος, ἀλλ' εἶναι θέλει.   (Aeschylus)

3. δεῖ ... τὸ βέλτιστον ἀεί, μὴ τὸ ῥᾷστον ἅπαντας λέγειν.   (Demosthenes)

4. ἐν τοῖς κακοῖς γὰρ ἀγαθοὶ σαφέστατοι φίλοι.   (Euripides)

5. ἐν ὀργῇ μήτε τι λέγειν, μήτε πράττειν.   (Diogenes Laertius)

6. τί σιγᾷς; οὐκ ἐχρῆν σιγᾶν.   (Euripides)

7. πολλὰ τὰ δεινὰ κοὐδὲν ἀνθρώπου δεινότερον πέλει.   (Sophocles)

Vocabulary:

ἀγαθοί	= οἱ ἀγαθοί	νοσέω	be ill
γ'	= γε, at any rate	ὀργή, -ῆς, ἡ	anger
ἐχρῆν	= *impf.* of χρῆ	πέλω	= εἰμί
κοὐδέν	= καὶ οὐδέν	σαφής, -ές	clear

Chapter 19 Vocabulary (14)

Verbs:

βαίνω, βήσομαι, ἔβην	go
γιγνώσκω, γνώσομαι, ἔγνων, ... ἐγνώσθην	know, recognize; know how to (+ *inf.*)
τελευτάω, τελευτήσω, ἐτελεύτησα, ... ἐτελευτήθην	finish; die

Adjectives:

ἀγαθός

ἀμείνων, ἄμεινον	better, braver
ἄριστος, ἀρίστη, ἄριστον	best
βελτίων, βέλτιον	better (*morally*)
βέλτιστος, βελτίστη, βέλτιστον	best
κρείττων, κρεῖττον	better, stronger
κράτιστος, κρατίστη, κράτιστον	best, strongest

κακός

ἥττων, ἧττον	less, fewer; weaker
ἥκιστος, ἡκίστη, ἥκιστον	least
χείρων, χεῖρον	worse
χείριστος, χειρίστη, χείριστον	worst

μέγας

μείζων, μεῖζον	greater
μέγιστος, μεγίστη, μέγιστον	greatest

μικρός

ἐλάττων, ἔλαττον	smaller, fewer
ἐλάχιστος, ἐλαχίστη, ἐλάχιστον	smallest, least

πολύς

πλείων / πλέων, πλεῖον / πλέον	more, larger
πλεῖστος, πλείστη, πλεῖστον	most, greatest, largest

πρότερος, προτέρα, πρότερον	former, earlier; superior
πρῶτος, πρώτη, πρῶτον	first; foremost
πρῶτον (*acc. n.*) *as adv.*	first, at first

ταχύς

θάττων, θᾶττον	faster
τάχιστος, ταχίστη, τάχιστον	fastest
ὡς + *superlative adj.*	as _____ as possible

Conjunctions:

ἤ	than
ὡς	as, when
ὥσπερ	just as, as if

CHAPTER **20**

1. Subjunctive mood

You have already seen that *indicative* verbs make a factual statement or ask a simple question, and *imperative* verbs express a command (Ch. 2.1, 9.2, 18.3). *Subjunctive* verbs have three uses in a main clause:

- to express an exhortation

- to express a prohibition (negative command)

- to ask for advice or express doubt

The subjunctive mood is also used in a variety of dependent clauses, which will be introduced in later chapters.

Tenses of the subjunctive express aspect not time:

present (interruptible)	for ongoing or repeated actions
aorist (completed whole)	for specific occasions

The subjunctive never has an augment. The negative is μή.

2. Subjunctive of thematic verbs and εἰμί

All forms of the subjunctive have primary endings with the thematic vowel lengthened (ε/ο > η/ω). The aorist subjunctive therefore looks like a future form, but there is no future subjunctive. (Perfect forms of the subjunctive will be introduced in Ch. 24.2, 3). Note that the active endings are the same as the subjunctive of εἰμί, 'be.'

present

		Active	Middle-Passive	**be**
sing.	1st	παύω	παύωμαι	ὦ
	2nd	παύῃς	παύῃ	ᾖς
	3rd	παύῃ	παύηται	ᾖ
plur.	1st	παύωμεν	παυώμεθα	ὦμεν
	2nd	παύητε	παύησθε	ἦτε
	3rd	παύωσι(ν)	παύωνται	ὦσι(ν)

aorist

		Active		Middle		Passive
		1st	2nd	1st	2nd	
sing.	1st	παύσω	λίπω	παύσωμαι	λίπωμαι	παυθῶ
	2nd	παύσῃς	λίπῃς	παύσῃ	λίπῃ	παυθῇς
	3rd	παύσῃ	λίπῃ	παύσηται	λίπηται	παυθῇ
plur.	1st	παύσωμεν	λίπωμεν	παυσώμεθα	λίπωμεθα	παυθῶμεν
	2nd	παύσητε	λίπητε	παύσησθε	λίπησθε	παυθῆτε
	3rd	παύσωσι(ν)	λίπωσι(ν)	παύσωνται	λίπωνται	παυθῶσι(ν)

Note: In the aorist passive, the stem vowel contracts with the subjunctive ending (παυθή-ω) and the accent falls on the contracted syllable.

Exercise 20.1.   Transform each of the following indicative forms into subjunctive.

1. βαίνεις
2. ἔπεσε
3. βούλονται
4. ἐπορεύσασθε
5. ἐλάβομεν
6. φέρει
7. ἐπαύθητε
8. ἔπεμψα

3. Independent uses of the subjunctive

The subjunctive has three functions as a main verb. They are easily recognized by paying attention to other clues in the sentence.

- **Exhortation (hortatory)** – 1st person plural

    In the 1st plural (rarely 1st singular) the subjunctive often expresses an exhortation, such as English 'Let's do it!'

    θαυμάζωμεν τοὺς ἀγαθούς.
    Let us admire the good (people).

    λύσωμεν τὸν ἵππον.
    Let's release the horse.

    μὴ παυσώμεθα τούτου τοῦ πολέμου.
    Let us not cease from this war.

Fun fact: As with imperatives (Ch. 18.3), the imperative ἄγε or φέρε often precedes a hortatory subjunctive: 'come, let's do this.'

• **Prohibition, specific** – 2nd person, aorist + μή

In the aorist 2nd person (rarely 3rd), the subjunctive with μή (or a compound of μή) expresses a specific prohibition. (Greek uses the imperative mood for a general prohibition, Ch. 9.2, 18.3).

> <u>μὴ θαυμάσῃς</u>.
> *Don't be surprised*!

> <u>μηδένα βλάψητε</u>.
> *Don't hurt anyone.*

• **Deliberative question** – 1st person, question

In a question, a 1st person subjunctive expresses doubt about what will happen or what the speaker should do. This use is often merely rhetorical.

> <u>πειθώμεθα</u> τοῖς νόμοις;
> *Should we obey* the laws?

> τί <u>λέξω</u>;
> What *am I to say*?

EXERCISE 20.2. For each of the following, complete these four tasks:

1) *Circle* the part of the verb that indicates its mood (indicative, subjunctive, imperative)
2) *Name* the mood
3) *Identify* the mood use
4) *List* the clues in the sentence that help you identify that use

	Mood	Mood Use	Clue(s)
Example: τῷ θεῳ ἔθυον.	indicative	statement (fact)	period
1. βαίνωμεν.	_____	_____	_____
2. βαίνωμεν;	_____	_____	_____
3. τίς ἐπαύσατο;	_____	_____	_____
4. φύλαττε τὸν ἵππον.	_____	_____	_____
5. μὴ λίπῃς νῦν.	_____	_____	_____

EXERCISE 20.3. Translate the sentences in Exercise 20.2.

4. Formation of adverbs

Many adverbs are formed from adjectives ('happily,' 'swiftly,' etc.) and look like the masculine genitive plural, with final **-ως** instead of **-ων**.

adjective	gen. pl.	adverb	meaning
εὐτυχής	εὐτυχῶν	εὐτυχῶς	fortunately
ἡδύς	ἡδέων	ἡδέως	sweetly, gladly
σοφός	σοφῶν	σοφῶς	wisely
σώφρων	σωφρόνων	σωφρόνως	sensibly

The positive form of other adverbs must be learned individually.

The comparative and superlative adverb forms are taken from the neuter accusative forms of comparative and superlative adjectives. These are adverbial accusatives (Ch. 15.5).

comparative adverb: accusative neuter *singular*

σοφώτερον   'more wisely,' 'rather wisely,' 'fairly wisely'
κάκιον   'more badly,' 'rather badly,' 'fairly badly'

superlative adverb: accusative neuter *plural*

σοφώτατα   'most wisely,' 'very wisely,' 'really wisely'
ἥδιστα   'most gladly,' 'very gladly,' 'really gladly'

Note: As with adjectives (Ch. 19.5), ὡς + superlative adverb means 'as _____ly as possible':

ὡς τάχιστα ἔβαινον.
    They were hurrying *as quickly as possible*.

The following adverb forms are worth memorizing separately:

positive	**comparative**	**superlative**
μάλα	μᾶλλον	μάλιστα (Ch. 14)
very	more	most

μᾶλλον / μάλιστα can also be used with the positive form of an adjective, as another way to make a comparative / superlative: μᾶλλον σοφός, 'more wise,' μάλιστα σοφός, 'most wise.'

5. ἔχω + adverb = εἰμί + adjective

ἔχω + adverb often indicates a condition or state of being (cf. πράττειν εὖ / κακῶς Ch. 5).

ἀσφαλῶς ἔχω.   ἔχω καλῶς.
    I am safe.   I am (doing) well.

ἔχει ἀναγχαίως.   κακῶς ἔχει.
    It is necessary.   It is going badly. / It is bad.

Exercise 20.4. Identify the use of each subjunctive; then translate all sentences into English.

1. μὴ ἀποπέμψητε τοὺς συμμάχους οἳ ἡμῖν μάλα ἐβοήθησαν.
2. τῶν ἐν θαλάττῃ νεῶν λυθεισῶν ἔτι τὴν ἐλπίδα σχῶμεν;
3. ὡς πλεῖστα περὶ τῶν τότε Ἑλλήνων μανθάνωμεν.
4. νηὶ ἢ ποσὶ πρὸς τὴν χώραν ἐκείνην βῶ;
5. μὴ ποιήσῃς ταῦτα, εἰ ὑπὸ τῶν θεῶν φιλεῖσθαι βούλει.
6. κελεύωμεν ἕκαστον φύλακα τῶν ληφθέντων ἐπιμελεῖσθαι.
7. ὦ παῖδες, μὴ φοβηθῆτε ὑπὸ τούτων τῶν καμήλων.
8. τὰ τῆς πόλεως οὕτω κακῶς εἶχεν, ὥστε ἡμᾶς νέους ἄρχοντας αἱρεῖσθαι ἔδει.
9. πάντες ὡς βέλτιστοι γιγνώμεθα ὡς δυνάμεθα.
10. ἔγνωμεν ἄνευ τῶν ἐν τῷ οὐρανῷ θεῶν οὔποτε μέγα τι δρῶντες.

Exercise 20.5. Translate into Greek.

1. What should we do on behalf of the family of those who died?
2. The reputation of those beyond the mountain is so great that everyone admires them.
3. Don't (pl.) expect good luck to last (remain) for many years.
4. Let's trust our ships rather than the walls.
5. It is necessary to speak the truth always.

Reading: Funeral Oration for the War Dead (Lysias, adapted)

Since death comes to everyone, those who died in battle should not be mourned, but honored because they died for a noble cause.

τί δεῖ ἡμᾶς πενθεῖν ἐπισταμένους ὅτι ὁ θάνατος κοινός ἐστι καὶ τοῖς χειρίστοις καὶ τοῖς βελτίστοις; εἰ μὲν γὰρ οἷόν τε ἦν τοῖς τοὺς ἐν τῷ πολέμῳ κινδύνους φυγοῦσιν ἀθανάτους εἶναι, ἄξιον ἂν ἦν πενθεῖν. νῦν δὲ ἡ ἡμετέρα φύσις ἥττων γίγνεται καὶ πάντες ἀποθνήσκομεν· ὥστε προσήκει τούτους εὐδαιμονεστάτους ἡγεῖσθαι, οἵτινες ὑπὲρ μεγίστων καὶ καλλίστων κινδυνεύσαντες οὕτω τὸν βίον ἐτελεύτησαν. οἳ πενθοῦνται ὡς μὲν θνητοὶ διὰ τὴν φύσιν τιμῶνται, ὡς δὲ ἀθάνατοι διὰ τὴν ἀρετήν· ἡγούμεθα γὰρ τούτους καὶ τοὺς ἀθανάτους ἀξίους ὄντας ταῖς αὐταῖς τιμαῖς τιμᾶσθαι.

Vocabulary:

ἐπίσταμαι	know	κοινός, -ή, -όν	common
θνητός, -ή, -όν	mortal	πενθέω	mourn
κινδυνεύω	face danger	προσήκει	'it is fitting'

PRACTICE SENTENCES

1. ἀλλ᾽ ἄγε δή, ὦ Κρίτων, πειθώμεθα αὐτῷ.   (Plato)

2. τί δράσω; ποῖ φύγω μητρὸς χέρας;   (Euripides)

3. πᾶν ποιοῦσιν ὥστε δίκην μὴ διδόναι.   (Plato)

4. μὴ παύσῃ ποτὲ   (Euripides)
   λέγουσ᾽ Ἰάσον᾽ ὡς κάκιστός ἐστ᾽ ἀνήρ.

5. καὶ τῶν παλαιῶν πόλλ᾽ ἔπη καλῶς ἔχει·   (Euripides)
   λόγοι γὰρ ἐσθλοὶ φάρμακον φόβου βροτοῖς.

6. ἀγαθὸν οὐ τὸ μὴ ἀδικεῖν ἀλλὰ τὸ μηδὲ ἐθέλειν.   (Democritus)

Vocabulary:

βροτός, -οῦ, ὁ	mortal	Κρίτων, -ωνος, ὁ	Crito
ἔπος, -ους, τό	word, saying	παλαιός, -ά, -όν	ancient, old
ἐσθλός, -ή, -όν	noble	ποῖ	to where?
Ἰάσων, -ονος, ὁ	Jason	φάρμακον, -ου, τό	remedy (against)
		(+ *gen.*)	

Chapter 20 Vocabulary (12)

Verbs:

ἐπιμελέομαι, ἐπιμελήσομαι,	care about, take care of (+ *gen.*);
... ἐπεμελήθην	take care that (+ *inf.*)
μανθάνω, μαθήσομαι, ἔμαθον	learn

Nouns:

δόξα, δόξης, ἡ	opinion, judgment; reputation, glory
οὐρανός, οὐρανοῦ, ὁ	heaven, sky

Adjective:

ἕκαστος, ἑκάστη, ἕκαστον	each (of several)

Adverbs:

ἡδέως	gladly; sweetly
μάλα	very, very much, exceedingly
μᾶλλον	more, rather
ὡς + *superlative adv.*	as _____ly as possible

Prepositions:

ἀνά	(+ *acc.*)	up, on; throughout
ἄνευ	(+ *gen.*)	without
ὑπέρ	(+ *gen.*)	for, for the sake of, on behalf of
	(+ *acc.*)	beyond

Conjunction:

μᾶλλον ... ἤ	rather than

1. **Optative mood**
2. **Optative of thematic verbs and** εἰμί
3. **Independent uses of the optative**
   - **Wish, hopeful**
   - **Possibility (potential)**
4. **Hopeless wish with the indicative**
5. **Reflexive pronouns**

1. Optative mood

The optative mood has two uses in a main clause:

- to express a wish

- to indicate a possibility (potential)

The optative is also used in a variety of dependent clauses, which will be introduced in later chapters.

The optative occurs most often in the present or aorist, with the same aspect as the subjunctive (Ch. 20.1):

    present (interruptible)   for ongoing or repeated actions

    aorist (completed whole)   for specific occasions

The future optative is relatively rare. It is used most commonly to replace the indicative after a past tense main verb in indirect statement (Ch. 16.5) and indirect question (Ch. 25.2).

The optative never has an augment. The negative is οὐ or μή, depending on the construction.

2. Optative of thematic verbs and εἰμί

The sign of the optative is -ι- or -ιη-. The optative of thematic verbs has secondary endings; -μι replaces -ν in the 1st singular active. Where a thematic vowel is present, it is **o**.

		Active	Middle-Passive
sing.	1st	-μι	-μην
	2nd	-ς	-σο
	3rd	—	-το
plur.	1st	-μεν	-μεθα
	2nd	-τε	-σθε
	3rd	-ν	-ντο

Note: In the 2nd person singular middle-passive of thematic verbs, the **σ** of the ending drops out (-**σο** > -**o**).

present

		Active	Middle-Passive	**be**
sing.	1st	παύοιμι	παυοίμην	εἴην
	2nd	παύοις	παύοιο	εἴης
	3rd	παύοι	παύοιτο	εἴη
plur.	1st	παύοιμεν	παυοίμεθα	εἶμεν
	2nd	παύοιτε	παύοισθε	εἶτε
	3rd	παύοιεν	παύοιντο	εἶεν

future

		Active	Middle-Passive	**be**
sing.	1st	παύσοιμι	παυσοίμην	ἐσοίμην
	2nd	παύσοις	παύσοιο	ἔσοιο
	3rd	παύσοι	παύσοιτο	ἔσοιτο
plur.	1st	παύσοιμεν	παυσοίμεθα	ἐσοίμεθα
	2nd	παύσοιτε	παύσοισθε	ἔσοισθε
	3rd	παύσοιεν	παύσοιντο	ἔσοιντο

aorist

		ACTIVE		MIDDLE		PASSIVE
		1st	2nd	1st	2nd	
sing.	1st	παύσαιμι	λίποιμι	παυσαίμην	λιποίμην	παυθείην
	2nd	παύσειας	λίποις	παύσαιο	λίποιο	παυθείης
	3rd	παύσειε(ν)	λίποι	παύσαιτο	λίποιτο	παυθείη
plur.	1st	παύσαιμεν	λίποιμεν	παυσαίμεθα	λιποίμεθα	παυθεῖμεν
	2nd	παύσαιτε	λίποιτε	παύσαισθε	λίποισθε	παυθεῖτε
	3rd	παύσειαν	λίποιεν	παύσαιντο	λίποιντο	παυθεῖεν

Note: The more common Attic forms are listed here. Full paradigms are given in the Reference Morphology.

Note: In the optative, the diphthongs -οι and -αι (3rd singular) are long for purposes of accent. This helps to distinguish between alternate aorist active optative (παύσαι) and aorist active infinitive or middle-passive imperative (παῦσαι).

EXERCISE 21.1.   Identify each of the following by person, number, tense and voice:

1. μανθάνοιμι
2. γένοιντο
3. πέμψαις
4. εἴη
5. βούλοιο
6. πιστευθεῖτε
7. κωλύσοιεν
8. γράψειε

3. Independent uses of the optative

The optative has two uses as a main verb. They are easily recognized by paying attention to other clues in the sentence.

- **Wish, hopeful**

    The optative by itself indicates a wish that can be fulfilled. This use is sometimes marked by the signposts εἴθε or εἰ γάρ, which are not translated. The negative is μή.

    τοῦτο <u>γένοιτο</u>.
        May this *happen*.
        I hope this *happens*.

    <u>εἰ γὰρ</u> ἡ θεὰ ἀεὶ ἡμᾶς <u>σῴζοι</u>.
        May the goddess always *protect* us.
        I hope the goddess always *protects* us.

- **Possibility (potential) + ἄν**

  The optative with the particle ἄν indicates a possibility or probability. The negative is οὐ.

  > τοῦτο <u>ἂν γένοιτο</u>.
  >> This *might happen.*

  > οἱ βάρβαροι <u>οὐκ ἂν προσβάλοιεν</u> ταύτῃ τῇ πόλει.
  >> The foreigners *would not attack* this city.

  Fun Fact: The same particle ἄν with a past *indicative* indicates impossibility (Ch. 10.3).

4. Hopeless wish with the indicative – imperfect or aorist + εἴθε / εἰ γάρ

An imperfect or aorist indicative with εἴθε or εἰ γάρ expresses a hopeless wish (many grammars call this an 'unattainable wish'). The imperfect refers to present time, the aorist to past time. The negative is μή.

> <u>εἰ γὰρ</u> τοῦτο <u>μὴ ἐγίγνετο</u>.
>> *If only* this *were not happening.*

> <u>εἴθε</u> τις <u>ἦλθεν</u>.
>> *If only* someone *had come.*

EXERCISE 21.2.   For each of the following, complete these four tasks:

1) *Circle* the part of the verb that indicates its mood (indicative, subjunctive, optative, imperative)
2) *Name* the mood
3) *Identify* the mood use
4) *List* the clues in the sentence that help you identify that use

	Mood	*Mood Use*	*Clue(s)*
Example: τῷ θεῷ ἔθυον.	indicative	statement (fact)	period
1. οὗτοι ἂν μάχοιντο.	_____	_____	_____
2. αὐτοῖς πιστεύωμεν.	_____	_____	_____
3. ἐκεῖνος ἔρχοιτο.	_____	_____	_____
4. εἰ γὰρ ἐκεῖνο ἔμαθον.	_____	_____	_____
5. νῦν ἔρχωμαι;	_____	_____	_____
6. μαθησόμεθά ποτε;	_____	_____	_____

EXERCISE 21.3.   Translate the sentences in Exercise 21.2.

5. Reflexive pronouns

The *reflexive pronoun* is used to refer back to the subject of the sentence (or clause) in which it occurs.

The Greek *reflexive pronoun* ('myself,' 'himself,' 'yourselves') is the personal pronoun followed by the appropriate form of αὐτός (Ch. 9.4). The plural forms of the 1st and 2nd person pronouns are written as two words.

		myself / ourselves		**yourself / yourselves**	
		m.	f.	m.	f.
sing.	Gen.	ἐμαυτοῦ	ἐμαυτῆς	σεαυτοῦ	σεαυτῆς
	Dat.	ἐμαυτῷ	ἐμαυτῇ	σεαυτῷ	σεαυτῇ
	Acc.	ἐμαυτόν	ἐμαυτήν	σεαυτόν	σεαυτήν
plur.	Gen.	ἡμῶν αὐτῶν	ἡμῶν αὐτῶν	ὑμῶν αὐτῶν	ὑμῶν αὐτῶν
	Dat.	ἡμῖν αὐτοῖς	ἡμῖν αὐταῖς	ὑμῖν αὐτοῖς	ὑμῖν αὐταῖς
	Acc.	ἡμᾶς αὐτούς	ἡμᾶς αὐτάς	ὑμᾶς αὐτούς	ὑμᾶς αὐτάς

		himself, herself, itself / themselves		
		m.	f.	n.
sing.	Gen.	ἑαυτοῦ	ἑαυτῆς	ἑαυτοῦ
	Dat.	ἑαυτῷ	ἑαυτῇ	ἑαυτῷ
	Acc.	ἑαυτόν	ἑαυτήν	ἑαυτό
plur.	Gen.	ἑαυτῶν	ἑαυτῶν	ἑαυτῶν
	Dat.	ἑαυτοῖς	ἑαυταῖς	ἑαυτοῖς
	Acc.	ἑαυτούς	ἑαυτάς	ἑαυτά

Fun fact: The 3rd person uses an old personal pronoun ἕ. Sometimes the ἑ- contracts with the -αυ: αὑτοῦ, etc.

Because it refers back to the subject, this pronoun does not occur in the nominative case. The nominative of αὐτός by itself can mean 'I myself,' 'you yourselves,' etc. (Ch. 9.5).

οἱ πολῖται καὶ <u>ἑαυτοὺς</u> καὶ τοὺς ἵππους ἔσωσαν.
     The citizens saved both *themselves* and their horses.

βουλόμεθα τὸν ἄρχοντα <u>ἡμῖν αὐτοῖς</u> βοηθεῖν.
     We want the ruler to help *us*.

<u>αὐτὴ</u> ἔχει τὰς καμήλους.
     She herself has the camels.

EXERCISE 21.4.   Translate into English.

1. ἐκεῖνος ἑαυτὸν εἶδεν.
2. ἐκεῖνος αὐτὸν ὁρᾷ.
3. ἡ γυνὴ οἴεται ὑμᾶς ἑαυτῇ πιστεῦσαι.
4. ἡ γυνὴ οἴεται ὑμᾶς ὑμῖν αὐτοῖς πιστεῦσαι.
5. ἡ γυνὴ οἴεται ὑμᾶς αὐτοῖς πιστεύσειν.

EXERCISE 21.5.   Identify the use of each subjunctive or optative; then translate all
                 sentences into English.

1. ἐγὼ τὴν ἐμαυτοῦ παῖδα θρέψαι οὐκ ἂν δυναίμην.
2. μὴ τοῦτο γένοιτο, ἐκείνων τῶν στρατιωτῶν ἀπόντων.
3. εἴθε τοσαῦτα αἰσχρὰ μὴ ἔπραξαν οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι.
4. εἰ τελευτᾶν δεῖ, ὡς κάλλιστα ἀποθνήσκωμεν.
5. ὁ δεινὸς ἄρχων ἂν πείσειε πάντας τοὺς πολίτας ἑαυτὸν αἱρεῖσθαι.
6. εἰ γὰρ ἡ ἀγαθὴ τύχη γένοιτο τοῖς ὑπὲρ τῆς πατρίδος εὖ μαχομένοις.
7. οἱ βάρβαροι εἰς τὴν πόλιν τῆς νυκτὸς ἂν ἀφίκοιντο.
8. εἰ γὰρ ὁ υἱὸς ἡμῶν τοῦ πατρὸς σοφώτερος ἦν.
9. οἱ ἡγεμόνες τὰ ἀληθῆ ἡμῖν ἀεὶ λέγοιεν.
10. μὴ τῇ καρδίᾳ πίθῃ ἀντὶ τῆς κεφαλῆς.

EXERCISE 21.6.   Translate into Greek.

1. Each of us must experience both the best and worst of life.
2. Someone might do a shameful thing for the sake of his own family.
3. May whoever won give thanks to Zeus.
4. I hope the young men will be strong not only in body but also in judgment.
5. Let's convey these weapons to the village while the guard is away.

Reading 1: The Character of Socrates (Xenophon, adapted)

Xenophon, who studied with Socrates, reflects on his teacher's character and virtues.

τῶν δὲ Σωκράτην γιγνωσκόντων πάντες ἔτι καὶ νῦν πάντων μάλιστα
ποθοῦσι ἐκεῖνον. ἐμοὶ δὴ τοιοῦτος ἦν· εὐσεβὴς μὲν οὕτως ὥστε μηδὲν
ἄνευ τῆς τῶν θεῶν γνώμης ποιεῖν, δίκαιος δὲ ὥστε βλάπτειν μηδὲ
μικρὸν μηδένα, ἐγκρατὴς δὲ ὥστε μηδέποτε προαιρεῖσθαι τὸ ἥδιον
ἀντὶ τοῦ βελτίονος, φρόνιμος δὲ ὥστε μὴ διαμαρτάνειν κρίνων τὰ
βελτίω καὶ τὰ χείρω. ἐμοὶ οὖν ἐδόκει τοιοῦτος εἶναι οἷος ἂν εἴη
ἄριστός τε ἀνὴρ καὶ εὐδαιμονέστατος.

Vocabulary:

διαμαρτάνω	fail, be wrong	προαιρέομαι	prefer
ἐγκρατής, -ές	self-controlled	Σωκράτην (*acc.*)	= Σωκράτη
εὐσεβής, -ές	pious	φρόνιμος, -η, -ον	sensible
ποθέω	long for		

Reading 2: Doing Wrong, Suffering Wrong (Plato)

Socrates and his friend Polos discuss whether it is better to do or suffer wrong.

Σωκράτης
    ἐγὼ γὰρ δὴ οἶμαι καὶ ἐμὲ καὶ σὲ καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους ἀνθρώπους τὸ
    ἀδικεῖν τοῦ ἀδικεῖσθαι κάκιον ἡγεῖσθαι καὶ τὸ μὴ διδόναι δίκην
    τοῦ διδόναι.

Πῶλος
    ἐγὼ δέ γε οὔτ᾽ ἐμὲ οὔτ᾽ ἄλλον ἀνθρώπων οὐδένα· ἐπεὶ σὺ δέξαι᾽ ἂν
    μᾶλλον ἀδικεῖσθαι ἢ ἀδικεῖν;

Σωκράτης
    καὶ σύ γ᾽ ἂν καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι πάντες.

Vocabulary:

γε, γ᾽	at least; yes	Πῶλος, -ου, ὁ	Polos
ἐγὼ δέ	(*supply* οἶμαι)		

Practice Sentences

1. μή μοι γένοιθ' ἃ βούλομ' ἀλλ' ἃ συμφέρει.   (Menander)

2. οὐκ ἔστιν οὐδείς, ὅστις οὐχ αὑτὸν φιλεῖ.   (Menander)

3. εἴθ' ηὕρομέν σ', Ἄδμητε, μὴ λυπούμενον.   (Euripides)

4. οὐκ ἂν δυναίμην σοὶ κακῶς φρονεῖν ποτε.   (Euripides)

5. Ἐγὼ μέν, ἔφη, Θεοὺς οἶμαι τοὺς νόμους τούτους   (Xenophon)
   τοῖς ἀνθρώποις θεῖναι.

6. μὴ θαυμάζειν μήτε θορυβεῖν τούτου ἕνεκα. ἔχει γὰρ οὑτωσί.   (Plato)

Vocabulary:

Ἄδμητος, -ου, ὁ	Admetus	οὑτωσί	= οὕτως
θορυβέω	make an uproar	συμφέρω	be useful
λυπέω	grieve	φρονέω	think

Chapter 21 Vocabulary (12)

Verb:
οἴομαι / οἶμαι, οἰήσομαι, ... ᾠήθην   think

Noun:
γνώμη, γνώμης, ἡ   opinion, judgment

Adjectives:
αἰσχρός, αἰσχρά, αἰσχρόν   shameful
ἕτερος, ἑτέρα, ἕτερον   the other (of two)

Pronouns:
ἑαυτοῦ, ἑαυτῆς, ἑαυτοῦ   himself, herself, itself
    also contracted αὑτοῦ, αὑτῆς, αὑτοῦ
ἐμαυτοῦ, ἐμαυτῆς, ἐμαυτοῦ   myself
σεαυτοῦ, σεαυτῆς, σεαυτοῦ   yourself

Prepositions:
ἀντί   (+ *gen.*)   instead of; opposite
ἕνεκα   (+ *gen.*) (*follows its object*)   on account of, for the sake of

Particle:
ἄν (*postpos.*)   (+ *opt.*) *marks possibility*

Exclamations:
εἰ γάρ   (+ *indic.*)   if only (*signals hopeless wishes*)
         (+ *opt.*)   I hope that, would that (*signals hopeful wishes*)

εἴθε   (+ *indic.*)   if only (*signals hopeless wishes*)
         (+ *opt.*)   I hope that, would that (*signals hopeful wishes*)

1. **Subjunctive of contract verbs**
2. **Subjunctive of athematic verbs**
3. **The subjunctive in dependent clauses**
   - **Purpose**
   - **Conditions**

1. Subjunctive of contract verbs

As with the aorist passive subjunctive (Ch. 20.2), in the present tense of contract verbs, the long vowel (**ω/η**) of the subjunctive contracts with the stem vowel. The accent stands on the contracted syllable.

		love	**honor**
		Active	
sing.	1st	φιλῶ	τιμῶ
	2nd	φιλῇς	τιμᾷς
	3rd	φιλῇ	τιμᾷ
plur.	1st	φιλῶμεν	τιμῶμεν
	2nd	φιλῆτε	τιμᾶτε
	3rd	φιλῶσι(ν)	τιμῶσι(ν)
		Middle-Passive	
sing.	1st	φιλῶμαι	τιμῶμαι
	2nd	φιλῇ	τιμᾷ
	3rd	φιλῆται	τιμᾶται
plur.	1st	φιλώμεθα	τιμώμεθα
	2nd	φιλῆσθε	τιμᾶσθε
	3rd	φιλῶνται	τιμῶνται

Note: The subjunctive forms of -αω verbs look like the indicative. Therefore the mood must be determined from the context.

2. Subjunctive of athematic verbs

Athematic verbs have the same subjunctive endings as thematic verbs. As with the contract verbs above, the long vowel (**ω/η**) of the subjunctive contracts with the stem vowel. The accent stands on the contracted syllable.

		stand	**put**	**throw**	**give**
			ACTIVE		
present					
sing.	1st	ἱστῶ	τιθῶ	ἱῶ	διδῶ
	2nd	ἱστῇς	τιθῇς	ἱῇς	διδῶς
	3rd	ἱστῇ	τιθῇ	ἱῇ	διδῷ
plur.	1st	ἱστῶμεν	τιθῶμεν	ἱῶμεν	διδῶμεν
	2nd	ἱστῆτε	τιθῆτε	ἱῆτε	διδῶτε
	3rd	ἱστῶσι(ν)	τιθῶσι(ν)	ἱῶσι(ν)	διδῶσι(ν)
aorist					
sing.	1st	στῶ	θῶ	ὧ	δῶ
	2nd	στῇς	θῇς	ᾗς	δῷς
	3rd	στῇ	θῇ	ᾗ	δῷ
plur.	1st	στῶμεν	θῶμεν	ὧμεν	δῶμεν
	2nd	στῆτε	θῆτε	ἧτε	δῶτε
	3rd	στῶσι(ν)	θῶσι(ν	ὧσι(ν)	δῶσι(ν)
			MIDDLE-PASSIVE		
present					
sing.	1st	ἱστῶμαι	τιθῶμαι	ἱῶμαι	διδῶμαι
	2nd	ἱστῇ	τιθῇ	ἱῇ	διδῷ
	3rd	ἱστῆται	τιθῆται	ἱῆται	διδῶται
plur.	1st	ἱστώμεθα	τιθώμεθα	ἱώμεθα	διδώμεθα
	2nd	ἱστῆσθε	τιθῆσθε	ἱῆσθε	διδῶσθε
	3rd	ἱστῶνται	τιθῶνται	ἱῶνται	διδῶνται
			MIDDLE		
aorist					
sing.	1st		θῶμαι	ὧμαι	δῶμαι
	2nd		θῇ	ᾗ	δῷ
	3rd		θῆται	ᾗται	δῶται
plur.	1st		θώμεθα	ὥμεθα	δώμεθα
	2nd		θῆσθε	ἧσθε	δῶσθε
	3rd		θῶνται	ὧνται	δῶνται

Note: ἵστημι has no aorist middle; the intransitive meaning is expressed by the 2nd aorist active (Ch. 17.4).

EXERCISE 22.1. Transform each of the following indicative forms into the subjunctive.

1. τελευτῶσι
2. ἔδωκα
3. σκοπεῖς
4. ἐδυνήθη

5. κατηγοροῦνται
6. ἀφῆκε
7. καθίσταμαι
8. φατέ

EXERCISE 22.2. For each of the following, complete these four tasks:

1) *Circle* the part of the verb that indicates its mood (indicative, subjunctive, optative, imperative)

2) *Name* the mood

3) *Identify* the mood use

4) *List* the clues in the sentence that help you identify that use

	Mood	**Mood Use**	**Clue(s)**
Example: τῷ θεῷ ἔθυον.	indicative	statement (fact)	period
1. γνώμην μὴ δῷς.	_____	_____	_____
2. τόδε ἵησιν;	_____	_____	_____
3. πᾶσι βοηθῶμεν.	_____	_____	_____
4. τοῦτο ἂν λέγοιεν.	_____	_____	_____
5. εἴθε μὴ ἐτελεύτησαν.	_____	_____	_____
6. ἐκεῖνα δρῶ;	_____	_____	_____

EXERCISE 22.3. Translate the sentences in Exercise 22.2.

3. The subjunctive in dependent clauses

The subjunctive mood is used in a variety of dependent clauses in Greek. This chapter introduces three common types. Tenses of the subjunctive express aspect not time (Ch. 20.1):

present (interruptible)   for ongoing or repeated actions

aorist (completed whole)   for specific occasions

- **Purpose** – ἵνα, ὡς, ὅπως

   When the main verb is in a primary tense (Ch. 2.1), a dependent clause introduced by ἵνα, ὡς, or ὅπως with the subjunctive indicates purpose. The negative is μή.

   τοῖς νόμοις πειθόμεθα <u>ὅπως τὴν εἰρήνην ἔχωμεν</u>.
      We obey the laws *in order to have peace*.
      We obey the laws *so that we may have peace*.

   οὗτοι τὴν πόλιν φυλάξουσιν <u>ἵνα οἱ πολέμιοι αὐτὴν μὴ λύσωσιν</u>.
      These men will guard the city *so the enemy doesn't destroy it*.

- **Conditions** – ἐάν

   A condition whose protasis has the clause marker ἐάν (= εἰ + ἄν), sometimes written ἤν, and a subjunctive verb can occur either with a present indicative or a future indicative (or equivalent) in the main clause (apodosis). As always the negative in the protasis is μή.

   1) **Present general** – present indicative
      A *general condition* indicates a customary action or general truth. In English, this is often expressed by using the adverb 'always' in the main clause (or 'ever' in the if-clause).

      ἐὰν ὁ Σωκράτης <u>λέγῃ</u>, <u>ἀκούομεν</u>.
         If Socrates (*ever*) *speaks*, we *always listen*.

      ἐὰν δῶρα <u>λάβωσιν</u>, οἱ παῖδες εὐδαίμονές <u>εἰσιν</u>.
         If they *receive* gifts, the children *are always* happy.

   2) **Future more vivid** – future indicative (or equivalent)
      A *future more vivid condition* presents both the condition (protasis) and the outcome (apodosis) as a real possibility.

      ἐὰν <u>ἔλθῃ</u>, αὐτὸν <u>πείσομεν</u>.
         If he *comes*, we *will persuade* him.

      ἐὰν <u>ἔλθῃ</u>, αὐτὸν <u>πεῖθε</u>.
         If he *comes*, *persuade* him.

These two conditions are easy to distinguish. When you see ἐάν you should expect a subjunctive in the if-clause, and there are only two possibilities for the main clause:

ἐάν   +   Subjunctive

Present indicative = Present general
If it (ever) rains, I always get wet.

Future indicative = Future more vivid
If we try this, we will succeed.
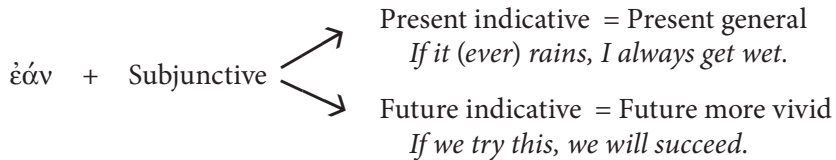
EXERCISE 22.4. Identify the use of all subjunctive verbs and translate each sentence.

1. τοῦτον κατηγορῶμεν ἢ μή;
2. τὰ τῆς πόλεως σκοπεῖτε ὡς ὁ ἄρχων ὡς σοφώτατα ἡγῆται.
3. ἐὰν τοῖς παισὶ δῶρα διδῷ, ἀεὶ χάριν ἔχουσιν.
4. τοῦ ποιητοῦ τοῦ λόγους ἡδεῖς ἱέντος πάντες ἀκούσωμεν.
5. ὦ τάλαν κῆρυξ, μὴ θῇς τοὺς πόδας εἰς τὸ πῦρ.

EXERCISE 22.5. Identify the use of each subjunctive; then translate the sentence into English.

1. ἐὰν τὸν αὐτὸν ἀεὶ κατηγορῶσιν οἱ πολῖται, τέλος οὐ πιστευθήσεται.
2. μὴ παύσῃς σκοπῶν τὰ γενησόμενα.
3. ἀναβαίνοις ἀνὰ τὴν Ἑλλάδα ἵνα τόπους ὡς καλλίστους ὁρᾷς.
4. ἐὰν τοῦ ἡγεμόνος νῦν ἀκούσωσι, τὴν γνώμην αὐτοῦ μαθήσονται.
5. ἐὰν τῷ δαίμονι πιστεύῃς, ἀεὶ ἀγαθὰ δέχει.
6. ἐὰν μάλα δεινῶς λέγῃ ὁ κῆρυξ, πάντες οἱ ἀκούοντες πεισθήσονται.
7. ἐπὶ τοῦ ὄρους στῶμεν ἵνα τὴν πᾶσαν πόλιν ἴδωμεν.
8. μὴ τιμήσητε τοὺς αἰσχρότατα ποιοῦντας.
9. οὗτος τὸν ἑαυτοῦ παῖδα καλεῖ ἐὰν μᾶλλον δυνατὸν φύλακα ζητῇ.
10. ὅπως τις εὖ πράττῃ, χρὴ ἄλλους εὖ ποιεῖν.

EXERCISE 22.6. Translate into Greek.

1. Don't (pl.) keep giving money to those who corrupt the leaders.
2. If you accuse this man, his friends will say that you are doing wrong!
3. Will she come in order to choose both a horse and a guide for herself at the same time?
4. Mothers always suffer if their children are in danger.
5. The citizens will be safe if the divine powers do not send something bad.

READING 1: What Makes a Good Leader? (Xenophon)

Socrates describes the obligations of good leaders toward the people who select them.

καὶ γὰρ βασιλεὺς αἱρεῖται οὐχ ἵνα ἑαυτοῦ καλῶς ἐπιμελῆται, ἀλλ'
ἵνα καὶ οἱ ἑλόμενοι δι' αὐτὸν εὖ πράττωσι· καὶ στρατεύονται δὲ
πάντες, ἵνα ὁ βίος αὐτοῖς ὡς βέλτιστος ᾖ, καὶ στρατηγοὺς αἱροῦνται
τούτου ἕνεκα, ἵνα πρὸς τοῦτο αὐτοῖς ἡγεμόνες ὦσι.

Vocabulary:
καί ... δέ   and also

READING 2: Common Notions (Euclid)

1. τὰ τῷ αὐτῷ ἴσα καὶ ἀλλήλοις ἐστὶν ἴσα.
2. καὶ ἐὰν ἴσοις ἴσα προστεθῇ, τὰ ὅλα ἐστὶν ἴσα.
3. καὶ ἐὰν ἀπὸ ἴσων ἴσα ἀφαιρεθῇ, τὰ καταλειπόμενά ἐστιν ἴσα.
4. καὶ ἐὰν ἀνίσοις ἴσα προστεθῇ, τὰ ὅλα ἐστὶν ἄνισα.
5. καὶ τὰ τοῦ αὐτοῦ διπλάσια ἴσα ἀλλήλοις ἐστίν.
6. καὶ τὰ τοῦ αὐτοῦ ἡμίση ἴσα ἀλλήλοις ἐστίν.
7. καὶ τὸ ὅλον τοῦ μέρους μεῖζόν ἐστιν.

Vocabulary:

ἄνισος, -ον	unequal	καταλείπω	leave behind
ἀφαιρέω	take away from	μέρος, -ους, τό	part
διπλάσιος, -α, -ον	double	ὅλος, -η, -ον	whole
ἡμίση	= ἡμίσεα, half	προστίθημι	add

PRACTICE SENTENCES

1. ἢν μὴ πολλῶν ἐπιθυμῇς, τὰ ὀλίγα σοι   (Democritus, adapted)
   πολλὰ δόξει.

2. ἢν δ᾽ ἐγγὺς ἔλθῃ θάνατος, οὐδεὶς βούλεται / θνῄσκειν.   (Euripides)

3. Διὰ τοῦτο, εἶπε, Δύο ὦτα ἔχομεν, στόμα δὲ ἕν,   (Diogenes Laertius)
   ἵνα πλείονα μὲν ἀκούωμεν, ἥττονα δὲ λέγωμεν.

4. μὴ κρίνετε, ἵνα μὴ κριθῆτε.   (Matthew)

5. ποιήσομεν, κἂν ἀποθανεῖν ἡμᾶς δέῃ.   (Aristophanes)

6. τί φῶμεν πρὸς ταῦτα, ὦ Κρίτων; ἄλλο τι ἢ ὁμολογῶμεν;   (Plato)

Vocabulary:

δύο	two	Κρίτων, -ωνος, ὁ	Crito
ἐγγύς	near	οὖς, ὠτός, τό	ear
ἐπιθυμέω (+ *gen.*)	desire	στόμα, -ατος, τό	mouth

Chapter 22 Vocabulary (12)

Verbs:

κατηγορέω, κατηγορήσω, κατηγόρησα, ... κατηγορήθην	speak against, accuse
σκοπέω, σκοπήσω, ἐσκόπησα	look at; consider, examine

Nouns:

δαίμων, δαίμονος, ὁ/ἡ	spirit, divine power, daemon
δαιμόνιον, δαιμονίου, τό	divine power, spirit
τόπος, τόπου, ὁ	place; topic

Adjective:

ἴσος, ἴση, ἴσον (+ *dat.*)	equal (to), the same as

Adverbs:

ἅμα	at the same time
οὐκέτι / μηκέτι	no longer, no more

Conjunctions:

ἐάν / ἤν (+ *subjunctive*)	if
ἵνα	in order that, (in order) to
κἄν (καὶ ἐάν)	even if
ὅπως	in order that
ὡς	in order that, (in order) to

1. Optative of contract verbs

In the present tense of contract verbs, the usual contractions take place between the stem and thematic vowels.

-εω: ε + οι = οι

-αω: α + οι = ῳ

		love	**honor**
present			
		ACTIVE	
sing.	1st	φιλοίην	τιμῴην
	2nd	φιλοίης	τιμῴης
	3rd	φιλοίη	τιμῴη
plur.	1st	φιλοῖμεν	τιμῷμεν
	2nd	φιλοῖτε	τιμῷτε
	3rd	φιλοῖεν	τιμῷεν

<div style="text-align: center;">MIDDLE-PASSIVE</div>

sing.	1st	φιλοίμην	τιμῴμην
	2nd	φιλοῖο	τιμῷο
	3rd	φιλοῖτο	τιμῷτο
plur.	1st	φιλοίμεθα	τιμῴμεθα
	2nd	φιλοῖσθε	τιμῷσθε
	3rd	φιλοῖντο	τιμῷντο

Note: The more common Attic forms are listed here. The full paradigms (with rarer alternate endings) are given in the Reference Morphology.

2. Optative of athematic verbs

In the present optative of athematic verbs, the marker -ι- is added to the stem vowel, creating a diphthong: -αι-, -ει-, -οι-.

		stand	**put**	**throw (away)**	**give**
			ACTIVE		
present					
sing.	1st	ἱσταίην	τιθείην	ἱείην	διδοίην
	2nd	ἱσταίης	τιθείης	ἱείης	διδοίης
	3rd	ἱσταίη	τιθείη	ἱείη	διδοίη
plur.	1st	ἱσταῖμεν	τιθεῖμεν	ἱεῖμεν	διδοῖμεν
	2nd	ἱσταῖτε	τιθεῖτε	ἱεῖτε	διδοῖτε
	3rd	ἱσταῖεν	τιθεῖεν	ἱεῖεν	διδοῖεν
aorist					
sing.	1st	σταίην	θείην	ἀφείην	δοίην
	2nd	σταίης	θείης	ἀφείης	δοίης
	3rd	σταίη	θείη	ἀφείη	δοίη
plur.	1st	σταῖμεν	θεῖμεν	ἀφεῖμεν	δοῖμεν
	2nd	σταῖτε	θεῖτε	ἀφεῖτε	δοῖτε
	3rd	σταῖεν	θεῖεν	ἀφεῖεν	δοῖεν
			MIDDLE-PASSIVE		
present					
sing.	1st	ἱσταίμην	τιθείμην	ἱείμην	διδοίμην
	2nd	ἱσταῖο	τιθεῖο	ἱεῖο	διδοῖο
	3rd	ἱσταῖτο	τιθεῖτο	ἱεῖτο	διδοῖτο
plur.	1st	ἱσταίμεθα	τιθείμεθα	ἱείμεθα	διδοίμεθα
	2nd	ἱσταῖσθε	τιθεῖσθε	ἱεῖσθε	διδοῖσθε
	3rd	ἱσταῖντο	τιθεῖντο	ἱεῖντο	διδοῖντο

MIDDLE

aorist

sing.	1st	σταίμην	θείμην	ἀφείμην	δοίμην
	2nd	σταῖο	θεῖο	ἀφεῖο	δοῖο
	3rd	σταῖτο	θεῖτο	ἀφεῖτο	δοῖτο
plur.	1st	σταίμεθα	θείμεθα	ἀφείμεθα	δοίμεθα
	2nd	σταῖσθε	θεῖσθε	ἀφεῖσθε	δοῖσθε
	3rd	σταῖντο	θεῖντο	ἀφεῖντο	δοῖντο

Note: The more common Attic forms are listed here. The full paradigms (with rarer alternate endings) are given in the Reference Morphology.

EXERCISE 23.1   Identify each of the following by person, number, tense and voice:

1. ἀφίκοιο
2. τιθείμεθα
3. δοῖεν
4. ὁρῴης

5. κατασταίη
6. ποιοῖτε
7. φαίη
8. πειρῴμην

EXERCISE 23.2. For each of the following, complete these four tasks:

1) *Circle* the part of the verb that indicates its mood (indicative, subjunctive, optative, imperative)
2) *Name* the mood
3) *Identify* the mood use
4) *List* the clues in the sentence that help you identify that use

	Mood	*Mood Use*	*Clue(s)*
Example: τῷ θεῷ ἔθυον.	indicative	statement (fact)	period
1. εἰ γὰρ θᾶττον ἀφίκεσθε.	_____	_____	_____
2. ὅπλα ἂν καταθεῖεν.	_____	_____	_____
3. τὰ ἀληθῆ φῶμεν;	_____	_____	_____
4. νικᾶν πειρῷο.	_____	_____	_____
5. τήνδε ἀφῶμεν.	_____	_____	_____
6. ὅδε δίκην δίδωσιν;	_____	_____	_____

EXERCISE 23.3. Translate the sentences in Exercise 23.2.

3. The optative in dependent clauses

The optative mood is used in a variety of dependent clauses in Greek. It replaces the subjunctive when the main verb is a secondary (past) tense. It can also replace the indicative after a past tense main verb, most commonly in indirect statement (Ch. 16.5) and indirect question (Ch. 25.2). The only examples in this book are in Ch. 27 Practice Sentence 5 and Ch. 28 Reading 7.

As before (Ch. 21.1), the present optative expresses an interruptible action – used for ongoing actions; the aorist optative expresses a completed whole – preferred for specific occasions. The negative is οὐ or μή depending on the construction.

- **Purpose** – ἵνα, ὡς, ὅπως

    When the main verb is a past tense, a dependent clause introduced by ἵνα, ὡς, or ὅπως with the optative indicates purpose. The negative is μή.

    τοῖς νόμοις ἐπειθόμεθα ὅπως εἰρήνην ἔχοιμεν.
    > We obeyed the laws *in order to have peace.*
    > We obeyed the laws *so that we might have peace.*

    οὗτοι τὴν πόλιν ἐφύλαξαν ἵνα οἱ πολέμιοι αὐτὴν μὴ λύσειαν.
    > These men guarded the city *in order that the enemy not destroy it.*

- **Conditions** – εἰ

    A condition whose protasis has the clause marker εἰ and an optative verb can occur either with an imperfect indicative or with a potential optative (+ ἄν) in the main clause. As always the negative in the protasis is μή.

    1) **Past general condition** – imperfect indicative

        A *past general condition* is just like the present general condition (Ch. 22.3) except that the verb in the protasis is optative, and the verb in the apodosis is imperfect indicative.

        εἰ ὁ Σωκράτης λέγοι, ἠκούομεν.
        > If Socrates (*ever*) *spoke*, we *always listened.*

        εἰ δῶρα λάβοιντο, οἱ παῖδες εὐδαίμονες ἦσαν.
        > If they *received* gifts, the children *were always* happy.

    2) **Future less vivid condition** – optative + ἄν

        A *future less vivid condition* presents a less likely condition (protasis) and states a potential outcome (apodosis). Therefore the apodosis has a potential optative (Ch. 21.3). This condition is sometimes called a 'should-would' condition because it is often expressed with 'should' and 'would' in English.

        εἰ χρήματα μὴ ἔχοις, φίλους οὐκ ἂν ἔχοις.
        > If you *should* not *have* money, you *would* not *have* friends.

        εἰ ἀφίκοιτο, αὐτὸν ἂν πείσαιμεν.
        > If he *were to arrive*, we *would persuade* him.

Like the conditions with ἐάν and the subjunctive (Ch. 22.3), these conditions are easy to distinguish. When you see εἰ with an optative verb, there are only two possibilities for the main clause, an imperfect indicative or a potential optative.

εἰ + Optative

Imperfect indicative = Past general
If it (ever) *rained, I always got wet.*

Optative + ἄν = Future less vivid
If he should write us, we would be happy.
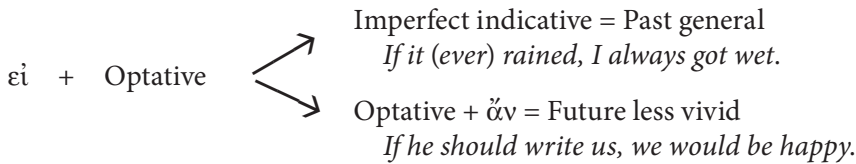
4. Future most vivid condition – indicative

In addition to future less vivid and future more vivid conditions, Greek also has a future most vivid condition. This condition uses a future indicative (or equivalent) in both protasis and apodosis, and usually indicates a strong emotion. It often signals a warning or threat: *If that happens again, I will be mad!* It is relatively rare except in drama.

εἰ τὸν παῖδα <u>λήψεται</u>, αὐτὸν <u>ἀποκτενῶ</u>.
    If he *takes* my child, I *will kill* him!

εἰ λέων πρὸς τὴν οἰκίαν <u>ἐλεύσεται</u>, <u>φεῦγε</u>.
    If a lion *comes* toward the house, *run away*!

Exercise 23.4.   Identify each type of condition and translate each sentence.
1. ἐὰν τήνδε τὴν πόλιν ἤδη λάβωμεν, οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι μένειν οὐ δυνήσονται.
2. οὐκ ἂν τῶν νησῶν ἐκράτει, εἰ μὴ ναῦς εἶχεν.
3. οὐκ ἂν εὐδαίμων εἴην εἰ οἱ πολέμιοι ἡμᾶς νικῷεν.
4. εἴ τίς σε ἤρετο, τί ἂν ἀπεκρίνω;
5. εἴ τις ἐκεῖνο ποιοίη, καλῶς εἶχεν.

EXERCISE 23.5. Dictionary practice. In the chart below, identify each word based on the dictionary entries given. Be sure to give all possibilities for ambiguous forms.

In the Entry column, write A, B, C, D or E

For **nouns** and **adjectives**: give case, number, and gender

For **verbs**: finite – give person, number, tense, voice (act., mid., pass.) and mood (indic., subj., opt., imper.)

infinitive – give tense and voice and identify as infinitive

participle – give case, number, gender, tense and voice and identify as a participle

A.   βουλευτής, βουλευτοῦ, ὁ: adviser, counselor
B.   βουλευτικός, βουλευτική, βουλευτικόν: of the Council, able to advise
C.   βουλεύω, βουλεύσω, ἐβούλευσα, ... ἐβουλεύθην: plan
D.   βουλή, βουλῆς, ἡ: plan; Council
E.   βούλομαι, βουλήσομαι, ... ἐβουλήθην: want, wish

		Entry	Part of Speech	Form ID
Ex.	ἐβούλευσα	*C*	*verb*	*1 sg. aor. act. indic.*
1.	ἐβούλοντο			
2.	βουλευταί			
3.	βούλεσθαι			
4.	βουλεύεται			
5.	βουλήσει			
6.	βουλευτικάς			
7.	ἐβουλεύθησαν			
8.	βουλῶν			
9.	βουλεύσοντι			
10.	βουλοίμην			

EXERCISE 23.6. Identify the use of each optative; then translate all sentences into English.

1. ἡδέως ἂν δοίην αὐτοῖς τὰ χρήματα εἰ δεήσαιντο.
2. ἀεὶ τιμῴη ἂν τὴν τῆς πόλεως βασίλειαν.
3. εἰ τὸν βασιλέα ἡμῶν ἀποκτενεῖς, αὐτὸς αὐτίκα ἀποθανεῖ.
4. τίς τὰς τῆς γῆς καὶ τοῦ οὐράνου αἰτίας φῆναι ἂν πειρῴη;
5. τοὺς λόγους τοὺς τοῦ δαίμονος ἐσκόπει ἵνα ὡς σωφρονέστατα ζῴη.
6. νόμους νέους ἂν ἱσταίμεθα, τῶν προτέρων χειρίστων ὄντων.
7. ταῦτα ἠρώτων ὡς τὴν γνώμην ὑμῶν μάθοιεν.
8. εἰ τοῖς ἄρχουσιν εὖ συμβουλεύοι, πολίτης μάλιστα ἀγαθός τε καὶ χρήσιμος ἐδοκεῖτο.
9. ὁ βασιλεὺς σώφρων οὐκ ἂν εἴη, εἰ τὰς ἑαυτοῦ ναῦς ἀφείη.
10. εἰ γὰρ τὸν ἐμὸν παῖδα γραφὴν μὴ ἐγράψαντο, ἐπεὶ οὗ τινος αἴτιός ἐστιν.

EXERCISE 23.7. Translate into Greek.

1. If you were to (should) make that law clear to me, I would obey it.
2. The young men were about to leave the town in order to fight against the enemy.
3. If you (pl.) do that again, you will be prosecuted!
4. The horse might be afraid on account of the camels.
5. Whoever becomes the most useful will be chosen (as) our leader.

READING: Jesus Rebuts a Charge of Blasphemy (Gospel according to John)

εἰ οὐ ποιῶ τὰ ἔργα τοῦ πατρός μου, μὴ πιστεύετέ μοι· εἰ δὲ ποιῶ, κἂν ἐμοὶ μὴ πιστεύητε τοῖς ἔργοις πιστεύετε, ἵνα γνῶτε καὶ γινώσκητε ὅτι ἐν ἐμοὶ ὁ πατὴρ κἀγὼ ἐν τῷ πατρί.

Vocabulary:
γινώσκητε   = γιγνώσκητε   κἄν   = καὶ ἐάν
κἀγώ   = καὶ ἐγώ

Practice Sentences

1. ἐὰν μὲν γὰρ τὰ δίκαια λέγῃς, οἱ θεοί σε φιλήσουσιν,   (Aristotle)
    ἐὰν δὲ τὰ ἄδικα, οἱ ἄνθρωποι.

2. οὔτε τέχνη οὔτε σοφία ἐφικτόν ἐστιν,   (Democritus, adapted)
    ἢν μὴ μάθῃ τις.

3. εἶεν, ὦ φίλε· ἔπειτα δύο ἅμα με ἐρωτᾷς;   (Plato)

4. Διός γε μείζονα ζῴης χρόνον.   (Euripides)
    μακροῦ βίου γὰρ ᾐσθόμην ἐρῶντά σε.

5. εἴπωμεν ἢ σιγῶμεν; ἢ τί δράσομεν;   (Euripides)

6. οὕτω νικήσαιμί τ᾽ ἐγὼ καὶ νομιζοίμην σοφός.   (Aristophanes)

Vocabulary:

εἶεν (*particle*)	well	ἐφικτός, -όν	achievable
ἐράω (+ *gen.*)	love	σιγάω	be silent

Chapter 23 Vocabulary (11)

Verbs:

ἐρωτάω, ἐρωτήσω, ἠρώτησα / ἠρόμην, ... ἠρωτήθην (*impf.* εἰρώτων)	ask, question; beg, ask for
δέω, δεήσω, ἐδέησα, ... ἐδεήθην (+ *gen.*)	lack, miss, need; (*mid. also*) ask, plead
πειράομαι, πειράσομαι, ἐπειρασάμην, ... ἐπειράθην	try
φαίνω, φανῶ, ἔφηνα, ... ἐφάνην	reveal, make clear; (*pass.*) appear; appear to be (+ *inf. or part.*)

Nouns:

αἰτία, αἰτίας, ἡ	cause, origin; charge, accusation
γραφή, γραφῆς, ἡ	charge, accusation
γραφὴν γράφομαι	bring a charge (against)

Adjectives:

αἴτιος, αἰτία, αἴτιον (+ *gen.*)	guilty (of); responsible (for)
δῆλος, δήλη, δῆλον	clear; visible
χρήσιμος, χρησίμη, χρήσιμον	useful, serviceable

Adverbs:

αὐτίκα	immediately
ἤδη	already, now

1. Perfect aspect

The perfect aspect in Greek emphasizes the result of an action, rather than the action itself. Compare: 'he died' (aorist aspect) and 'he is dead' (perfect aspect).

Like the present and future, the perfect tense ('I have come,' 'they have been released') is a primary tense in Greek. The pluperfect is the corresponding secondary tense ('I had come,' 'they had been released').

perfect	pluperfect
I have climbed the tree (and here I am at the top).	I had climbed the tree (yesterday).
He has arrived (and here he is now).	He had arrived (by the time I got here).

Because of their specialized and restricted meanings, the perfect and pluperfect are less common in Greek than English; the future perfect is rare and is not covered in this book.

2. Perfect and pluperfect active (4th principal part)

Most verbs begin with a consonant, or consonant + liquid (λ, ρ). In the perfect, the first letter of these verbs is *reduplicated* with ε, so they are easy to recognize (see the tense formation chart on p. 277.)

Other verbs lengthen their initial vowel, or add the prefix ε-. The perfect active stem ends in -κ unless the verb stem has its own consonant.

first letter	prefix	1st pr. part	4th pr. part
consonant or	reduplicated + ε	παύω	πέπαυκα
consonant + λ or ρ		πράττω	πέπραχα
vowel	lengthened	ἄγω	ἦχα
double consonant	ε-	ζητέω	ἐζήτηκα
(ζ, ξ, ψ) or		στρατεύω	ἐστράτευκα
consonant + stop (Ch. 1.3)			

Fun fact: Greek never has two syllables in a row beginning with an aspirated consonant, because that would be hard to pronounce. This rule (*Grassmann's Law*) explains why the perfect active of θύω is τέθυκα instead of θέθυκα. It also explains τίθημι (Ch. 17.2).

The perfect active indicative endings look like the 1st aorist (Ch. 5.3), except in the 3rd plural. Because the pluperfect is a past tense, the indicative is augmented; it has secondary endings with the vowel **η/ε** instead of **α**. The augment is not visible on verbs beginning with a vowel, because the initial vowel is long in the perfect.

			perfect	pluperfect	*endings*	
INDICATIVE						
sing.	1st		πέπαυκα	ἐπεπαύκη	-ᾰ	-η
	2nd		πέπαυκας	ἐπεπαύκης	-ᾰς	-ης
	3rd		πέπαυκε(ν)	ἐπεπαύκει(ν)	-ε(ν)	-ει(ν)
plur.	1st		πεπαύκαμεν	ἐπεπαύκεμεν	-ᾰμεν	-εμεν
	2nd		πεπαύκατε	ἐπεπαύκετε	-ᾰτε	-ετε
	3rd		πεπαύκασι(ν)	ἐπεπαύκεσαν	-ᾱσῐ(ν)	-εσαν
INFINITIVE			πεπαυκέναι		-έναι	

Note: The infinitive accent always falls on the penult.

Fun fact: The long ᾱ in the 3rd plural indicative is due to compensatory lengthening (Ch. 8.1, 11.4); the original ending was *-ᾰντι.

PARTICIPLE

		m.	f.	n.
sing.	N./V.	πεπαυκώς	πεπαυκυῖα	πεπαυκός
	Gen.	πεπαυκότος	πεπαυκυίας	πεπαυκότος
	Dat.	πεπαυκότι	πεπαυκυίᾳ	πεπαυκότι
	Acc.	πεπαυκότα	πεπαυκυῖαν	πεπαυκός
plur.	N./V.	πεπαυκότες	πεπαυκυῖαι	πεπαυκότα
	Gen.	πεπαυκότων	πεπαυκυιῶν	πεπαυκότων
	Dat.	πεπαυκόσι(ν)	πεπαυκυίαις	πεπαυκόσι(ν)
	Acc.	πεπαυκότας	πεπαυκυίας	πεπαυκότα

The perfect active subjunctive, optative and imperative forms consist of the singular or plural nominative participle followed by the appropriate form of εἰμί, 'be':

SUBJUNCTIVE	πεπαυκὼς, -υῖα, -ὸς	ὦ
OPTATIVE	πεπαυκὼς, -υῖα, -ὸς	εἴην
IMPERATIVE	πεπαυκὼς, -υῖα, -ὸς	ἴσθι

Full paradigms are given in the Reference Morphology.

EXERCISE 24.1.   Using the list of principal parts beginning on p. 278, give the 1st principal part of the verb each form comes from; then transform from perfect to pluperfect or pluperfect to perfect indicative.

1. κεκελεύκατε
2. ἠθέληκε
3. ἐπεπόνθης
4. ἐλελοίπεμεν
5. ἐτεθαυμάκεσαν
6. εἴληφα

3. Perfect and pluperfect middle-passive (5th principal part)

The perfect and pluperfect middle-passive tenses have the same prefix as the perfect active. Regular middle-passive endings are attached directly to the stem, with no thematic or stem vowel.

		perfect	**pluperfect**	*endings*	
INDICATIVE					
sing.	1st	πέπαυμαι	ἐπεπαύμην	-μαι	-μην
	2nd	πέπαυσαι	ἐπέπαυσο	-σαι	-σο
	3rd	πέπαυται	ἐπέπαυτο	-ται	-το
plur.	1st	πεπαύμεθα	ἐπεπαύμεθα	-μεθα	-μεθα
	2nd	πέπαυσθε	ἐπέπαυσθε	-σθε	-σθε
	3rd	πέπαυνται	ἐπέπαυντο	-νται	-ντο
INFINITIVE		πεπαῦσθαι		-σθαι	
PARTICIPLE		πεπαυμένος, πεπαυμένη, πεπαυμένον		-μένος, -μένη, -μένον	
		πεπαυμένου, πεπαυμένης, πεπαυμένου, *etc.*			

> **Note**: The accent of the infinitive and participle falls on the penult. The participle always includes the element **-μεν-** before the case ending.

When the endings are added to consonant stem verbs, they undergo the same kinds of spelling changes you have seen before (Ch. 2.6, 11.5). The following chart may be useful for reference:

labial: $\left.\begin{array}{l}\pi\\\beta\\\varphi\end{array}\right\} + \mu = \mu\mu$ $\left.\begin{array}{l}\pi\\\beta\\\varphi\end{array}\right\} + \sigma = \psi$ $\left.\begin{array}{l}\pi\\\beta\\\varphi\end{array}\right\} + \tau = \pi\tau$ $\left.\begin{array}{l}\pi\\\beta\\\varphi\end{array}\right\} + \sigma\theta = \varphi\theta$

dental: $\left.\begin{array}{l}\tau\\\delta, \zeta\\\theta\end{array}\right\} + \mu = \sigma\mu$ $\left.\begin{array}{l}\tau\\\delta, \zeta\\\theta\end{array}\right\} + \sigma = \sigma$ $\left.\begin{array}{l}\tau\\\delta, \zeta\\\theta\end{array}\right\} + \tau = \sigma\tau$ $\left.\begin{array}{l}\tau\\\delta, \zeta\\\theta\end{array}\right\} + \sigma\theta = \sigma\theta$

velar: $\left.\begin{array}{l}\kappa\\\gamma\\\chi\end{array}\right\} + \mu = \gamma\mu$ $\left.\begin{array}{l}\kappa\\\gamma\\\chi\end{array}\right\} + \sigma = \xi$ $\left.\begin{array}{l}\kappa\\\gamma\\\chi\end{array}\right\} + \tau = \kappa\tau$ $\left.\begin{array}{l}\kappa\\\gamma\\\chi\end{array}\right\} + \sigma\theta = \chi\theta$

> **Fun fact**: Consonants are adjusted the same way in English: 'pra**ct**ical' and 'pra**gm**atic' (both derived from πράττω).

There is an exception with the 3rd plural middle-passive of consonant stem verbs. These consist of the plural nominative participle with a 3rd plural form of εἰμί, 'be.' This solution avoids a complicated consonant combination (consonant + **-νται** / **-ντο**):

	perfect	**perfect**	**pluperfect**
labial:	λέλειμμαι	λελειμμένοι εἰσί(ν)	λελειμμένοι ἦσαν
dental:	πέπεισμαι	πεπεισμένοι εἰσί(ν)	πεπεισμένοι ἦσαν
velar:	ἦγμαι	ἠγμένοι εἰσί(ν)	ἠγμένοι ἦσαν

As with the active forms, the perfect middle-passive subjunctive, optative and imperative of all verbs are formed with the singular or plural nominative participle followed by the appropriate form of the subjunctive, optative or imperative of εἰμί, 'be.' Full paradigms are given in the Reference Morphology.

EXERCISE 24.2. Using the list of principal parts beginning on p. 278, give the 1st principal part of the verb each form comes from; then transform from perfect to pluperfect or pluperfect to perfect indicative.

1. πέπεισται
2. ἐτέθυσθε
3. γεγραμμένοι ἦσαν

4. πέπραξαι
5. ᾑρήμεθα
6. τέθεινται

4. The verb οἶδα

The verb οἶδα, 'know' is a perfect tense with the present meaning 'I know'; the pluperfect means 'I knew.' The indicative and imperative forms are irregular.

> **Fun fact**: οἶδα has the same stem as εἶδον (ὁράω), so the meaning is 'I know, as a result of seeing.'

		perfect	**pluperfect**	
		INDICATIVE		
sing.	1st	οἶδα	ᾔδη	
	2nd	οἶσθα	ᾔδησθα	
	3rd	οἶδε(ν)	ᾔδει(ν)	
plur.	1st	ἴσμεν	ᾖσμεν	
	2nd	ἴστε	ᾖστε	
	3rd	ἴσασι(ν)	ᾖσαν	
		SUBJUNCTIVE	OPTATIVE	IMPERATIVE
sing.	1st	εἰδῶ	εἰδείην	
	2nd	εἰδῇς	εἰδείης	ἴσθι
	3rd	εἰδῇ	εἰδείη	
plur.	1st	εἰδῶμεν	εἰδεῖμεν	
	2nd	εἰδῆτε	εἰδεῖτε	ἴστε
	3rd	εἰδῶσι(ν)	εἰδεῖεν	
INFINITIVE		εἰδέναι		
PARTICIPLE		εἰδώς, εἰδυῖα, εἰδός εἰδότος, εἰδυίας, εἰδότος, *etc.*		

οἶδα means 'know' when it is used with a participle in indirect perception; with an infinitive, it means 'know how to.'

EXERCISE 24.3. Translate into English.

1. εὖ οἶσθα τοὺς αἰτίους αὐτίκα αἱρεθησομένους.
2. οἱ τῷ Σωκράτει ἑπόμενοι τὴν γνώμην τὴν περὶ τῶν θεῶν ἂν εἰδεῖεν.
3. ὁ παῖς, ὡς ἔοικε, λέξαι οὐκ οἶδεν.
4. ἴσθι ἐμὲ ἀεί σε φιλήσοντα.

5. Dative of agent

With perfect and pluperfect passive verbs, the agent is in the dative with no preposition, rather than in the genitive with ὑπό (Ch. 15.4).

βεβλάμμεθα <u>τοῖς πολεμίοις</u>.
   We have been harmed *by the enemy*.

οὐδεὶς βέβλαπται <u>τῷ κήρυκι</u>.
   Nobody has been harmed *by the herald*.

6. Dative of degree of difference

The dative is used with the comparative to express *by how much* something is bigger / stronger, etc.

ὁ Σωκράτης <u>πολλῷ</u> σοφώτερος τῶν ἄλλων ἦν.
   Socrates was *much* wiser than the others. (wiser *by much*)

<u>ὀλίγαις ἡμέραις</u> ἡ ὁδὸς αὐτῶν μακροτέρα ἔσται.
   Their journey will be *a few days* longer. (longer *by a few days*)

EXERCISE 24.4. Translate into English.

1. ἐκεῖνον μὲν μέμνημαι, οὐ δὲ τὸν πατέρα αὐτοῦ.
2. πολλῷ κρεῖττόν ἐστιν ὑπὲρ τῆς πατρίδος ἀποθανεῖν ἢ αἰσχρῶς ζῆν.
3. οἱ τετελευτηκότες πολλὴν δόξαν ἔχουσιν, ὅτι οὔποτε ἐπιλανθάνονται.
4. εἰ τὰ τότε γενόμενα μὴ ἐμιμνησκόμεθα, τὰ αὐτὰ νῦν ἂν ἐπράττομεν.
5. πῶς ἴσασι τοὺς θεοὺς ὁμοίους τοῖς ἀνθρώποις τὸ σῶμα ὄντας;
6. ἡ γῆ πολλὰ ἄνευ πόνου τότε ἔφυεν.
7. οὗτος ὁ ξένος ὀλίγῳ δεινότερος εἶναι φαίνεται ἢ ὁ ἕτερος.
8. ποῖος στρατιώτης ἔσει ἐὰν εὖ μάχεσθαι μὴ εἰδῇς;
9. ἔφασαν αὐτὴν μακρῷ καλλίστην τε καὶ ἀρίστην τῶν γυναικῶν τῶν ἐν τῇ Ἑλλάδι εἶναι.
10. οἱ ἵπποι, οἳ πᾶσαν ἡμέραν τῷ ἱππεῖ ἐλήλανται, ἤδη ἥκουσιν.

Exercise 24.5. Translate into Greek.

1. Has everything in fact been done by us?
2. They say the mother gave birth to a son both very beautiful and like a god.
3. This place always reminds me of Greece.
4. What would he say if he knew the truth?
5. All the weapons have been left on the ship by these men.

Reading 1: Socrates Discusses Death (Plato)

Socrates has been found guilty and sentenced to death. He now addresses the judges, reiterating that they should be optimistic about death, that the gods protect good men, and that his sentence will mean a release from his present troubles.

ἀλλὰ καὶ ὑμᾶς χρή, ὦ ἄνδρες δικασταί, εὐέλπιδας εἶναι πρὸς
τὸν θάνατον, καὶ ἕν τι τοῦτο διανοεῖσθαι ἀληθές, ὅτι οὐκ ἔστιν ἀνδρὶ
ἀγαθῷ κακὸν οὐδὲν οὔτε ζῶντι οὔτε τελευτήσαντι, οὐδὲ ἀμελεῖται
ὑπὸ θεῶν τὰ τούτου πράγματα· οὐδὲ τὰ ἐμὰ νῦν ἀπὸ τοῦ αὐτομάτου
γέγονεν, ἀλλά μοι δῆλόν ἐστι τοῦτο, ὅτι ἤδη τεθνάναι καὶ
ἀπηλλάχθαι πραγμάτων βέλτιον ἦν μοι.

Vocabulary:

ἀμελέω	neglect	διανοέω	consider
ἀπαλλάττω	set free; *m-p* be released from	δικαστής, -οῦ, ὁ	judge, juror
		εὔελπις, -ιδος	hopeful, of good hope
αὐτόματον, -ου, τό	accident		

Reading 2: The Word Became Flesh (Gospel according to John)

Ἐν ἀρχῇ ἦν ὁ λόγος, καὶ ὁ λόγος ἦν πρὸς τὸν θεόν, καὶ θεὸς ἦν ὁ λόγος·
οὗτος ἦν ἐν ἀρχῇ πρὸς τὸν θεόν. πάντα δι᾽ αὐτοῦ ἐγένετο, καὶ χωρὶς
αὐτοῦ ἐγένετο οὐδὲ ἕν. ὃ γέγονεν ἐν αὐτῷ ζωὴ ἦν, καὶ ἡ ζωὴ ἦν τὸ φῶς
τῶν ἀνθρώπων.

Vocabulary:

ζωή, -ῆς, ἡ	life	φῶς, -τός, τό	light
πρός (+ *acc.*)	with	χωρίς (+ *gen.*)	without

Practice Sentences

1. δεῖ γὰρ αὐτὸν εἰδέναι τὰ δρώμενα.   (Euripides)

2. θεὸς πέφυκεν ὅστις οὐδὲν δρᾷ κακόν.   (Menander)

3. τεθνᾶσιν οἱ θανόντες· ἀλλ᾽ ἴθ᾽ ἐς δόμους.   (Euripides)

4. οἶδα γὰρ ἀεὶ μαρτυρήσεσθαί μοι ὅτι ἐγὼ   (Xenophon)
   ἠδίκησα μὲν οὐδένα πώποτε ἀνθρώπων οὐδὲ
   χείρω ἐποίησα, βελτίους δὲ ποιεῖν ἐπειρώμην
   ἀεὶ τοὺς ἐμοὶ συνόντας.

5. τί φής; γραφὴν σέ τις, ὡς ἔοικε, γέγραπται.   (Plato)

6. ἀκηκόατε, ἑωράκατε, πεπόνθατε.   (Lysias)

Vocabulary:

γε	indeed	ἴθ᾽	= ἴθι (*imper.*), come
δόμος, -ου, ὁ	(*pl.*) house	μαρτυρέομαι	bear witness
ἐς	= εἰς		

Chapter 24 Vocabulary (11)

All 6 principal parts are included in the chapter vocabulary from this chapter on. A full list of principal parts is given beginning on p. 278.

Verbs:

ἐλαύνω, ἐλῶ, ἤλασα, -ελήλακα, ἐλήλαμαι, ἠλάθην (*pf. act. occurs only in compounds*)	drive, set in motion
ἔοικα (*part.* εἰκώς) (+ *dat.*) (*often impers.*) ὡς ἔοικε	be like, look like; seem; befit as it seems
ἕπομαι, ἕψομαι, ἑσπόμην (+ *dat.*) (*impf.* εἱπόμην)	follow
ἥκω, ἥξω, *pf.* ἧκα	have come; be present
μιμνήσκω, μνήσω, ἔμνησα, μέμνημαι, ἐμνήσθην	remind; (*mid. pf.*) remember (+ *part. in indirect perception*)
οἶδα	know (of); know how to (+ *inf.*)
τίκτω, τέξω / τέξομαι, ἔτεκον, τέτοκα, τέτεγμαι, ἐτέχθην	produce, give birth to
φύω, φύσω, ἔφυσα / ἔφυν, πέφυκα	bring forth, produce, beget; (*2nd aor.*) grew

Pronouns:

οἷος, οἵα, οἷον	such, such as, of such a kind
ποῖος, ποία, ποῖον	what kind of

Adjective:

ὅμοιος, ὁμοία, ὅμοιον (+ *dat.*)	like, resembling

1. **Numerals**
2. **Indirect questions**
3. **Clauses of fearing**
4. **Purpose with future participle**

1. Numerals

You have already learned the cardinal numerals εἷς, 'one' (Ch. 8.2) and δέκα, 'ten' (Ch. 8) and the ordinals πρῶτος, 'first' (Ch. 19) and δέκατος 'tenth' (Ch. 8). Like πρῶτος, the other ordinal numerals have 1st and 2nd declension endings. Except for the numerals 1 through 4, the cardinal numerals are indeclinable.

	two	**three**		**four**	
	m./f./n.	m./f.	n.	m./f.	n.
Nom.	δύο	τρεῖς	τρία	τέτταρες	τέτταρα
Gen.	δυοῖν	τριῶν	τριῶν	τεττάρων	τεττάρων
Dat.	δυοῖν	τρισί(ν)	τρισί(ν)	τέτταρσι(ν)	τέτταρσι(ν)
Acc.	δύο	τρεῖς	τρία	τέτταρας	τέτταρα

Here are the Greek cardinal numerals 1 through 10, 20, and 100, and their ordinals; a more complete list is given in the Reference Morphology on p. 254.

	cardinal	*ordinal*
1	εἷς, μία, ἕν	πρῶτος, πρώτη, πρῶτον
2	δύο	δεύτερος, δευτέρα, δεύτερον
3	τρεῖς, τρία	τρίτος, τρίτη, τρίτον
4	τέτταρες, τέτταρα	τέταρτος, τετάρτη, τέταρτον
5	πέντε	πέμπτος, πέμπτη, πέμπτον
6	ἕξ	ἕκτος, ἕκτη, ἕκτον
7	ἑπτά	ἕβδομος, ἑβδόμη, ἕβδομον
8	ὀκτώ	ὄγδοος, ὀγδόη, ὄγδοον
9	ἐννέα	ἔνατος, ἐνάτη, ἔνατον
10	δέκα	δέκατος, δεκάτη, δέκατον
20	εἴκοσι(ν)	εἰκοστός, εἰκοστή, εἰκοστόν
100	ἑκατόν	ἑκατοστός, ἑκατοστή, ἑκατοστόν

2. Indirect questions

An *indirect question* is a dependent clause introduced by a question word such as εἰ, τίς, πότε, ποῦ, or its indefinite equivalent (ὅστις, ὅτε, ὅπου etc.). Just as in an indirect statement with ὅτι or ὡς (Ch. 16.5), the subject of the indirect question is nominative, the verb is finite, and the tense of the dependent verb is relative to the main verb:

- present   same time as the main verb
- future   time after the main verb
- aorist   time before the main verb

After a primary tense the original mood is retained; after a secondary tense the optative can replace it (Ch. 23.3).

The negative in indirect questions is οὐ unless the direct question would have had μή.

Verbs that govern indirect questions include verbs of asking, telling, learning, knowing and wondering. Some common examples are:

ἀγγέλλω	announce	λέγω	say, tell
ἐρωτάω	ask	μανθάνω	learn
εὑρίσκω	find, discover	οἶδα	know
θαυμάζω	wonder	πυνθάνομαι	learn (by asking)

> ἐρωτᾷ τὸν κήρυκα <u>τίνες οἱ πολέμιοί εἰσιν</u>.
> He asks the herald *who the enemy are.*

> ἤρετο <u>ὅπου οἱ πολέμιοί εἰσιν</u>.
> He asked *where the enemy were.*

> ἐπυθόμεθα <u>τί οὐ προσέβαλον</u>.
> We learned *why they had not attacked.*

EXERCISE 25.1.   Translate into English.

1. οἶδε τί ἐκεῖναι αἱ δύο νῆες οὐ φεύγουσιν.
2. ὁ ἡγεμὼν ἤγγειλεν ποῦ οἱ ἱππεῖς μένουσιν.
3. ἠρόμην πότε τοῖς τρισὶ υἱοῖς τὰ δῶρα πέμψετε.
4. εὑρήσομεν ὅστις τὰ χρήματα ἔλαβεν.
5. θαυμάζω εἰ ὁ στρατηγὸς τάσδε τὰς πέντε πόλεις νικήσει.

3. Clauses of fearing

A dependent *clause of fearing* appears as the object of a verb or phrase indicating fear (e.g. φοβέομαι, κίνδυνός ἐστι). Clauses of fearing can express either a fear for the future or a fear for the present or past. Both types of clause are introduced by μή, which is typically not translated.

- **fear for the future** – μή + subjunctive or optative; the negative is οὐ

  As usual, Greek uses the subjunctive after a primary tense main verb, and the optative after a secondary tense main verb. The tense of the subjunctive / optative expresses aspect.

  > φοβοῦμαι <u>μὴ οἱ πολέμιοι ἔρχωνται</u>.
  >> I am afraid (*that*) *the enemy will come*.

  > ἐφοβούμεθα <u>μὴ οὐκ οἱ σύμμαχοι ἔρχοιντο (ἔρχωνται)</u>.
  >> We were afraid *the allies would not come*.

  Note: The subjunctive may be used after a secondary tense main verb for extra vividness.

- **fear for the present or past** – μή + indicative; the negative is οὐ

  > φοβοῦμαι <u>μὴ ἔρχεται</u>.
  >> I am afraid *that he is coming*.

  > φοβοῦμαι <u>μὴ ἦλθεν</u>.
  >> I am afraid *that he came*.

  > ἐφοβούμεθα <u>μὴ οὐκ ἦλθεν</u>.
  >> We were afraid *he had not come*.

  Note: These object clauses are not the same as a verb of fearing with an infinitive.

EXERCISE 25.2.   Translate each sentence.

1. οἱ στρατιῶται διὰ τὸ πῦρ πεφόβηνται μὴ ὑπὸ τῶν πολεμίων ὁρῶνται.
2. μὴ φοβήσῃ τοῖς σοῖς φίλοις βοηθεῖν.
3. ὁ παῖς ἐφοβεῖτο μὴ ἡ ἑαυτοῦ μήτηρ οὐκ ἀκούσειεν.
4. I am afraid not to stay.
5. There is a danger that the king will die within eight days.
6. Were you (pl.) afraid that we had left?

4. Purpose with future participle

You have already learned that ἵνα, ὡς and ὅπως with the subjunctive or optative express purpose (Ch. 22.3, Ch. 23.3). Purpose can also be expressed by a circumstantial participle in the future (sometimes the present), especially after verbs of motion ('go,' 'send,' etc.), with or without ὡς. The participle agrees with the doer of the action. The negative is οὐ.

> ἔπεμψα <u>τὸν παῖδα εὑρήσοντα τοὺς ἵππους</u>.
>   I sent *the boy to find the horses.*

> ἐλευσόμεθα <u>τοῦ Σωκράτους ἀκουσόμενοι</u>.
>   We will come *in order to listen to Socrates.*

Exercise 25.3.   Translate into English.

1. ὡς ἀφικόμεθα, οἱ κριταὶ ἡμᾶς ἤροντο ποῦ ἐννέα νύκτας ἐγενόμεθα.
2. τοῦ πολέμου ἤδη τετελευτημένου, οἱ λοιποὶ φοβοῦνται μὴ ἀποθάνωσιν.
3. ὁ ξένος αὐτὴν εἰρώτα τίς ἐστιν· τῇ γὰρ ἑαυτοῦ παιδὶ πολλὰ ἔοικεν.
4. κατὰ τοῦ ὄρους κατέβημεν ὡς τόπον ἡδύν τε καὶ ὕδωρ εὑρήσοντες.
5. οἱ λοιποὶ τῶν πολιτῶν τοῖς ἰδίοις ὅπλοις χρῶνται, τοῦ κοινοῦ ἄλλ᾽ οὐ παρέσχοντος.
6. ἔβης εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα τὸν Σωκράτη ὀψόμενος;
7. οὐκ ἴσμεν εἴτε ὁ κῆρυξ ἕψεται τῇ στρατιᾷ εἴτε πρῶτον ἀφίξεται.
8. ἐθαυμάσαμεν τί λέξουσι περὶ τούτων.
9. μέγας φόβος ἦν αὐτῷ μὴ οὐκ ἐμέμνητο τί πρᾶξαι δεῖ.
10. ᾔτησα αὐτὸν πάσῃ τῇ τέχνῃ χρώμενος καλόν τι λίθου ποιῆσαι.

Exercise 25.4.   Translate into Greek.

1. It does not make a difference to me if they establish seven new laws or ten at the same time.
2. They kept asking for one ship in order to begin journeying to Greece.
3. Do you know what god rules in the sky?
4. The boy doesn't know what I said.
5. The allies are coming as quickly as possible to help the Athenians.

Reading 1: Cyrus Reviews His Actions (Xenophon, adapted)

King Cyrus of Persia (ruled 559–530 B.C.) discusses with his uncle how Cyrus has treated him.

Ἄγε τοίνυν, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, Σκοπῶμεν τὰ ἐμοὶ πεπραγμένα πάντα καθ᾽ ἓν
ἕκαστον· οὕτω γὰρ μάλιστα δῆλον ἔσται ὅ τι τε αὐτῶν ἀγαθόν ἐστι
καὶ ὅ τι κακόν. ἀρξώμεθα δ᾽, ἔφη, ἐκ τῆσδε τῆς ἀρχῆς, εἰ καὶ σοὶ
ἀρκούντως δοκεῖ ἔχειν. ἐπεὶ ἤσθου πολλοὺς πολεμίους ἐπὶ σὲ καὶ τὴν
σὴν χώραν ὁρμωμένους, εὐθὺς ἔπεμπες πρός τε τὸ Περσῶν κοινὸν
συμμάχους αἰτούμενος καὶ πρὸς ἐμὲ ἰδίᾳ δεόμενος πειρᾶσθαι αὐτὸν
ἐμὲ ἐλθεῖν. οὔκουν ἐγὼ ἦλθον ἄνδρας ἄγων σοι ὡς ἦν δυνατὸν
πλείστους τε καὶ ἀρίστους;

Vocabulary:

ἀρκούντως	enough	ὁρμάω	(*mid.*) rush at
καθ᾽ ἕν	one by one	οὔκουν	and so not?
Κῦρος, -ου, ὁ	Cyrus	τοίνυν	therefore

Reading 2: The Son of God (Gospel according to John)

οὕτως γὰρ ἠγάπησεν ὁ θεὸς τὸν κόσμον ὥστε τὸν υἱὸν τὸν μονογενῆ
ἔδωκεν, ἵνα πᾶς ὁ πιστεύων εἰς αὐτὸν μὴ ἀπόληται ἀλλὰ ἔχῃ ζωὴν
αἰώνιον. οὐ γὰρ ἀπέστειλεν ὁ θεὸς τὸν υἱὸν εἰς τὸν κόσμον ἵνα κρίνῃ
τὸν κόσμον, ἀλλ᾽ ἵνα σωθῇ ὁ κόσμος δι᾽ αὐτοῦ. ὁ πιστεύων εἰς αὐτὸν
οὐ κρίνεται. ὁ μὴ πιστεύων ἤδη κέκριται, ὅτι μὴ πεπίστευκεν εἰς τὸ
ὄνομα τοῦ μονογενοῦς υἱοῦ τοῦ θεοῦ.

Vocabulary:

ἀγαπάω	love	ζωή, -ῆς, ἡ	life
αἰώνιος, -ον	eternal	κόσμος, -ου, ὁ	world
ἀποστέλλω	send, dispatch	μονογενής, -ές	only, only born

PRACTICE SENTENCES

1. ὁρᾷς ἃ ποιεῖς;   (Aristophanes)

2. μηδείς σ' ἀνθρώπων πείσαι κακὸν ἄνδρα φιλῆσαι.   (Theognis)

3. εἰ δὴ δίκαια ποιήσω οὐκ οἶδα.   (Xenophon)

4. ταῦτα οὖν σκοπώμεθα· ... νῦν ... ἴωμεν καὶ ἀκούσωμεν   (Plato)
   τοῦ ἀνδρός, ἔπειτα ἀκούσαντες καὶ ἄλλοις ἀνακοινωσώμεθα.

5. ᾔδει δὲ οὐδεὶς ὅποι στρατεύουσιν.   (Thucydides)

6. ἐγὼ ... ἦλθον πρὸς αὐτοὺς καὶ ἠρώτων ὅ τι ἐστὶ τὸ πρᾶγμα.   (Xenophon)

Vocabulary:
ἀνακοινόω   consult (with)
ἴωμεν   let us go

Chapter 25 Vocabulary (10)

Verbs:
αἰτέω, αἰτήσω, ᾔτησα, ᾔτηκα,   ask (for), demand; beg
   ᾔτημαι, ᾐτήθην
παρέχω, παρέξω, παρέσχον, παρέσχηκα   provide, present; allow, grant
χράομαι, χρήσομαι, ἐχρησάμην,   use
   κέχρημαι, ἐχρήσθην (+ *dat.*)

Adjectives:
ἴδιος, ἰδία, ἴδιον   private, one's own
   ἰδίᾳ (*dat.*) *as adv.*   in private
κοινός, κοινή, κοινόν   common, shared; public
   τὸ κοινόν   the state
λοιπός, λοιπή, λοιπόν   rest (of), remaining

Conjunctions:
εἴτε … εἴτε   whether … or
ὅπου   where, wherever
ὅπως   how, as
πότε   when?

Numerals: (see chart §1; p. 254))

CHAPTER 26

1. Contract verbs in -οω
2. The noun νοῦς
3. Conditional relative clauses
4. Temporal clauses with ἕως and μέχρι
5. Temporal clauses with πρίν

1. Contract verbs in -οω

You have already learned contract verbs in **-εω** and **-αω** (Ch. 10.5, 6). There are also a few verbs with stems in **-ο**. In the present and imperfect tenses, this vowel contracts with the thematic vowel as follows:

ο + ε	= ου		ο + ο	= ου	
ο + ει	= οι		ο + οι	= οι	
ο + η	= οι, ω		ο + ου	= ου	
ο + ῃ	= οι		ο + ω	= ω	

			Active		Middle-Passive	
INDICATIVE						
present						
sing.	1st	δηλῶ	(δηλό-ω)	δηλοῦμαι	(δηλό-ομαι)
	2nd	δηλοῖς	(δηλό-εις)	δηλοῖ	(δηλό-εσαι)
	3rd	δηλοῖ	(δηλό-ει)	δηλοῦται	(δηλό-εται)
plur.	1st	δηλοῦμεν	(δηλό-ομεν)	δηλούμεθα	(δηλο-όμεθα)
	2nd	δηλοῦτε	(δηλό-ετε)	δηλοῦσθε	(δηλό-εσθε)
	3rd	δηλοῦσι(ν)	(δηλό-ουσι)	δηλοῦνται	(δηλό-ονται)
imperfect						
sing.	1st	ἐδήλουν	(ἐδήλο-ον)	ἐδηλούμην	(ἐδηλο-όμην)
	2nd	ἐδήλους	(ἐδήλο-ες)	ἐδηλοῦ	(ἐδηλό-εσο)
	3rd	ἐδήλου	(ἐδήλο-ε)	ἐδηλοῦτο	(ἐδηλό-ετο)
plur.	1st	ἐδηλοῦμεν	(ἐδηλό-ομεν)	ἐδηλούμεθα	(ἐδηλο-όμεθα)
	2nd	ἐδηλοῦτε	(ἐδηλό-ετε)	ἐδηλοῦσθε	(ἐδηλό-εσθε)
	3rd	ἐδήλουν	(ἐδήλο-ον)	ἐδηλοῦντο	(ἐδηλό-οντο)
SUBJUNCTIVE						
sing.	1st	δηλῶ	(δηλό-ω)	δηλῶμαι	(δηλό-ωμαι)
	2nd	δηλοῖς	(δηλό-ῃς)	δηλοῖ	(δηλό-ησαι)
	3rd	δηλοῖ	(δηλό-ῃ)	δηλῶται	(δηλό-ηται)
plur.	1st	δηλῶμεν	(δηλό-ωμεν)	δηλώμεθα	(δηλο-ώμεθα)
	2nd	δηλῶτε	(δηλό-ητε)	δηλῶσθε	(δηλό-ησθε)
	3rd	δηλῶσι	(δηλό-ωσι)	δηλῶνται	(δηλό-ωνται)
OPTATIVE						
sing.	1st	δηλοίην	(δηλο-οίην)	δηλοίμην	(δηλο-οίμην)
	2nd	δηλοίης	(δηλο-οίης)	δηλοῖο	(δηλό-οισο)
	3rd	δηλοίη	(δηλο-οίη)	δηλοῖτο	(δηλό-οιτο)
plur.	1st	δηλοῖμεν	(δηλό-οιμεν)	δηλοίμεθα	(δηλο-οίμεθα)
	2nd	δηλοῖτε	(δηλό-οιτε)	δηλοῖσθε	(δηλό-οισθε)
	3rd	δηλοῖεν	(δήλό-οιεν)	δηλοῖντο	(δηλό-οιντο)

IMPERATIVE

sing.	2nd	δήλου	(δήλο-ε)	δηλοῦ	(δηλό-εσο)
plur.	2nd	δηλοῦτε	(δηλό-ετε)	δηλοῦσθε	(δηλό-εσθε)

INFINITIVE   δηλοῦν   (δηλό-ε-εν)   δηλοῦσθαι   (δηλό-εσθαι)

PARTICIPLE   δηλῶν,   (δηλό-ων)   δηλούμενος,   (δηλο-όμενος)
                δηλοῦσα,   (δηλό-ουσα)   δηλουμένη,   (δηλο-ομένη)
                δηλοῦν   (δηλό-ον)   δηλούμενον   (δηλο-όμενον)
                δηλοῦντος, *etc.*   δηλουμένου, *etc.*

EXERCISE 26.1. Identify each form as indicative, subjunctive, optative, or imperative (with person, number, tense and voice), infinitive (with tense and voice), or participle (with case, number, gender, tense and voice). If the ending is ambiguous, include all possibilities.

1. ἀξιοῦσθε
2. δηλοῦν
3. ἀξιῶνται
4. τιμωμένης

5. ἀξίου
6. δηλοῖεν
7. ἐδήλου
8. κρατεῖσθαι

2. The noun νοῦς

The 2nd declension noun νοῦς, 'mind' has a stem in **-o**, which undergoes the same contractions as **-o** stem contract verbs:

sing.	Nom.	νοῦς	(νό-ος)
	Gen.	νοῦ	(νό-ου)
	Dat.	νῷ	(νό-ῳ)
	Acc.	νοῦν	(νό-ον)
	Voc.	νοῦ	(νό-ε)
plur.	N./V.	νοῖ	(νό-οι)
	Gen.	νῶν	(νό-ων)
	Dat.	νοῖς	(νό-οις)
	Acc.	νοῦς	(νό-ους)

3. Conditional relative clauses

In a *conditional relative clause*, a relative pronoun (ὅς / ὅστις) or adverb (ὡς / ὅπως, ὅτε, ὅπου, etc.) substitutes for the clause marker εἰ or ἐάν in any condition (Ch. 10.3, 22.3, 23.3). When a relative replaces ἐάν, the particle ἄν occurs with it as a separate word; it is combined into one word with the relative adverbs ἐπειδή > ἐπειδάν and ὅτε > ὅταν.

These clauses follow the same patterns you learned for conditions. The most common types of conditional relative clauses are the future more vivid and the present and past general (Ch. 22.3, 23.3):

> ὅταν ἔλθῃ στρατεύσομεν.
>> *Whenever he comes*, we will march.

> οἳ ἂν μὴ πείθωνται τοῖς νόμοις κακοί εἰσιν.
>> *Those who do not obey the laws* are (always) bad.

> ὅστις ἰσχυρὸς εἴη ἀγαθὸς ἄρχων ἐγίγνετο.
>> *Whoever was strong* (always) became a good leader.

Exercise 26.2.   For each sentence, identify the type of condition; then translate.
1. ὅτε κελεύσειεν ὁ βασιλεύς, ἐπείθοντο οἱ πολῖται.
2. οἵτινες ἂν φίλους ἔχωσιν εὐδαιμονέστατοί εἰσιν.
3. πιστεύσομεν ὅστις ἂν πείθηται τοῖς νόμοις.
4. ἐκεῖνος ἀεὶ ἔπραττεν ἃ δόξειεν ἑαυτῷ.
5. θύωμεν θεοῖς, ὅ τι ποτ᾽ εἰσὶν οἱ θεοί.

4. Temporal clauses with ἕως and μέχρι

The conjunctions ἕως and μέχρι can introduce simple adverbial clauses that refer to specific actions in the past or present (Ch. 10.2). These clauses have an indicative verb and the negative οὐ.

> ἐμένομεν ἕως ἦλθον.
>> We waited *until they came*.

> μένομεν ἕως οἱ βάρβαροι πάρεισιν.
>> We are staying *while the foreigners are present*.

> ἐμένομεν μέχρι οὐκέτι ἐν κινδύνῳ ἦμεν.
>> We waited *until we were no longer in danger*.

Like relative pronouns and adverbs (see above, §3) these conjunctions can also introduce clauses that refer to general or repeated actions, or to anticipated future actions. These clauses have either a subjunctive or optative verb and are usually the equivalent of present and past general conditions and future more vivid conditions (Ch. 22.3, 23.3); the negative is μή:

ἕως ἂν εὖ πράττωσιν, εὐδαίμονές εἰσιν.
> *As long as they fare well*, they are happy.

ἀεὶ ἐμένομεν μέχρι ὁ ἄρχων παύσαιτο λέγων.
> We always waited *until the archon stopped speaking*.

μενοῦμεν ἕως ἂν μηκέτι ἐν κινδύνῳ ὦμεν.
> We will stay *until we are no longer in danger*.

Exercise 26.3.   For each sentence, identify the equivalent condition; then translate.

1. μέχρι ἂν ὁ ξένος τοιαῦτα λέξῃ, οὐκ αὐτῷ πιστεύσομεν.
2. ὁ παῖς ἀεὶ ἐφοβεῖτο ἕως ἡ μήτηρ ἔλθοι.
3. ἕως ἂν ἰσχυρὰ τείχη ἔχωμεν, ἀσφαλεῖς ἐσμεν.
4. μαχοῦνται μέχρι ἂν ἀπελαύνωνται ὑπὸ τῶν ἱππέων.

5. Temporal clauses with πρίν

Two types of temporal clauses are introduced by πρίν.

- πρίν + finite verb – 'until'

  After a negative main clause, πρίν appears with a finite verb. The range of constructions is the same as for ἕως / μέχρι. The indicative is used for definite time, the subjunctive or optative for indefinite time.
  > οὐ παύσεται πρὶν ἂν τὴν πόλιν ἀφίκηται.
  >> He will not stop *until he reaches the city*.

- πρίν + infinitive – 'before'

  πρίν appears with an infinitive, mainly after a positive main clause. As usual, the subject of the infinitive is accusative, unless it is also the subject of the main clause.
  > ἀπῆλθον πρὶν ἡμᾶς ἀφικέσθαι.
  >> They went away *before we came*.

  > τρεῖς ἡμέρας ἔμενον πρὶν ἀπελθεῖν.
  >> They stayed for three days *before going away / they went away*.

Exercise 26.4. Translate into English.

1. εἰ νοῦς δεινός σοί ἐστιν ὅ τι ἂν βούλῃ ποιεῖν δύνασαι.
2. μαχώμεθα ἕως ἂν πάντες οἱ πολέμιοι ἀποφύγωσιν, ἵνα ἡ πόλις σωθῇ.
3. φοβεῖσθε μὴ ἀποθάνητε πρὶν οἱ σύμμαχοι ἀφικέσθαι;
4. πειράσομαι ἅμα ὑμῖν δηλοῦν ὡς ὅδε ὁ ἀνὴρ ἀπέκτεινε τὸν ἑαυτοῦ πατέρα.
5. μέχρι ἂν ζῇς, πρόσεχε τὸν νοῦν πρὸς τὰ καλά.
6. εὐδαίμων ὅστις ἂν τοῖς ἡγεμόσιν ἠξιωμένος ᾖ.
7. μὴ ἀξιοῦτε μηδένα ἄρχοντα πρὶν ἂν τῷ κοινῷ καλόν τι πράξῃ.
8. ἐπειδὰν τὴν γνώμην φαίνοιτο, ὁ κριτὴς τὴν ἑαυτοῦ φύσιν ἐδήλου.
9. ὃν τιμῆς ἀξιοῦμεν ὡς τάχιστα δηλωθήσεται.
10. ἐκεῖνος ἕως μὲν ἂν ἡμῖν λέγῃ φίλιος εἶναι φαίνεται, ἰδίᾳ δ᾽ ἐχθρός ἐστιν.

Exercise 26.5. Translate into Greek.

1. They drove for five days until they reached the sea.
2. Allow me to keep speaking so that you (pl.) may know what is in my mind.
3. The majority will follow whenever they have a strong leader.
4. We will not release the horses until our master orders (us).
5. I want to explain everything to them more clearly before I leave.

Reading 1: The Sacred Voyage (Plato)

An Athenian describes a festival that commemorates Theseus' rescue of Athenian youth from King Minos of Crete.

τοῦτ᾽ ἔστι τὸ πλοῖον, ὥς φασιν Ἀθηναῖοι, ἐν ᾧ Θησεύς ποτε εἰς Κρήτην
τοὺς 'δὶς ἑπτὰ' ἐκείνους ᾤχετο ἄγων καὶ ἔσωσέ τε καὶ αὐτὸς ἐσώθη. …
ἐπειδὰν οὖν ἄρξωνται τῆς θεωρίας, νόμος ἐστὶν αὐτοῖς ἐν τῷ χρόνῳ
τούτῳ καθαρεύειν τὴν πόλιν καὶ δημοσίᾳ μηδένα ἀποκτεινύναι, πρὶν
ἂν εἰς Δῆλόν τε ἀφίκηται τὸ πλοῖον καὶ πάλιν δεῦρο· τοῦτο δ᾽ ἐνίοτε
ἐν πολλῷ χρόνῳ γίγνεται, ὅταν τύχωσιν ἄνεμοι ἀπολαβόντες αὐτούς.
ἀρχὴ δ᾽ ἐστὶ τῆς θεωρίας ἐπειδὰν ὁ ἱερεὺς τοῦ Ἀπόλλωνος στέψῃ τὴν
πρύμναν τοῦ πλοίου.

Vocabulary:

ἄνεμος, -ου, ὁ	wind	Θησεύς, -έως, ὁ	Theseus
ἀποκτεινύναι	= ἀποκτείνειν	ἱερεύς, -έως, ὁ	priest
ἀπολαμβάνω	cut off	καθαρεύω	be pure
Ἀπόλλων, -ος, ὁ	Apollo	Κρήτη, -ης, ἡ	Crete
δεῦρο	(to) here	οἴχομαι	go, depart
Δῆλος, -ου, ὁ	Delos, island sacred	πλοῖον, -ου, τό	ship
	to Apollo	ποτέ	once
δημοσίᾳ	'at public expense'	πρύμνα, -ης, ἡ	stern, back
δίς	twice	στέφω, στέψω,	wreath, crown
ἐνίοτε	sometimes	ἔστεψα	
θεωρία, -ας, ἡ	sacred voyage		

Reading 2: Orpheus (Apollodorus, adapted)

The master singer Orpheus tries and fails to rescue his wife from Hades.

Ὀρφεὺς ὁ ἀσκήσας κιθαρῳδίαν, ᾄδων ἐκίνει λίθους τε καὶ δένδρα.
ἀποθανούσης δὲ Εὐρυδίκης τῆς γυναικὸς αὐτοῦ, δηχθείσης ὑπὸ
ὄφεως, κατῆλθεν εἰς Ἅιδου θέλων ἀνάγειν αὐτήν, καὶ Πλούτωνα
ἔπεισεν ἀναπέμψαι. ὁ δὲ ὑπέσχετο τοῦτο ποιήσειν, ἂν μὴ πορευόμενος
Ὀρφεὺς ἐπιστραφῇ πρὶν εἰς τὴν οἰκίαν αὐτοῦ παραγενέσθαι· ὁ δὲ
ἐπιστραφεὶς ἐθεάσατο τὴν γυναῖκα, ἡ δὲ πάλιν ὑπέστρεψεν. εὗρε δὲ
Ὀρφεὺς καὶ τὰ Διονύσου μυστήρια, καὶ τέθαπται περὶ τὴν Πιερίαν
διασπασθεὶς ὑπὸ τῶν μαινάδων.

Vocabulary:

ᾄδω	sing	κιθαρῳδία, -ας, ἡ	singing to a cithara
Ἅιδης, -ου, ὁ	Hades (the house of)	κινέω	move
ἀσκέω	practice	μαινάς, -άδος, ἡ	Maenad
δάκνω, … ἐδήχθην	bite	μυστήριον, -ου, τό	mystery, secret rite
δένδρον, -ου, τό	tree	Ὀρφεύς, -έως, ὁ	Orpheus
διασπάω	tear apart	ὄφις, -εως, ὁ	snake
Διόνυσος, -ου, ὁ	Dionysos	Πιερία, -ας, ἡ	Pieria
ἐπιστρέφω, … ἐπεστράφην	turn around	Πλούτων, -ωνος, ὁ	Pluto (Hades)
Εὐρυδίκη, -ης, ἡ	Eurydice		
θάπτω	bury	ὑποστρέφω	turn back
θεάομαι	look at	ὑπισχνέομαι, … ὑπεσχόμην	promise

Practice Sentences

1. ὁ νοῦς γὰρ ἡμῶν ἐστιν ἐν ἑκάστῳ θεός.   (Euripides)

2. καὶ συγκαλέσας ἐκείνους ἔφη   (Thucydides, adapted)
   χρῆναι πληροῦν ναῦς ὡς πλείστας.

3. σῶσαι γὰρ ὁπόταν ἄνδρα τῷ θεῷ δοκῇ,   (Euripides)
   πολλοὺς πόρους δίδωσιν εἰς σωτηρίαν.

4. ταῦτα ἐποίουν μέχρι σκότος ἐγένετο.   (Xenophon)

5. χρὴ ποιεῖν ὅσα ὁ θεὸς ἐκέλευσεν.   (Xenophon)

6. καὶ ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον ἀναβαίνει Χειρίσοφος πρίν τινας   (Xenophon)
   αἰσθέσθαι τῶν πολεμίων.

Vocabulary:

ἄκρον, -ου, τό	summit	πόρος, -ου, ὁ	path, way
ὁπόταν	= ὅταν	σκότος, -ου, ὁ	darkness
ὅσος, -η, -ον	however many, as many as	σωτηρία, -ας, ἡ	safety
πληρόω	fill; 'man' (a ship)	Χειρίσοφος, -ου, ὁ	Cheirisophus

Chapter 26 Vocabulary (11)

Verbs:

ἀξιόω, ἀξιώσω, ἠξίωσα, ἠξίωκα, ἠξίωμαι, ἠξιώθην	consider worthy
δηλόω, δηλώσω, ἐδήλωσα, δεδήλωκα, δεδήλωμαι, ἐδηλώθην	show, reveal; explain
ἐάω, ἐάσω, εἴασα, εἴακα, εἴαμαι, εἰάθην (*impf.* εἴων)	allow; let alone
κρατέω, κρατήσω, ἐκράτησα, κεκράτηκα, κεκράτημαι, ἐκρατήθην (+ *gen.*)	be victorious, conquer, rule; surpass, excel

Noun:

νοῦς, νοῦ, ὁ	mind; perception, sense

Adjective:

ἐχθρός, ἐχθρά, ἐχθρόν	hated, hateful; hostile (to)

Conjunctions:

ἐπειδάν	when, whenever
ἕως	until; while, so long as
μέχρι	until; while, so long as
ὅταν	whenever
πρίν (+ *finite verb*)	until
(+ *inf.*)	before

1. **The verb εἶμι, 'go'**
2. **The verb δείκνυμι**
3. **The verb λανθάνω with supplementary participle**
4. **Directional adverbs and suffixes**

1. The verb εἶμι, 'go'

The verb εἶμι, 'go' has only the 1st principal part. The present indicative often has the meaning 'I shall go' and is used in place of the future of ἔρχομαι. εἶμι, 'go' can be distinguished from εἰμί, 'be' by its accent and the presence of ι in all forms.

		εἶμι, 'go'		**εἰμί, 'be'**	
INDICATIVE					
		present	**imperfect**	**present**	**imperfect**
sing.	1st	εἶμι	ᾖα	εἰμί	ἦ / ἦν
	2nd	εἶ	ᾔεισθα	εἶ	ἦσθα
	3rd	εἶσι(ν)	ᾔειν	ἐστί(ν)	ἦν
plur.	1st	ἴμεν	ᾖμεν	ἐσμέν	ἦμεν
	2nd	ἴτε	ᾖτε	ἐστέ	ἦτε
	3rd	ἴᾱσι(ν)	ᾖσαν	εἰσί(ν)	ἦσαν
SUBJUNCTIVE					
sing.	1st	ἴω	ὦ		
	2nd	ἴῃς	ᾖς		
	3rd	ἴῃ	ᾖ		
plur.	1st	ἴωμεν	ὦμεν		
	2nd	ἴητε	ἦτε		
	3rd	ἴωσι(ν)	ὦσι(ν)		

OPTATIVE

sing.	1st	ἴοιμι	εἴην
	2nd	ἴοις	εἴης
	3rd	ἴοι	εἴη
plur.	1st	ἴοιμεν	εἶμεν
	2nd	ἴοιτε	εἶτε
	3rd	ἴοιεν	εἶεν

IMPERATIVE

sing.	2nd	ἴθι	ἴσθι
plur.	2nd	ἴτε	ἔστε

INFINITIVE   ἰέναι   εἶναι

PARTICIPLE   ἰών, ἰοῦσα, ἰόν   ὤν, οὖσα, ὄν
                        ἰόντος, *etc.*   ὄντος, *etc.*

Fun fact: Like ἄγε and φέρε, the imperative ἴθι often precedes another imperative: 'come, (do this)' (Ch.18.3).

EXERCISE 27.1. Identify each form as indicative, subjunctive, optative, or imperative (with person, number, and tense) or infinitive (with tense).

1. εἶσι
2. εἰσί
3. ἰέναι
4. ἴσθι

5. εἶμεν
6. ἴητε
7. ἦσαν
8. ἦμεν

2. The verb δείκνυμι

Some athematic verbs, like δείκνυμι, 'show,' have a present stem ending in -υ. This vowel is constant throughout the paradigm (long in the singular, short in the plural), so these verbs are easy to recognize.

INDICATIVE		**present**	**imperfect**
sing.	1st	δείκνῡμι	ἐδείκνῡν
	2nd	δείκνῡς	ἐδείκνῡς
	3rd	δείκνῡσι(ν)	ἐδείκνῡ
plur.	1st	δείκνυμεν	ἐδείκνυμεν
	2nd	δείκνυτε	ἐδείκνυτε
	3rd	δεικνύᾱσι(ν)	ἐδείκνυσαν

		SUBJUNCTIVE	OPTATIVE	IMPERATIVE
sing.	1st	δεικνύω	δεικνύοιμι	
	2nd	δεικνύῃς	δεικνύοις	δείκνῡ
	3rd	δεικνύῃ	δεικνύοι	
plur.	1st	δεικνύωμεν	δεικνύοιμεν	
	2nd	δεικνύητε	δεικνύοιτε	δείκνυτε
	3rd	δεικνύωσι(ν)	δεικνύοιεν	

INFINITIVE	δεικνύναι
PARTICIPLE	δεικνύς, δεικνῦσα, δεικνύν
	δεικνύντος, δεικνύσης, δεικνύντος *etc.*

The middle-passive forms of δείκνυμι are given in the Reference Morphology. The other tenses of this verb are regular, with endings like those of παύω.

3. The verb λανθάνω with supplementary participle

Unlike many verbs used with a supplementary participle (Ch. 13.6), λανθάνω + participle sounds awkward when translated literally into English ('I escape notice doing X'). Because the participle describes the action and λανθάνω signifies that this action is not noticed, it is better to translate the participle as the main verb and λανθάνω as an adverbial modifier. There are several ways to express this in English.

λανθάνω literally means 'escape the notice (of)':

> οἱ πολέμιοι λανθάνουσι τοὺς φύλακας <u>φεύγοντες</u>.
> The enemy *flees* without the guards seeing them.
> The enemy *is fleeing* unbeknownst to the guards.

> οἱ πολέμιοι ἔλαθον <u>φυγόντες</u>.
> The enemy *fled* unnoticed.
> The enemy *fled* without being seen.

> οἱ πολέμιοι <u>φεύγοντες</u> οὐκ ἔλαθον τοὺς Ἀθηναίους.
> The Athenians were not unaware of the enemy *fleeing*.

Exercise 27.2.   Translate into English.

1. εἰς τὸν οἶκον ἰόντες τοὺς ἐχθροὺς λανθάνομεν.
2. τοῖς ὅπλοις σου χρησάμενος σὲ ἔλαθεν ἐκεῖνος;
3. ὁ παῖς οὔποτέ τι αἱρῶν τὸν πατέρα λανθάνει.
4. πῶς οἱ ἵπποι ἔλαθον τοὺς ἱππέας φυγόντες;

4. Directional adverbs and suffixes

Directional suffixes can be attached to adverbs, place names and a few other words:

-ι, -θι, -σι, -ου	at, in	place where
-δε, -σε	to, toward	place to which
-θεν	from	place from which

Some common examples are:

ἔνθα	ἐνθάδε	
there	to this / that place	

ἐνταῦθα		ἐντεῦθεν
here, there		from here / there

ὅπου	ὅποι	ὁπόθεν / ὅθεν
where	to where	from where

οἴκοι	οἴκαδε	οἴκοθεν
at home	homeward	from home

Ἀθήνησι	Ἀθήναζε	Ἀθήνηθεν
at Athens	to Athens	from Athens

Fun fact: The fact that Ἀθήνας + δε is spelled Ἀθήναζε suggests that the letter ζ was, at least at one time, pronounced 'sd' / 'zd.'

Based on vocabulary you already know, knowledge of these suffixes can help you guess the meanings of other words:

ἄλλοθι	ἄλλοσε	ἄλλοθεν
elsewhere	to somewhere else	from elsewhere

ἔνδοθι, ἔνδον		ἔνδοθεν
within		from within

πανταχοῦ	πανταχόσε	πανταχόθεν
everywhere	in all directions	from everywhere

αὐτοῦ	αὐτόσε	αὐτόθεν
there, in the very place	to there	from there

EXERCISE 27.3.   Translate into English.

1. εἰ ἐνθάδε δεῖ ἰέναι, ἡδέως ἂν ὑμῖν δείξαιμεν βραχίονα ὁδόν.
2. τὸν μὲν νοῦν πολλῶν δεινότερος ἦν ὁ Σωκράτης, ἐχθρὸς δέ τισιν ἦν.
3. τοῦ βασιλέως ἀπόντος, οἱ οἰκοῦντες ταύτην τὴν χώραν ἄλλοσε οὐκ ἦσαν.
4. τοὺς γέροντας μνήσωμεν ἃ ὑπὲρ τῆς πατρίδος δεδράκαμεν.
5. πάντες οἱ πολῖται Ἀθήναζε ἐντεῦθεν ἑπτὰ ἡμερῶν ἴασιν.
6. οἱ μὲν ἐν τῇ θαλάττῃ ἀπόλλυνται, οἱ δὲ κατὰ γῆν ἀσφαλώτατα πορεύονται.
7. ὑμῖν τοῦτο δεικνύναι βούλομαι, ὅτι τὰ πεπραγμένα αὐτῷ αἰσχρὰ ἦν.
8. φοβεῖ μὴ ὁ παῖς οἴκοθεν ἀπίῃ ἵνα ποιητὴς γιγνόμενος λανθάνῃ;
9. οὐκ οἶδα εἰ μέμνησαι ποῖα ἔφη ὁ σὸς πατήρ.
10. τοῖς οἴκαδε ἤδη ἰοῦσιν οὐχ ἕψεσθαι μέλλομεν.

EXERCISE 27.4.   Translate into Greek.

1. Do you plan to stay at home or go to the marketplace?
2. If he should show me the island, I would be able to establish my ships there.
3. All those who lived in that village were hostile to us until we gave them gifts.
4. We should sacrifice before you (pl.) go there.
5. I might go home and live beside the sea for one year.

READING 1: The Charges against Socrates (Xenophon, adapted)

Xenophon, a student of Socrates, discusses the charges brought against his teacher.

Πολλάκις ἐθαύμασα τίσι ποτὲ λόγοις Ἀθηναίους ἔπεισαν οἱ γραψάμενοι Σωκράτην ὡς ἄξιος εἴη θανάτου τῇ πόλει. ἡ μὲν γὰρ γραφὴ κατ᾽ αὐτοῦ τοιάδε τις ἦν· Ἀδικεῖ Σωκράτης οὓς μὲν ἡ πόλις νομίζει θεοὺς οὐ νομίζων, ἕτερα δὲ καινὰ δαιμόνια εἰσφέρων· ἀδικεῖ δὲ καὶ τοὺς νέους διαφθείρων.

Πρῶτον μὲν οὖν, ὡς οὐκ ἐνόμιζεν οὓς ἡ πόλις νομίζει θεούς, ποίῳ ποτ᾽ ἐχρήσαντο τεκμηρίῳ; ἔθυε γὰρ φανερῶς πολλάκις μὲν οἴκοι, πολλάκις δὲ ἐπὶ τῶν κοινῶν τῆς πόλεως βωμῶν.

Vocabulary:

βωμός, -οῦ, ὁ	altar	Σωκράτην (*acc.*)	= Σωκράτη
καινός, -ή, -όν	new, newly invented	τεκμήριον, -ου, τό	proof
		φανερῶς	openly

READING 2: Helen and Menelaus in Egypt (Euripides)

Menelaus, disguised as a beggar, has arrived in Egypt and reunited with his wife Helen. The two discuss how to escape from the local king, who thinks Menelaus died in the Trojan war and wants to marry Helen himself.

Μενέλεως	δρῶντας γὰρ ἢ μὴ δρῶντας ἥδιον θανεῖν.
Ἑλένη	μί᾽ ἔστιν ἐλπίς, ἧ μόνῃ σωθεῖμεν ἄν.
...	
	εἰ μὴ τύραννός σ᾽ ἐκπύθοιτ᾽ ἀφιγμένον.
Μενέλεως	ἐρεῖ δὲ τίς μ᾽; οὐ γνώσεταί γ᾽ ὅς εἰμ᾽ ἐγώ.

Vocabulary:

γ᾽	= γε, at least; certainly	ἐρῶ (*fut.*)	speak of
ἐκπυνθάνομαι	learn	Μενέλεως, -εω, ὁ	Menelaus
Ἑλένη, -ης, ἡ	Helen	τύραννος, -ου, ὁ	king

PRACTICE SENTENCES

1. χρόνος δίκαιον ἄνδρα δείκνυσιν μόνος·   (Sophocles)
    κακὸν δὲ κἂν ἐν ἡμέρᾳ γνοίης μιᾷ.

2. ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινεν ὁ Κῦρος καὶ ἡ στρατιὰ ἡμέρας εἴκοσιν·   (Xenophon)
    οἱ γὰρ στρατιῶται οὐκ ἔφασαν ἰέναι τοῦ πρόσω·
    ὑπώπτευον γὰρ ἤδη ἐπὶ βασιλέα ἰέναι.

3. ὅ τι ἂν ἀγαθὸν πράσσῃς, εἰς θεοὺς ἀνάπεμπε.   (Diogenes Laertius)

4. οὐκ ἰέναι ἤθελε, πρὶν ἢ γυνὴ αὐτὸν ἔπεισε.   (Xenophon, adapted)

5. ἔδοξέ μοι οὗτος ὁ ἀνὴρ δοκεῖν μὲν εἶναι σοφὸς ἄλλοις τε   (Plato)
    πολλοῖς ἀνθρώποις καὶ μάλιστα ἑαυτῷ, εἶναι δ᾽ οὔ· κἄπειτα
    ἐπειρώμην αὐτῷ δεικνύναι ὅτι οἴοιτο μὲν εἶναι σοφός, εἴη δ᾽ οὔ.

6. λέξαι θέλω σοι πρὶν θανεῖν ἃ βούλομαι.   (Euripides)

7. ψευδόμενος οὐδεὶς λανθάνει πολὺν χρόνον.   (Menander)

Vocabulary:

ἀναπέμπω	refer	Κῦρος, -ου, ὁ	Cyrus
κἂν	= καὶ ἐν	τοῦ πρόσω	forward
κἄπειτα	= καὶ ἔπειτα	ὑποπτεύω	suspect

Chapter 27 Vocabulary (11)

Verbs:

ἀπόλλυμι, ἀπολῶ, ἀπώλεσα / ἀπωλόμην,   destroy, kill; lose; (*mid.*) die
   ἀπόλωλα
   also ὄλλυμι, ὀλῶ, ὤλεσα / ὠλόμην,
     ὄλωλα
δείκνυμι, δείξω, ἔδειξα, δέδειχα,   show, point out, reveal
   δέδειγμαι, ἐδείχθην
εἶμι   go
λανθάνω, λήσω, ἔλαθον, λέληθα,   escape notice
   λέλησμαι
οἰκέω, οἰκήσω, ᾤκησα,   live in, inhabit; occupy
   ᾤκηκα, ᾤκημαι, ᾠκήθην

Noun:

οἶκος, οἴκου, ὁ   house, home; family
   οἴκαδε   homeward
   οἴκοθεν   from home
   οἴκοι   at home

Pronoun:

τοιόσδε, τοιάδε, τοιόνδε   such as this (*as follows*)

Adverbs:

ἐκεῖ   there
ἔνθα   there; then; where; when
   ἐνθάδε   to this / that place; here; there
ἐνταῦθα   here, there
   ἐντεῦθεν   from here, from there
ὅθεν   from where, whence

CHAPTER 28

Particles / Signposts for narrative reading

Particles in Greek are like gestures and shrugs written on a page. They are little words that convey how the speaker feels about what he is saying. Often they appear in combination with each other or with other words. This overview is intentionally simplistic, but may provide a useful resource as you begin to read longer texts.

You have already seen how some words, even those that aren't translated, can give important signals about what to expect in a sentence:

ἄν (Ch. 10, 21)		marks impossibility (+ *indic.*) or possibility (+ *opt.*)
γάρ (Ch. 6)	for	marks an explanation of what has just been said
δή (Ch. 14)	indeed, really	gives greater exactness to a word or words
μέν (... δέ) (Ch. 6, 8)		anticipates a connection and contrast of parallel words or phrases
οὖν (Ch. 7)	so, therefore; in fact	continues or resumes a narrative; confirms something

Here are some other common words of this type that are helpful to know. The ones underlined are used in the readings in this chapter (e.g. Reading 1 οἱοίπερ, ἥνπερ); they are not given in the reading vocabularies.

ἄρα	therefore, then	draws an inference
<u>αὖ</u>, <u>αὖθις</u>	again, in turn; on the other hand	
γε (*encl.*)	indeed; at least, at any rate	emphasizes the previous word or words
ἦ	truly	emphasizes what follows
καίτοι	and indeed, and yet	
μέντοι	however; of course	
οὐκοῦν	surely then	invites agreement with an inference
που (*encl.*)	somewhere; I suppose, perhaps	qualifies an assertion
<u>πως</u> (*encl.*)	somehow, in some way, in any way	
<u>τοίνυν</u>	therefore, accordingly; further, moreover	inferential; transitional

The following particles are not translated, but are very common:

ἆρα	introduces a question
μήν	emphasizes preceding particle
<u>-περ</u> (*encl.*)	added to pronouns and other particles for emphasis

The rest of this chapter presents a selection of somewhat longer readings from different authors. Most are in Attic Greek, the dialect taught in this book, and are not adapted from the original. The Herodotus passages, slightly adapted, are in Ionic Greek.

Reading 1: A Murder Trial (Lysias)

This is the beginning of a defense speech for a man on trial for murder. The defendant discovered his wife was having an affair with a man named Eratosthenes and killed him. The defendant begins by asking the jury to put themselves in his place.

περὶ πολλοῦ ἂν ποιησαίμην, ὦ ἄνδρες, τὸ τοιούτους ὑμᾶς ἐμοὶ
δικαστὰς περὶ τούτου τοῦ πράγματος γενέσθαι, οἷοίπερ ἂν ὑμῖν αὐτοῖς
εἴητε τοιαῦτα πεπονθότες· εὖ γὰρ οἶδ᾽ ὅτι, εἰ τὴν αὐτὴν γνώμην περὶ
τῶν ἄλλων ἔχοιτε, ἥνπερ περὶ ὑμῶν αὐτῶν, οὐκ ἂν εἴη ὅστις οὐκ ἐπὶ
5 τοῖς γεγενημένοις ἀγανακτοίη, ἀλλὰ πάντες ἂν τὰς ζημίας μικρὰς
ἡγοῖσθε. καὶ ταῦτα οὐκ ἂν εἴη μόνον παρ᾽ ὑμῖν οὕτως ἐγνωσμένα, ἀλλ᾽
ἐν ἁπάσῃ τῇ Ἑλλάδι. ...

ἡγοῦμαι δέ, ὦ ἄνδρες, τοῦτό με δεῖν ἐπιδεῖξαι, ὡς ἐμοίχευεν
Ἐρατοσθένης τὴν γυναῖκα τὴν ἐμὴν καὶ ἐκείνην τε διέφθειρε καὶ τοὺς
10 παῖδας τοὺς ἐμοὺς ᾔσχυνε καὶ ἐμὲ αὐτὸν ὕβρισεν εἰς τὴν οἰκίαν τὴν
ἐμὴν εἰσιών, καὶ οὔτε ἔχθρα ἐμοὶ καὶ ἐκείνῳ οὐδεμία ἦν πλὴν ταύτης,
οὔτε χρημάτων ἕνεκα ἔπραξα ταῦτα, ἵνα πλούσιος ἐκ πένητος
γένωμαι, οὔτε ἄλλου κέρδους οὐδενὸς πλὴν τῆς κατὰ τοὺς νόμους
τιμωρίας.

15 ἐγὼ τοίνυν ἐξ ἀρχῆς ὑμῖν ἅπαντα ἐπιδείξω τὰ ἐμαυτοῦ πράγματα,
οὐδὲν παραλείπων, ἀλλὰ λέγων τἀληθῆ· ταύτην γὰρ ἐμαυτῷ μόνην
ἡγοῦμαι σωτηρίαν, ἐὰν ὑμῖν εἰπεῖν ἅπαντα δυνηθῶ τὰ πεπραγμένα.

Vocabulary:

ἀγανακτέω	be vexed, upset	πένης, -ητος, ὁ	poor man
αἰσχύνω	shame	περὶ πολλοῦ	consider of great
γεγενημένοις (*line 4*)	refers to the adultery	ποιέομαι	importance
		πλήν (+ *gen.*)	except
δικαστής, -οῦ, ὁ	judge, juror	πλούσιος, -α, -ον	rich
δυνηθῶ	*1 sg. aor. pass. subj. of* δύναμαι	σωτηρία, -ας, ἡ	guarantee of safety
εἴη ... ἐγνωσμένα	*3 pl. pf. pass. opt.*	τἀληθῆ	= τὰ ἀληθῆ
Ἐρατοσθένης, -ους, ὁ	Eratosthenes	τιμωρία, -ας, ἡ	punishment
ἔχθρα, -ας, ἡ	hatred, hostility	ὑβρίζω	commit an
ζημία, -ας, ἡ	penalty		outrage
κέρδος, ους, τό	profit, gain		against, insult
μοιχεύω	commit adultery with	ὑμᾶς (*line 1*)	subject of τὸ ... γενέσθαι

READING 2: Socrates' Defense – 1 (Plato)

In 399 B.C. Socrates was put on trial for corrupting the young men of Athens. The Apology *is his defense speech as reported by Plato; Meletus is Socrates' main accuser. In this part of the speech Socrates begins his defense by addressing the first charge against him.*

λάβωμεν αὖ τὴν τούτων ἀντωμοσίαν. ἔχει δέ πως ὧδε· Σωκράτη φησὶν
ἀδικεῖν τούς τε νέους διαφθείροντα καὶ θεοὺς οὓς ἡ πόλις νομίζει οὐ
νομίζοντα, ἕτερα δὲ δαιμόνια καινά. τὸ μὲν δὴ ἔγκλημα τοιοῦτόν
ἐστιν· τούτου δὲ τοῦ ἐγκλήματος ἓν ἕκαστον ἐξετάσωμεν.

5 φησὶ γὰρ δὴ τοὺς νέους ἀδικεῖν με διαφθείροντα. ἐγὼ δέ γε, ὦ ἄνδρες
Ἀθηναῖοι, ἀδικεῖν φημι Μέλητον. ... ὡς δὲ τοῦτο οὕτως ἔχει,
πειράσομαι καὶ ὑμῖν ἐπιδεῖξαι. καί μοι δεῦρο, ὦ Μέλητε, εἰπέ· ἄλλο τι
ἢ περὶ πλείστου ποιῇ ὅπως ὡς βέλτιστοι οἱ νεώτεροι ἔσονται;

Vocabulary:

ἀντωμοσία, -ας, ἡ	affidavit	καινός, -ή, -όν	new, newly invented
δεῦρο	'come here'		
ἔγκλημα, -ατος, τό	charge, accusation	Μέλητος, -ου ὁ	Meletus
ἓν ἕκαστον	each individual point	περὶ πλείστου ποιέομαι	consider of the greatest importance
ἐξετάζω	examine (closely)		
καί + *imper.*	now	πως ὧδε	'something like this'

Reading 3: Socrates' Defense – 2 (Plato)

In 399 B.C. Socrates was put on trial for corrupting the young men of Athens. At this point in the Apology (*his defense speech*) *he has been found guilty of the charges against him, and the penalty is being debated. Here Socrates tries to explain why exile from Athens would be pointless and why he believes he must continue questioning others.*

εὖ γὰρ οἶδ᾽ ὅτι ὅποι ἂν ἔλθω, λέγοντος ἐμοῦ ἀκροάσονται οἱ
νέοι ὥσπερ ἐνθάδε. κἂν μὲν τούτους ἀπελαύνω, οὗτοί με αὐτοὶ
ἐξελῶσι πείθοντες τοὺς πρεσβυτέρους· ἐὰν δὲ μὴ ἀπελαύνω, οἱ τούτων
πατέρες τε καὶ οἰκεῖοι δι᾽ αὐτοὺς τούτους.

5   ἴσως οὖν ἄν τις εἴποι· Σιγῶν δὲ καὶ ἡσυχίαν ἄγων, ὦ Σώκρατες, οὐχ
οἷός τ᾽ ἔσῃ ἡμῖν ἐξελθὼν ζῆν; τουτὶ δή ἐστι πάντων χαλεπώτατον
πεῖσαί τινας ὑμῶν. ἐάντε γὰρ λέγω ὅτι τῷ θεῷ ἀπειθεῖν τοῦτ᾽ ἐστὶν καὶ
διὰ τοῦτ᾽ ἀδύνατον ἡσυχίαν ἄγειν, οὐ πείσεσθέ μοι ἐάντ᾽ αὖ λέγω ὅτι
καὶ τυγχάνει μέγιστον ἀγαθὸν ὂν ἀνθρώπῳ τοῦτο, ἑκάστης ἡμέρας
10 περὶ ἀρετῆς τοὺς λόγους ποιεῖσθαι καὶ τῶν ἄλλων περὶ ὧν ὑμεῖς ἐμοῦ
ἀκούετε διαλεγομένου καὶ ἐμαυτὸν καὶ ἄλλους ἐξετάζοντος, ὁ δὲ
ἀνεξέταστος βίος οὐ βιωτὸς ἀνθρώπῳ, ταῦτα δ᾽ ἔτι ἧττον πείσεσθέ μοι
λέγοντι. τὰ δὲ ἔχει μὲν οὕτως, ὡς ἐγώ φημι, ὦ ἄνδρες, πείθειν δὲ οὐ
ῥᾴδιον.

Vocabulary:

ἀκροάζομαι (+ *gen.*)	listen to	ἡσυχίαν ἄγω	keep quiet
ἀνεξέταστος, -ον	unexamined	ἴσως	perhaps
ἀπειθέω (+ *dat.*)	disobey	οἰκεῖος, -α, -ον	relative
βιωτός, -όν	worth living	ὅποι	wherever
διαλέγομαι	discuss, talk	πρεσβύτερος, -ου, ὁ	elder
ἐάντε, ἐάντ᾽	= ἐάν τε	σιγάω	be silent
ἐξελῶσι	*fut. of* ἐξελαύνω	τουτί	*strengthened*
ἐξετάζω	examine (closely)		*form of* τοῦτο
ἡμῖν	(*ethical dat.*) please		

READING 4: Alcestis' Death (Euripides)

Queen Alcestis has agreed to die in place of her husband Admetus. Her old nurse tells the Chorus that she is dying. This is the original passage on which the reading in Ch. 10 is based.

Χορός	ἀλλ᾽ ἥδ᾽ ὀπαδῶν ἐκ δόμων τις ἔρχεται
	δακρυρροοῦσα· τίνα τύχην ἀκούσομαι;
	πενθεῖν μέν, εἴ τι δεσπόταισι τυγχάνει,
	συγγνωστόν· εἰ δ᾽ ἔτ᾽ ἐστὶν ἔμψυχος γυνὴ
	εἴτ᾽ οὖν ὄλωλεν εἰδέναι βουλοίμεθ᾽ ἄν. 5
Θεράπαινα	καὶ ζῶσαν εἰπεῖν καὶ θανοῦσαν ἔστι σοι.
Χορός	καὶ πῶς ἂν αὐτὸς κατθάνοι τε καὶ βλέποι;
Θεράπαινα	ἤδη προνωπής ἐστι καὶ ψυχορραγεῖ.
Χορός	ὦ τλῆμον, οἵας οἷος ὢν ἁμαρτάνεις.
Θεράπαινα	οὔπω τόδ᾽ οἶδε δεσπότης, πρὶν ἂν πάθῃ. 10
Χορός	ἐλπὶς μὲν οὐκέτ᾽ ἐστὶ σῴζεσθαι βίον;
Θεράπαινα	πεπρωμένη γὰρ ἡμέρα βιάζεται.

Vocabulary:

ἁμαρτάνω	be deprived of (+ *gen.*)	οὔπω	not yet
αὐτός	= ὁ αὐτός	πενθέω	mourn (for)
βιάζομαι	press hard	πόρω, ... πέπρωμαι	(*pass.*) be fated
βλέπω	see (the sun); be alive	προνωπής, -ές	drooping,
δακρυρροέω	weep		sinking
δεσπόταισι	= δεσπόταις	συγγνωστός, -ή, -όν	pardonable
δόμος, -ου, ὁ	(*pl.*) house	τλήμων, -ον	miserable (*refers
ἔμψυχος, -ον	breathing, alive		to Admetus*)
ἔστι	= ἔξεστι	χορός, -οῦ, ὁ	chorus
θεράπαινα, -ης, ἡ	nurse	ψυχορραγέω	be on the point
ὀπαδός, -οῦ, ἡ	attendant		of death

Reading 5: Jesus and a Storm at Sea (Gospel according to Matthew)

Jesus and his disciples encounter a storm at sea.

καὶ ἐμβάντι αὐτῷ εἰς πλοῖον ἠκολούθησαν αὐτῷ οἱ μαθηταὶ αὐτοῦ.
καὶ ἰδοὺ σεισμὸς μέγας ἐγένετο ἐν τῇ θαλάσσῃ, ὥστε τὸ πλοῖον
καλύπτεσθαι ὑπὸ τῶν κυμάτων· αὐτὸς δὲ ἐκάθευδεν. καὶ
προσελθόντες ἤγειραν αὐτὸν λέγοντες, Κύριε, σῶσον, ἀπολλύμεθα.
5 καὶ λέγει αὐτοῖς, Τί δειλοί ἐστε, ὀλιγόπιστοι; τότε ἐγερθεὶς
ἐπετίμησεν τοῖς ἀνέμοις καὶ τῇ θαλάσσῃ, καὶ ἐγένετο γαλήνη μεγάλη.
Οἱ δὲ ἄνθρωποι ἐθαύμασαν λέγοντες, Ποταπός ἐστιν οὗτος ὅτι καὶ οἱ
ἄνεμοι καὶ ἡ θάλασσα αὐτῷ ὑπακούουσιν;

Vocabulary:

ἀκολουθέω (+ *dat.*)	follow	καλύπτω	cover
ἄνεμος, -ου, ὁ	wind	κῦμα, -ατος, τό	wave
γαλήνη, -ης, ἡ	calm	κύριος, -ου, ὁ	lord
δειλός, -ή, -όν	cowardly	μαθητής, -οῦ, ὁ	student, disciple
ἐγείρω	waken	ὀλιγόπιστος, -ον	of little faith
ἐμβαίνω	board	πλοῖον, -ου, τό	ship
ἐπιτιμάω (+ *dat.*)	rebuke	ποταπός, -ή, -όν	of what sort
θάλασσα, -ης, ἡ	= θάλαττα	σεισμός, -οῦ, ὁ	*here* 'storm'
ἰδού	behold!	ὑπακούω (+ *dat.*)	obey
καθεύδω	sleep		

Ionic Greek

The Ionic dialect differs from Attic in several minor ways. The following common features of Ionic appear in the Herodotus readings:

- η even after ε, ι, and ρ, as a result of the Great Vowel Shift in early Greek from original ᾱ (Ch. 3.4); in Attic, this shift did not take place after ε, ι, and ρ
  πρήγματα (Attic πράγματα)

- σσ in words like θάλασσα
  πρήσσοντα (Attic πράττοντα)

- ε contract forms are not contracted
  ἐοῦσα, ἐδόκεε (Attic οὖσα, ἐδόκει)

- the preposition 'to, into' is ἐς (Attic εἰς)

READING 6: Polycrates and the Ring – 1 (Herodotus, adapted)

Polycrates who ruled the island of Samos (c. 538–522 B.C.) made a friendly alliance with Amasis, the pharaoh of Egypt (570–526 B.C.). In this story Amasis tries but fails to prevent Polycrates' great good luck from leading him to a bad end.

ὁ Πολυκράτης ξεινίαν Ἀμάσι τῷ Αἰγύπτου βασιλεῖ συνέθηκατο,
πέμπων τε δῶρα καὶ δεχόμενος ἄλλα παρ' ἐκείνου. ἐν χρόνῳ δὲ ὀλίγῳ
αὐτίκα τοῦ Πολυκράτεος τὰ πρήγματα ηὔξετο· καί κως τὸν Ἄμασιν
εὐτυχέων μεγάλως ὁ Πολυκράτης οὐκ ἐλάνθανε, ἀλλά οἱ τοῦτ' ἦν
5 ἐπιμελές. γράψας ὦν ἐς βυβλίον τάδε ἔπεμψεν ἐς Σάμον. Ἡδὺ μὲν
πυνθάνεσθαι ἄνδρα φίλον καὶ ξεῖνον εὖ πρήσσοντα· ἐμοὶ δὲ αἱ σαὶ
μεγάλαι εὐτυχίαι οὐκ ἀρέσκουσι, ἐπισταμένῳ ὡς οἱ θεοὶ φθονεροί
εἰσιν· οὐδένα γὰρ οἶδα ὅστις ἐς τέλος οὐ κακῶς ἐτελεύτησε, εὐτυχέων
τὰ πάντα. σύ νυν ἐμοὶ πειθόμενος ποίησον τοιάδε· φροντίσας τὸ ἂν
10 εὕρῃς τῶν σῶν πλείστου ἄξιον τε καὶ φιλεόμενον, τοῦτο ἀπόβαλε.

ὁ Πολυκράτης νόῳ λαβὼν ὥς οἱ εὖ ὑπετίθετο Ἄμασις, φροντίσας τί
αὐτῷ ἦν πλείστου ἄξιόν τε καὶ φιλεόμενον, εὕρισκε δὲ τόδε. ἦν οἱ
σφρηγὶς χρυσόδετος, σμαράγδου λίθου ἐοῦσα. ἐπεὶ ὦν ταύτην οἱ
ἐδόκεε ἀποβαλεῖν, ἐποίεε τοιάδε· ἐσέβη ἐς ναῦν, ὡς δὲ ἀπὸ τῆς νήσου
15 ἑκὰς ἐγένετο, τὴν σφρηγῖδα ῥίπτει ἐς τὴν θάλασσαν.

Vocabulary:

Αἴγυπτος, -ου, ἡ	Egypt	Πολυκράτης, -εος, ὁ	Polycrates
Ἄμασις, -ιος, ὁ	Amasis	ῥίπτω	throw, hurl
ἀρέσκω (+ *dat.*)	please	Σάμος, -ου, ἡ	Samos
αὐξάνομαι,	increase, grow	σμαράγδος, -ου, ἡ	emerald
aor. ηὐξάμην		συντίθεμαι	agree to
βυβλίον, -ου, τό	papyrus strip	σφρηγίς, -ῖδος, ἡ	ring
ἑκάς	far away	τό (*line 7*)	= ὅ
ἐπιμελής, -ές	of concern	ὑποτίθημι	advise,
ἐπίσταμαι	know		admonish
εὐτυχέω	have good luck		
εὐτυχία, -ας, ἡ	good fortune	φθονερός, -ή -όν	jealous
κως	= πως	φροντίζω	consider
νυν	so	χρυσόδετος, -ον	set in gold
ξεινία, -ας, ἡ	guest-friendship	ὦν	= οὖν
οἱ	= αὐτῷ		

Reading 7: Polycrates and the Ring – 2 (Herodotus, adapted)

πέμπτη δὲ ἢ ἕκτη ἡμέρῃ ἀπὸ τούτων, ἀνὴρ ἁλιεὺς λαβὼν ἰχθὺν μέγαν
τε καὶ καλὸν ἠξίου μιν Πολυκράτει δῶρον δοθῆναι. φέρων δὴ ἔλεγε
διδοὺς τὸν ἰχθύν· ὦ βασιλεῦ, ἐγὼ τόνδε ἑλὼν οὐκ ἐδικαίωσα φέρειν ἐς
ἀγορήν, ἀλλά μοι ἐδόκεε σεῦ τε εἶναι ἄξιος καὶ τῆς σῆς ἀρχῆς. ὁ δὲ
5   ἡσθεὶς ἀποκρίνεται· κάρτα τε εὖ ἐποίησας καὶ χάρις διπλῆ τῶν τε
λόγων καὶ τοῦ δώρου. τὸν δὲ ἰχθὺν τάμνοντες οἱ θεράποντες
εὑρίσκουσι ἐν τῇ νηδύι αὐτοῦ ἐνεοῦσαν τὴν Πολυκράτεος σφρηγῖδα.
ὡς δὲ εἶδόν τε καὶ ἔλαβον τάχιστα, ἔφερον παρὰ τὸν Πολυκράτεα. ὁ δὲ
γράψας ἐς βυβλίον πάντα τὰ γενόμενα ἐς Αἴγυπτον ἔπεμψεν.
10   ἐπιλεξάμενος δὲ ὁ Ἄμασις ἔμαθε ὅτι ἐκκομίσαι τε ἀδύνατον εἴη
ἀνθρώπῳ ἄνθρωπον ἐκ τοῦ μέλλοντος γίνεσθαι πρήγματος.

Vocabulary:

ἁλιεύς, -ῆος, ὁ	fisherman	θεράπων, -οντος, ὁ	servant
βυβλίον, -ου, τό	papyrus strip	ἰχθύς, -ύος, ὁ	fish
γίνεσθαι	= γίγνεσθαι	κάρτα	very (much)
δικαιόω	think it right	μιν	= αὐτόν
διπλοῦς, -ῆ, -οῦν	twofold	νηδύς, -ύος, ἡ	belly
εἴη	*opt. can replace indic. in some constructions*	Πολυκράτης, -εος, ὁ	Polycrates
		σεῦ	= σοῦ
		σφρηγίς, -ῖδος, ἡ	ring
ἐκκομίζω	keep (someone) out	τάμνω	cut
ἐπιλέγομαι	read	ὡς ... τάχιστα	as soon as

Extracises Greek–English

3.1   ἄνθρωπος τέκνα διδάσκει.

3.2   ἵππους καὶ δῶρα πέμψω.

3.3   τέκνα πείθεις;

3.4   δῶρα πέμπει ξένοις.

3.5   τέκνα θεᾷ θαλάττης θύει.

3.6   κώμην βλάψομεν.

4.1   καὶ οἱ Πέρσαι τῇ τῆς θαλάττης θεᾷ θύουσιν.

4.2   ἔργα τῶν νεανιῶν τοὺς φίλους οὐ βλάπτει.

4.3   τὸν ἵππον πρὸς τῇ ἀγορᾷ λύει.

4.4   ὦ πολῖται, τὸν λόγον ἀεὶ διδάξομεν.

4.5   οἱ στρατιῶται τὴν κώμην οὐ βλάψουσιν, ἀλλὰ πρὸς τὸν ποταμὸν στρατεύσουσιν.

4.6   ἐκ τῆς ὁδοῦ τοὺς ἵππους διώξομεν.

4.7   οἱ πολῖται νῦν τοὺς Πέρσας καὶ διώκουσι καὶ λύουσιν.

4.8   καὶ ἐν ταῖς Ἀθήναις ὁ λόγος οὐκ ἀεὶ πείθει.

5.1   τίνες πρὸς τῇ ὁδῷ ἐφύλαττον;

5.2   μετὰ τῶν φίλων ἐν ταῖς Ἀθήναις εὖ πράξομεν.

5.3   τῷ Πέρσῃ νῦν πιστεύεις ἢ οὔ;

5.4   ὁ στρατηγὸς τὸν θάνατον διὰ τοὺς θεοὺς ἔφυγεν.

5.5   τίς τὸν ἵππον ἐν τῇ οἰκίᾳ ἔλιπεν;

5.6   τίνας οἱ θεοὶ καὶ θεαὶ σώσουσιν;

5.7   τοὺς ἵππους οἱ στρατιῶται ἐφύλαττον ἐν τῇ νήσῳ.

5.8   ὦ πολῖτα, ὁ νεανίας τῶν Ἀθηνῶν εὖ βασιλεύσει;

6.1   ὁ στρατηγὸς τῶν ἀνθρώπων τινὰς ἔσωσεν;

6.2   ἡ σοφὴ τὰ μὲν τέκνα εὖ ἔπραξε, τοὺς δὲ ἵππους οὔ.

6.3   τί ἔλεγεν ὁ Ἀθηναῖος περὶ τῶν βαρβάρων;

6.4   τίς μετὰ τὸν πόλεμον τῶν Περσῶν ἐβασίλευεν;

6.5   οὔτε οἱ κακοὶ οὔτε οἱ δίκαιοι τὸν θάνατον φεύγουσιν.

6.6   μακραὶ αἱ ἡμέραι ἐν τῇ νήσῳ.

6.7   τίνος τὸν βίον οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι σώσουσιν ἐν τῷ χαλεπῷ πολέμῳ;

6.8   ὅ τε στρατηγὸς καὶ ὁ ἀδελφὸς τοὺς καλοὺς ἵππους ἐδίωξαν.

7.1   οἱ σοφοὶ ἀγαθοὶ ἡγεμόνες εἰσίν.

7.2   τίς ὕδωρ τῷ φύλακι οἴσει;

7.3   τὰ τῆς πατρίδος ὁ δίκαιος ἡγεμὼν πράττει.

7.4   τοῖς τότε χαλεπὰ ὅπλα ἦν.

7.5   τίνος ἀδελφὸς τοὺς ξένους ἦγε διὰ τῆς πολεμίας χώρας;

7.6   τοῖς κήρυξι τῶν Ἑλλήνων τινὲς οὐκ ἐπίστευον.

7.7   τὸ πρᾶγμα τοῖς Ἀθηναίοις τιμὴν φέρει.

7.8   τῶν ἀνθρώπων τινὲς τοὺς σὺν τῷ ἡγεμόνι φίλους ὠνόμασαν.

8.1   ἐπείσαμεν τοὺς πολεμίους τῷ στρατηγῷ μὴ πιστεύειν.

8.2   ὁ ἡγεμὼν τοὺς νεανίας ὕδωρ ἐνεγκεῖν κελεύει.

8.3   καὶ ἐν πολέμῳ πᾶς ἄνθρωπος τὸν βίον σῶσαι ἐθέλει.

8.4   ὁ ἀδελφὸς ἦν ὁ ἄρχων καὶ τῆς πάσης πατρίδος τότε ἦρχεν.

8.5   τίνες τὰς δέκα καμήλους πάλιν ἄξουσιν;

8.6   ὁ μὲν πείσει τοὺς πολίτας τοῖς ὅπλοις, ὁ δὲ τοῖς δώροις.

8.7   τῷ σοφῷ ποιητῇ τιμή ἐστι διὰ τοὺς καλοὺς λόγους.

8.8   διὰ τὸν πόλεμον τοῖς μὲν πολίταις ἐπιστεύσαμεν, τοῖς δὲ βαρβάροις οὔ.

9.1   ἐγὼ καὶ σὺ τὰ τῆς μητρὸς ἐκ πυρὸς λαμβάνομεν καὶ πάντα τὰ ἐν τῇ οἰκίᾳ
         σώσομεν.

9.2   ὁ πατὴρ ὑμῶν αὐτὸς τὸ αὐτὸ ἀεὶ ἤθελεν.

9.3   δίδασκε πάντα τὰ περὶ τῆς Ἑλλάδος.

9.4   ὦ παῖ, μήποτε λάμβανε τὰ ἄλλου.

9.5   τοὺς ἄλλους ἵππους πάλιν πρὸς τὰς Ἀθήνας ἤγαγες;

9.6   ἡμεῖς τὰς αὐτὰς γυναῖκας τῆς νυκτὸς φυλάττειν ἐπείσαμεν.

9.7   τοῖς μὲν βαρβάροις χαλεπὰ ὅπλα ἦν, οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες αὐτοὶ τὴν πατρίδα
         ἔσωσαν.

9.8   εἷς ποιητὴς περὶ τῶν τότε Ἀθηναίων καλὰ γράψει.

10.1   εἰ τὸν βάρβαρον πρὸς τοὺς ἄρχοντας ἤγαγες, κακῶς ἂν αὐτὸν ἐποίησαν.

10.2   τίς ἡμῖν βοηθῆσαι ἐθέλει; μέγα γὰρ τὸ ἔργον ἡμῶν ἐστιν.

10.3   εἴ τι ὁρᾷς, λέγε τι.

10.4   ἐπειδὴ οὐδεὶς ἄλλος ὑμῖν ἐπίστευσεν, ὁ ἄρχων ὑμᾶς φίλους τε καὶ συμμάχους
         ἐκάλεσεν.

10.5   τοὺς θεοὺς τιμήσομεν ὅτι τὴν εἰρήνην νῦν ἔχομεν.

10.6   ἐμὲ μὲν οἱ πολῖται αὐτοὶ ἐτίμων, ὑμᾶς δ᾽ οὔ.

10.7   εἰ τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ μήποτε ἤκουες, ὁ πατήρ σου τάλας ἂν ἦν.

10.8   οὐδεὶς ἐν τῇ νήσῳ αὐτῇ ἕζη.

11.1   οἱ μὲν πολῖται ἐν ταῖς Ἀθήναις ἔμειναν, οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι πρὸς τὴν θάλατταν ἔφυγον.

11.2   ἡ θεὰ αὐτὴ ἐκέλευσε τὸν φύλακα διώκειν τε καὶ λαμβάνειν αὐτούς.

11.3   ὁ Χενοφῶν τοὺς ἄνδρας, ὧν τὴν γῆν ἐνίκησεν, οὐκ ἀποκτενεῖ.

11.4   ἐν τῇ οἰκίᾳ τῆς ἡμέρας ἐμείναμεν ἐπεὶ ὁ πατὴρ ἡμῶν ἀπέθανεν.

11.5   τῇ αὐτῇ θεᾷ ἢ τῇ πάσῃ χώρᾳ ἐβοήθει θῦσαι ἠθέλησα.

11.6   εἰ οἱ στρατιῶται σοφοὶ ἦσαν, τὰ τείχη τῆς νυκτὸς ἂν ἐφύλαττον.

11.7   ὦ παῖ, ἀεὶ λέγε τὰ ἀληθῆ.

11.8   τίς ἔπεισε τοὺς σὺν τῷ ἄρχοντι ἀποφυγεῖν ἀπὸ τῆς θαλάττης;

12.1   ὅτε εἰσῆλθεν ἡ μήτηρ, τοὺς παῖδας ἐκάλεσεν.

12.2   τοὺς ἱππέας οἳ τὰ τείχη διέφθειραν τιμήσομεν.

12.3   μέλλετε ἀποκτενεῖν πάντας τοὺς Πέρσας οὓς ἐλάβετε;

12.4   ἡγούμεθα τοὺς συμμάχους εὖ τῷ βασιλεῖ συμβουλεῦσαι· χάριν οὖν αὐτοῖς ἔχομεν.

12.5   ἐκέλευσα τοὺς πολλοὺς τὰ χρήματα λιπεῖν καὶ ἐκ τοῦ ἄστεως ἐκφυγεῖν.

12.6   πᾶς βασιλεὺς νομίζει μεγάλην δύναμιν ἐν τῇ φύσει ἔχειν.

12.7   τοὺς ψευδεῖς λόγους τοὺς παῖδας διαφθεῖραι οὐ βουλόμεθα.

12.8   ὁ κῆρυξ ἡγεῖται τὸν στρατηγὸν αὐτὸν γράψαι ἐπιστολὴν περὶ τῆς τοῦ παιδὸς φύσεως.

13.1   (τὴν) εἰρήνην ζητοῦντες, οἱ ἡγεμόνες ὑμῶν εὖ ἐβούλευον.

13.2   οὐ πάντες οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι ὡμολόγουν τὸν Σωκράτη ἄξιον θανάτου εἶναι.

13.3   πολλοὶ μὲν τάλανές εἰσιν, ὁ δὲ τὴν ἐλπίδα ἔχων εὐδαίμονα βίον ζῇ.

13.4   ὁ βασιλεὺς τοῦ ἀξίου ποιητοῦ ἀκούων χαίρει.

13.5   νομίζεις τὸν νόμον πάντας τοὺς ἀδικοῦντας κακῶς ποιεῖν;

13.6   οἱ ξένοι εἰς τὴν μεγάλην πόλιν ἐλθόντες πολλοὺς φίλους τέλος ηὗρον.

13.7   οἱ σύμμαχοι ἡμῶν τὰ τῶν πολεμίων σώματα ἐκ τῆς ἀγορᾶς φέρειν ἤθελον.

13.8   αὐτὴν μὲν σώφρονα εἶναι ἡγούμεθα, αὐτὸν δ᾽ οὔ.

14.1   τούτων τῶν γυναικῶν τέλος ἀσφαλῶν οὐσῶν, μάλιστα ἐχαίρομεν.

14.2   τοῖς στρατιώταις βραχεῖα ἡ πρὸς τὸν θάνατον ὁδός.

14.3   ἐκεῖνος παιδὰς πολλοὺς ἔτρεφεν, ἡμῶν ἀπόντων.

14.4   τί ἐγένετο ἐπεὶ καμήλου ἐν τῇ ὁδῷ ἔτυχες;

14.5   ὅδε ὁ ἡγεμὼν δίκῃ τε καὶ τέχνῃ ἐκείνης τῆς πόλεως ἄρχει.

14.6   οὔποτε πυνθανόμενος παύσομαι.

14.7   οὗτοι οἱ παῖδες τῷ ὄντι μέγα ἄδικον ἐποίησαν.

14.8   τοῖσδε δὴ μόνοις τέχνη μεγάλη ἦν.

15.1   οὐδέν μοι διαφέρει εἰ οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι πάρεισιν ἢ οὔ.

15.2   τὴν δύναμιν ἐθαυμάζομεν τὴν τῶν ἱππέων οἳ πολλὰ πράττειν ἀγαθοὶ ἦσαν.

15.3   τὰ ἀληθῆ ὑπό τινος μετὰ πολλὰ ἔτη εὑρεθήσεται;

15.4   ἔστι σοφός τις ἀνὴρ ὃς τὰ ὑπὸ τῆς γῆς πάντα ἀεὶ ζητεῖ.

15.5   τῶν θεῶν ἐθελόντων, ἡ πόλις ὑμῶν τέλος σωθήσεται.

15.6   τί οὗτος ὑπὸ τῶν ἱππέων τότε ἐδιώχθη;

15.7   τὸ τοῦ δεσπότου γένος ὑπὸ πάντων ἐθαυμάσθη.

15.8   τόνδε τὸν τρόπον πάντα διαφέρεται.

15.9   ὦ φίλοι τε καὶ παῖδες, ἐμοὶ τὸ τοῦ βίου τέλος νῦν πάρεστιν.

15.10 ἀγαθὰ πᾶσι τοῖς πολίταις τέλος ἠγγέλθη.

16.1   ἐκεῖνος ὁ Λακεδαιμόνιος διὰ τὸν ἥλιον πόνους πολλοὺς τὴν κεφαλὴν ἔπασχεν.

16.2   τί ἐπαύσω τῷ δεσπότῃ συμβουλεύων;

16.3   ὁ κῆρυξ ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι πολλὰ κακὰ ἐν τῇ ὁδῷ διήνεγκεν.

16.4   οἱ πολέμιοι χρόνου βραχέος δέκα στάδια ἐπορεύσαντο.

16.5   ἐκρίνατε τούτους τοὺς ξένους ἔτι φιλίους εἶναι;

16.6   οὗτος ὁ δεσπότης εἶπεν ὡς ὁ μὲν ἀδελφὸς ἄδικος ἦν, αὐτὸς δ’ οὔ.

16.7   οὐκ ἐμέλλομεν ἐκείνῳ τῷ τρόπῳ ἀποκρινεῖσθαι.

16.8   τῆς νυκτὸς ἀπό τινος ἐπυθόμην τοὺς πολεμίους εἰς τὸ ἄστυ εἰσβαλόντας.

16.9   οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι τοῖς ἰσχυροῖς πολεμίοις μάχεσθαι οὐκ ἐφοβοῦντο.

16.10 εἶπε ὅτι ἡμεῖς ὑπὸ τῷ ὄρει ὕδωρ ἡδὺ καὶ φιλίους ἄνδρας εὑρήσομεν.

17.1   τὴν Ἑλλάδα εὐθὺς λείψειν ἐλπίζομεν, μένειν γὰρ χαλεπόν ἐστι διὰ τὸν πόλεμον.

17.2   τίς τοὺς κριτὰς τοὺς κακὰ πράττοντας κρινεῖ;

17.3   ὁ στρατιώτης τὴν πᾶσαν ἡμέραν ἔστη πρὸς τὸν ἥλιον.

17.4   διὰ τοῦτο ἡμῖν τοὺς νόμους ἔθεσαν οἱ ἄρχοντες.

17.5   τίσι τὰ χρήματα δώσομεν ἐπεὶ / ἐπειδὴ τοῦτο ἐπράχθη;

17.6   ὁ ποιητὴς ταῦτα γράφων ἤρξατο ὅτε νέος ἦν.

17.7   δοκεῖ γάρ μοι χρῆναι ἀπ’ αὐτῶν ἐκεῖνα πυνθάνεσθαι.

17.8   οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι διδόασιν ἡμῖν τὰ τείχη καὶ τὰς ναῦς καὶ τὰς νήσους ἡμῶν.

17.9   ἵστασθαι τε καὶ μάχεσθαι ἐφοβεῖσθε τῶν πολεμίων τῆς νυκτὸς προσβαλλόντων;

17.10 τοῖς Ἕλλησι νόμος ἦν τοὺς νικήσαντας δώροις τιμῆσαι.

18.1   ὁ τοῦ δεσπότου υἱὸς οὕτω ἰσχυρός τε καὶ ἀγαθὸς ἦν ὥστε οὔποτε ἐφοβεῖτο.

18.2   οὕτω δυνατὸς ἐκεῖνος ὁ βασιλεὺς ἐγένετο ὥστε πάντες οἱ ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ ἐφοβοῦντο.

18.3   καταθέντες τὰ ὅπλα παρὰ τῷ ποταμῷ, πῦρ ἐποιήσαμεν.

18.4   ὁ τάλας κῆρυξ τῷ πλήθει οὐκ ἀγγεῖλαι βούλεται τὴν πόλιν λυθεῖσαν.

18.5   οἱ φίλοι ἐμὲ τιμῇ ἐδέξαντο εἰς τὰς Ἀθήνας ἀφικόμενον.

18.6   ᾐσθόμην καὶ τοὺς ἰσχυροὺς ἄνδρας λέοντας φοβουμένους.

18.7   ὁ στρατηγὸς ἐπύθετο τοὺς Λακεδαμονίους πᾶσαν τὴν νύκτα πορευσαμένους.

18.8   ἡδὺ δή ἐστι τοῖς νέοις φίλοις ἀλλήλους εὑρεῖν.

18.9   οἱ Πέρσαι νικηθέντες ἔφυγον.

18.10 θέλομεν καλῶς ζῆν πάντες ἀλλ᾿ οὐ δυνάμεθα.

19.1   οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐλάττονα χώραν ἔχουσιν ἢ οἱ βάρβαροι.

19.2   οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐλάττονα χώραν ἔχουσι τῶν βαρβάρων.

19.3   ἔγνωμεν δὴ ὡς ἰσχυρότερον οὐδέν ἐστι τοῦ λόγου.

19.4   τίς δεινότερος λέγειν ἦν ἢ ὁ Σωκράτης;

19.5   εἰ αἱ τῶν πολεμίων νῆες θάττονες ἦσαν τῶν ἡμετέρων, οὐκ ἂν ἐνικήσαμεν αὐτούς.

19.6   πείθεσθαι δεῖ τῷ θεῷ ἢ τῷ βασιλεῖ;

19.7   ἐκεῖνος ὁ κῆρυξ, τάχιστος ὤν, τῇ αὐτῇ ἡμέρᾳ παρῆν.

19.8   στήσομαι παρὰ τῷ ἐμῷ ἀδελφῷ καὶ τοῖς τῶν Περσῶν ἀρίστοις μαχοῦμαι.

19.9   ἔπειτα εἰς τὴν πόλιν τὸν ἕτερον παῖδα ζητῶν ἔβην.

19.10 πρῶτον μὲν ταῦτα πράξομεν, εἶτα δ᾿ ἐκεῖνα.

20.1   τίνι θεῷ θύωμεν, τοῦ πολέμου νικηθέντος;

20.2   μήποτε χρήματα ἀπὸ κακίονος ἀνδρὸς ἡδέως δέχου.

20.3   τὴν εἰρήνην νῦν ποιήσωμεν πρὸς τὰς Ἀθήνας;

20.4   οἱ πολῖται ὡς πλείστοις παισὶ βοηθῆσαι ἐβούλοντο.

20.5   τῶν Περσῶν ὡς ἰσχυροτάτων ὄντων, ἀποβῶμεν μηδὲ μαχεσώμεθα.

20.6   οἱ μὲν τῆς ἀρετῆς τε καὶ τῆς ἀληθείας ἐπιμελοῦνται, οἱ δ᾿οὔ.

20.7   τῶν πολεμίων ἐγγὺς ὄντων, ὁ στρατηγὸς πλείονας φύλακας ἄνα τὴν πόλιν ἔστησεν.

20.8   ὅπλα ἀμείνονα ἐν ταῖς τῶν ἡμετέρων ἡγεμόνων χερσὶν θεῖναι δύναται;

20.9   νῦν σοφώτερ**ον** πράξωμεν ἢ πρότερον.

20.10 τῆς δόξης τῆς ἄλλων μὴ ἐπιμεληθῇς.

21.1   εἰ γὰρ ἡγεμόνα φίλιον ἐν τῇ ὁδῷ τύχοιμεν.

21.2   εἴθε ἡ πόλις ἀσφαλὴς νῦν ἦν.

21.3   οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ οἱ βάρβαροι τὴν αὐτὴν γνώμην περὶ τῆς τῆς ψυχῆς φύσεως εἶχον;

21.4   ἡμεῖς τοῦ ἡλίου ἕνεκα ἐν τῇ οἰκίᾳ ἡμέραν πᾶσαν ἂν μένοιμεν.

21.5   εἰ γὰρ τοῦ σώφρονος φίλου ἤκουσας ἀντὶ τοῦ ἄλλου.

21.6   βασιλεὺς ἦν ποτε τῶν Περσῶν ὃς τὴν ἑαυτοῦ γυναῖκα μάλιστα ἐφίλει.

21.7   τοῖς μὴ ζητοῦσιν εὑρεῖν τι ἀδύνατόν ἐστιν.

21.8   αὕτη ἡ θεὰ ἀεὶ ὑμᾶς τε καὶ τοὺς παῖδας φυλάττοι.

21.9   τίς τοῦτον πάντων κριτῶν τὸν σοφώτατον οἴεται;

21.10   ἐν τῇ σεαυτοῦ οἰκίᾳ ἔτη πλεῖστα μένειν οἷός τ' εἴης.

22.1   ἐὰν μετὰ ὁδὸν μακρὰν εἰς τὸν ποταμὸν πόδας θῇς, ἥδει.

22.2   οὐδεὶς αὐτὸν τῷ ὄντι γιγνώσκει, εἰ μὴ σοφός ἐστιν.

22.3   εἴθε ἕκαστος ἄλλους βέλτιον πράξαι τῆς ψυχῆς ἕνεκα.

22.4   ἐὰν οἱ στρατιῶται μηκέτι καλῶς μάχωνται, τὴν πόλιν οὐδὲν σώσουσιν.

22.5   πρὸς τὴν χώραν ἐκείνην βήσετε ὅπως κρείττονας συμμάχους εὕρητε;

22.6   τῶν πολεμίων ἀπελθόντων, πάντας τοὺς θεοὺς οἳ ἡμῖν ἐβοήθησαν τιμῶμεν.

22.7   ἐὰν ἡ θεὰ ἡμῖν δύναμιν διδῷ, νικῶμεν καὶ ἅμα πολλὰ θύομεν.

22.8   ὁ νέος ἔχαιρεν τάχιστα ἐφ' ἵππου βῆναι δυνάμενος.

22.9   ὅστις σώφρων ἐστὶ τοῖς θεοῖς δῶρα πολλάκις δίδωσιν ὡς τὴν ἀγαθὴν τύχην ἔχῃ.

22.10   μεγίστους κινδύνους πάσχομεν κατὰ θάλατταν πορευόμενοι ἵνα εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα ἀφικνώμεθα.

23.1   οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι ἀπέπεμψαν τὰς γυναῖκας, ὡς ἀσφαλεῖς εἶεν.

23.2   εἰ αἴτιος ἔσει, ταύτην τὴν γραφὴν οὐ φεύξει.

23.3   εἰ ἐκεῖνον ἐν τιμῇ τιθεῖντο, τοῖς πολίταις χάριν εἶχεν.

23.4   εἰ οἱ παῖδες περὶ τούτων ἐρωτῷεν, πρὸς αὐτοὺς ἂν ἀποκρίνοιο;

23.5   εἴθε τόδε τὸ ἔργον αὐτίκα τελευτήσειν μέλλοις.

23.6   ὁ δεινὸς φόβῳ ὡς τάχιστα ἀπέφυγεν ὅπως μὴ ὑπὸ τῶν πολιτῶν ληφθείη.

23.7   εἰ οὗτος χρήσιμος τῇ πόλει εἴη, αὐτὸν κριτὴν ἂν σταίης;

23.8   δῆλον αὐτίκα ἐγένετο ὅτι ἐκεῖνοι οἱ τάλανες πολλῶν ἐδέοντο.

23.9   εἰ ὁ ἀδελφός μου εἰς μάχην βαίνοι, μάχεσθαι τοῖς ἀρίστοις ἴσος εἶναι ἐφαίνετο.

23.10   τὰ μὲν ὑπὸ γῇ τοῖς ἀνθρώποις δηλότερα γίγνονται, τὰ δ' ἐν τοῖς οὐρανοῖς οὔ.

24.1   ἀεὶ δικαίως πράττει τις ἐὰν τὸ δαιμόνιον ἑαυτοῦ ἡγῆται;

24.2   τοῦ πολέμου τελευτήσαντος, τὰ τῆς πόλεως ὀλίγῳ ἀμείνονα γέγονεν.

24.3   τήνδε τὴν γυναῖκα δέκα παῖδας τετοκυῖαν οἶσθα;

24.4   τοῖς Ἕλλησι κάλλιστα γέγραπται.

24.5   ποῖος ἂν ἡγεμόνι ἕσποιτο ὃς τὴν ὁδὸν οὐ μέμνηται;

24.6   ἐπειδὴ οἱ νεανίαι εὑρέθησαν, δέκα ἡμέρας ἐστρατεύκεσαν.

24.7   πολλὰ ἀγαθὰ ἑκάστῳ ηὕρηται.

24.8   εἰ ἄλλον φίλον ὅμοιον τῷδε εὕροις, γνοίης ἂν εὐδαιμονέστατος ὤν.

24.9 ἡμέραις τισὶν ἔοικα οὐδὲν δρᾶσαι.

24.10 ἥκω δῶρα πᾶσι φέρων.

25.1 πάντα σκοποίη καὶ μὴ χρησίμου τινὸς ἐπιλάθοιτο.

25.2 ἥκω τοὺς λοιποὺς συμμάχους παρὰ τὸν νεὸν τόπον οἴσων.

25.3 πολλοὶ ἐν τῷ πλήθει πῦρ τῆς μακροτέρας νυκτὸς ᾔτουν.

25.4 τῶν πολεμίων νικηθέντων, ὁ στρατηγὸς ἔπεμψεν ἄνδρας ἑπτὰ αἰτήσοντες γῆν τε καὶ ὕδωρ τῷ τῶν Περσῶν βασιλεῖ. [*The Persians demanded earth and water as a symbol of surrender.*]

25.5 τοῖς πολίταις τὸ κοινὸν πολλὰ παρέσχε ἵνα μηδένος δέοιεν.

25.6 ἴστε ὅπου αἱ λοιπαὶ τῶν γυναικῶν εἰσιν;

25.7 δεκάτῳ ἔτει οἱ Ἕλληνες τέλος ἐνίκησαν καὶ τὴν χαλεπὴν ὁδὸν τὴν πρὸς τὴν πατρίδα ἐπορεύοντο.

25.8 τῶν παίδων λίθους παρὰ τῇ θαλάττῃ ἱέντων, ὁ πατὴρ εἰς τὸ ὕδωρ ἐπὶ κεφαλὴν ἔπεσεν.

25.9 ὁ δεσπότης ἐρωτᾶται εἰ πάντα τῷ ξένῳ παρέσχηκεν.

25.10 οὔ μοι διαφέρει εἴτε τοῖσδε τοῖς χρήμασι χρᾷ εἴτ' ἀποβάλλεις.

26.1 ἠρώτησα εἴ τις τὸν τοῦ βασιλέως νοῦν δηλοῦν δύναται.

26.2 ἵστατε τοὺς κρατηθέντας ὅπου ἂν ὑμῖν δοκῇ.

26.3 μαχοῦμαι ἕως ἂν ὁ πόλεμος τελευτᾷ καὶ τὴν πατρίδα σῶσαι οἷοί τ' ὦμεν.

26.4 οἱ ἀφικόμενοι ἐζήτησαν τοὺς λοιποὺς μέχρι ἡ νὺξ ἦλθεν.

26.5 ἐκείνη ἡ μήτηρ τὰς ἓξ ἑαυτῆς παῖδας ὅ τι ἂν βούλωνται δρᾶν ἐᾷ.

26.6 οὐκ ἂν τὰ ἴδια πράγματα τοῖς ἐχθροῖς δηλοίην.

26.7 ἕως ἂν ἐκεῖνοι χρήσιμοι εἶναι δηλῶνται, μένειν ἐαθήσονται.

26.8 ὅταν ἡ ναῦς ἀφίκηται, θύοντες ἀρξόμεθα.

26.9 πρὶν κακόν τι ποιῆσαι δυνηθῆναι, ἐκεῖνος ὁ κριτὴς τύχῃ ἐχθρότατος ἐδηλώθη.

26.10 ἡ πόλις τὸν λοιπὸν βίον θρέψει ὅστις ἂν τῆς πλείστης τιμῆς ἀξιωθῇ.

Extracises – Key

3.1   (The) man is teaching (the) children.

3.2   I will send horses and gifts.

3.3   Are you are persuading (the) children?

3.4   He sends gifts to (the) foreigners.

3.5   (The) children are sacrificing to a goddess of (the) sea.

3.6   We will harm (the) village.

4.1   Even the Persians sacrifice to the goddess of the sea.

4.2   Deeds of the young men do not harm their friends.

4.3   He/She releases the horse near the marketplace.

4.4   Citizens, we will always teach reason.

4.5   The soldiers will not harm the village, but will march toward the river.

4.6   We will pursue the horses out of the road.

4.7   Now the citizens are both pursuing and destroying the Persians.

4.8   Even in Athens, reason does not always persuade.

5.1   Who (pl.) were keeping watch near the road?

5.2   We will fare well in Athens with our friends.

5.3   Do you trust the Persian now or not?

5.4   The general escaped death because of the gods.

5.5   Who left the horse in the house?

5.6   Whom (pl.) will the gods and goddesses save?

5.7   The soldiers were guarding the horses on the island.

5.8   Citizen, will the young man rule Athens well?

6.1   Did the general save some of the men?

6.2   The wise woman managed her children well, but not the horses.

6.3   What was the Athenian saying about the foreigners?

6.4   Who was king of the Persians after the war?

6.5   Neither the bad nor the just escape death.

6.6   The days are long on the island.

6.7   Whose life will the Athenians save in the dangerous war?

6.8   Both the general and his brother pursued the fine horses.

7.1   Wise men are good leaders.

7.2   Who will bring water to / for the guard?

7.3   The just leader is managing the affairs of the fatherland.

7.4   People then / at that time used to have dangerous weapons. (*use dative of possession*)

7.5   Whose brother was leading the strangers through the hostile country?

7.6   Some of the Greeks didn't use to trust (the) heralds.

7.7   The matter brings honor to the Athenians.

7.8   Some of the men called those with the leader friends.

8.1   We persuaded the enemy not to trust the general.

8.2   The guide orders the young men to bring water.

8.3   Even in war, every man wants to save his life.

8.4   My brother was archon and was ruling the whole country at that time.

8.5   Who (pl.) will lead the ten camels back?

8.6   One man will persuade the citizens with weapons, another with gifts.

8.7   The wise poet has honor because of his beautiful words. (*use dative of possession*)

8.8   Because of the war we trusted the citizens but not the foreigners.

9.1   You and I are taking our mother's things out of the fire and we will save everything in the house.

9.2   Your (pl.) father himself always wanted the same thing.

9.3   Keep teaching everything about Greece.

9.4   Child, never take the possessions of another (person).

9.5   Did you lead the other horses back to Athens?

9.6   We persuaded the same women to keep watch during the night.

9.7   The foreigners had dangerous weapons, but the Greeks themselves saved their country.

9.8   One poet will write beautiful things about the Athenians of that time.

10.1   If you had led the foreigner to the archons, they would have treated him badly.

10.2   Who is willing to help us? For our task is great.

10.3   If you see something, say something.

10.4   When no one else trusted you (pl.), the archon called you (pl.) friends and allies.

10.5   We will honor the gods because we have peace now.

10.6   The citizens themselves used to honor me, but not you (pl.).

10.7   If you never listened to your brother, your father would be miserable.

10.8   Nobody used to live on the island itself.

11.1   The citizens stayed in Athens, but the foreigners fled to the sea.

11.2   The goddess herself ordered the guard to pursue and capture them.

11.3   Xenophon will not kill the men whose land he conquered.

11.4   We remained in the house during the day after our father died.

11.5   I wanted to sacrifice to the same goddess who was helping the whole country.

11.6   If the soldiers were wise, they would be guarding the walls during the night.

11.7   Child, always tell the truth.

11.8   Who persuaded those with the archon to flee away from the sea?

12.1   When the mother came in, she called the children.

12.2   We will honor the cavalrymen who destroyed the walls.

12.3   Do you (pl.) intend to kill all the Persians you seized?

12.4   We believe the allies advised the king well; therefore we are grateful to them.

12.5   I urged the majority to leave their goods behind and flee out of the town.

12.6   Every king thinks he has great power in his character.

12.7   We do not want false words / speeches to corrupt the children.

12.8   The herald believes that the general himself wrote a letter about the character of his son.

13.1   While seeking peace your (pl.) leaders planned / were planning well.

13.2   Not all the Athenians agreed that Socrates was worthy of death.

13.3   Many people are miserable, but the man who has hope lives a happy life.

13.4   The king enjoys listening to the worthy poet.

13.5   Do you think the law treats badly all those who do wrong?

13.6   After they came into the big city, the strangers finally found many friends.

13.7   Our allies kept wanting to carry the bodies of the enemy out of the agora.

13.8   We believe that she is sensible, but (that) he is not.

14.1   Since these women were finally safe, we were especially glad / we rejoiced very much.

14.2   The road to death is short for soldiers.

14.3   That man raised / educated many children while we were away.

14.4   What happened when you met a camel on the road?

14.5   This leader rules that city with justice and skill.

14.6   I will never stop learning.

14.7   These children in fact did a great injustice.

14.8   Indeed these men alone had great skill.

15.1   It makes no difference to me if the Spartans are present or not.

15.2   We used to admire the strength of the riders who were good at doing many things.

15.3   Will the truth be found by anyone after many years?

15.4   There is a certain wise man who always investigates all the things under the earth.

15.5   If the gods are willing, your (pl.) city will finally be saved.

15.6   Why was this man pursued by the cavalry at that time?

15.7   The master's family was admired by everyone.

15.8   In this way everything is endured.

15.9   Friends and children, the end of my life is now present.

15.10   Good things were finally announced to all the citizens.

16.1   That Spartan was suffering many pains with respect to (in) his head because of the sun.

16.2   Why did you stop advising your master?

16.3   The herald answered that he had endured many bad things on the road.

16.4   The enemy marched ten stades in a short time.

16.5   Did you (pl.) decide that these foreigners were still friendly?

16.6   This master said that his brother was unjust, but that he himself was not.

16.7   We did not intend to answer in that way.

16.8   During the night I learned from someone that the enemy had invaded the town.

16.9   The Spartans were not afraid to fight against strong enemies.

16.10   He said that we would find sweet water and friendly men at the foot of the mountain.

17.1   We hope to leave Greece immediately, for to stay is dangerous because of the war.

17.2   Who will judge the judges who do bad things?

17.3   The soldier stood in the sun for the whole day.

17.4   For this reason / Because of this the archons established the laws for us.

17.5   To whom (pl.) shall we give the money after this was done?

17.6   The poet began writing these things when he was young.

17.7   For it seems necessary to me to learn those things from them.

17.8   The Spartans give us our walls and ships and islands.

17.9   Were you (pl.) afraid to stand and fight when the enemy attacked during the night?

17.10   It was a custom for the Greeks to honor with gifts the people who won.

18.1   The master's son was so strong and brave that he was never afraid.

18.2   That king became so powerful that everyone in the country was afraid.

18.3   After we put down our tools / weapons beside the river, we made a fire.

18.4   The wretched herald does not want to announce to the crowd that the city was destroyed.

18.5   My friends received me with honor when I reached Athens.

18.6   I perceived that even strong men feared lions.

18.7   The general learned that the Spartans had marched all night.

18.8   Indeed it is pleasant for new friends to discover each other.

18.9   After they were defeated, the Persians fled.

18.10   We all want to live well, but we are not (all) able to.

19.1   The Greeks have a smaller country than the foreigners.

19.2   The Greeks have a smaller country than the foreigners.

19.3   Indeed, we knew that nothing was stronger than reason.

19.4   Who was more clever at speaking than Socrates?

19.5   If the ships of the enemy were swifter than ours, we would not have conquered them.

19.6   Is it necessary to obey the god or the king?

19.7   That herald, because he was very fast, was there on the same day.

19.8   I will stand beside my brother and fight the bravest men of the Persians.

19.9   Next I went into the city looking for the other boy.

19.10   First we will do these things, then those things.

20.1   To what god should we sacrifice since the war was won?

20.2   Don't ever gladly accept money from a rather bad man.

20.3   Should we make peace with Athens now?

20.4   The citizens wanted to help as many children as possible.

20.5   Since the Persians are as strong as possible, let's go away and not fight.

20.6   Some men care about virtue and truth, others do not.

20.7   Since the enemy were near, the general placed more guards throughout the city.

20.8   Is he able to put better tools in the hands of our leaders?

20.9   Let us act more wisely now than before / formerly.

20.10   Don't care about the opinion / judgment of others.

21.1   I hope we meet a friendly guide on the road / way.

21.2   If only the city were safe now.

21.3   Did the Greeks and the foreigners use to have the same opinion about the nature of the soul?

21.4   We might stay in the house all day on account of the sun.

21.5   If only you had listened to your sensible friend instead of (to) the other one.

21.6   There was once a king of the Persians who loved his wife very much.

21.7   It is impossible for those who do not seek to find something.

21.8   May this goddess always guard both you and your children.

21.9   Who thinks that this man is the wisest of all judges?

21.10   I hope you are able to stay in your own house for very many years.

22.1   If you put your feet in the river after a long road (walk), you are always glad / enjoy (it).

22.2   Nobody really knows himself if he isn't wise / unless he is wise.

22.3   I wish each man would treat others better, for the sake of his soul.

22.4   If the soldiers no longer fight well, they will in no way save the city.

22.5   Will you (pl.) go to that country in order to find stronger allies?

22.6   Since the enemy went away, let us honor all the gods who helped us.

22.7   If the goddess gives us strength, we always win and at the same time make many sacrifices.

22.8   The young man enjoyed being able to go very fast on a horse.

22.9   Whoever is prudent gives gifts to the gods often, in order to have good luck.

22.10   We are suffering very great dangers while journeying by sea in order to reach Greece.

23.1   The Athenians sent the women away, in order that they might / would be safe.

23.2   If you are guilty, you will not escape this charge!

23.3   If they held that man in honor, he was always grateful to the citizens.

23.4   If the children asked / should ask about these things, would you answer them?

23.5   I hope you intend to finish this work immediately.

23.6   The terrible man fled away in fear as quickly as possible in order not to be captured by the citizens.

23.7   If this man were / should be useful to the city, would you appoint him judge?

23.8   It was / became immediately clear that those wretched people needed many things.

23.9   If my brother (ever) went to battle, he always seemed to be equal to the best men at fighting.

23.10   Things under the earth become fairly clear / clearer to men, but things in the heavens do not.

24.1   Does someone always act justly if the spirit leads him?

24.2   Since the war ended, the affairs of the city have become a little better.

24.3   Do you know that this woman has given birth to ten children?

24.4   Very beautiful things have been written by the Greeks.

24.5   What sort of person would follow a guide who does not remember the way?

24.6   When the young men were found, they had marched for ten days.

24.7   Many good things have been discovered by each man.

24.8   If you should find another friend like this one, you would know you were very fortunate.

24.9   (On) Some days, I seem to accomplish nothing.

24.10   I have come bringing gifts for everyone.

25.1   I hope he considers everything and does not forget something useful.

25.2   I have come in order to bring the remaining allies to the new place.

25.3   Many in the crowd kept asking for fire during the rather long night.

25.4   After the enemy were defeated, the general sent seven men to ask for earth and water for the king of the Persians.

25.5   The state provided many things to / for the citizens in order that they might need / lack nothing.

25.6   Do you (pl.) know where the rest of the women are?

25.7   In the tenth year the Greeks finally won and began to travel the difficult road to their fatherland.

25.8   While the children were throwing rocks by the sea, their father fell headlong / head first into the water.

25.9   The master is being asked if he has provided everything for his guest-friend.

25.10   It does not make a difference to me whether you use these goods or throw them away.

26.1   I asked if anyone was able to explain the mind of the king.

26.2   Place (pl.) the conquered men wherever seems best to you.

26.3   I will fight until the war ends and we are able to save the fatherland.

26.4   Those who had arrived looked for the rest until night came.

26.5   That mother lets her six children do whatever they want.

26.6   I would not reveal my private affairs to hostile people.

26.7   As long as those men show themselves to be useful, they will be allowed to stay.

26.8   Whenever the ship arrives, we will begin sacrificing.

26.9   Before he could do something bad, that judge was revealed by chance to be very hostile.

26.10   For the rest of his life the city will nourish/feed whoever is deemed worthy of most honor.

List of Greek Sources

Readings

7.1   Apollodorus 1.7.1
9.1   Plato, *Phaedo* 57
10.1   Euripides, *Alcestis* 139–44, 199–201
11.1   Thucydides 1.86.1–3
12.1   Herodotus 1.79, 80.2–5
13.1   Plutarch, *Ad Princ.* 780c, e
13.2   Herodotus 7.4–5.1, 8B.2–C.2
14.1   Herodotus 7.34–36.1
15.1   Xenophon, *Cyropaedia* 1.1
15.2   Xenophon, *Anabasis* 1.4.11, 13
16.1   Herodotus 8.87.2, 4
17.1   Herodotus 8.87.4, 88.2–3
18.1   Herodotus 7.220.3, 223.2–3
19.1   Herodotus 7.224.1, 225.2–226
20.1   Lysias 2.77–80
21.1   Xenophon, *Memorabilia* 4.8.11
21.2   Plato, *Gorgias* 474b
22.1   Xenophon, *Memorabilia* 3.2.3

22.2   Euclid, *Elements: Common Notions* 1–6, 8
23.1   John, Gospel 10:37–38
24.1   Plato, *Apology* 41c–d
24.2   John, Gospel 1:1–4
25.1   Xenophon, *Cyropaedia* 5.5.15–16
25.2   John, Gospel 3:16–18
26.1   Plato, *Phaedo* 58a–c
26.2   Apollodorus 1.3.2
27.1   Xenophon, *Memorabilia* 1.1.1–2
27.2   Euripides, *Helen* 814–15, 817–18
28.1   Lysias 1.1–5
28.2   Plato, *Apology* 24b–d
28.3   Plato, *Apology* 37d–38a
28.4   Euripides, *Alcestis* 136–45
28.5   Matthew, Gospel 8:23–27
28.6   Herodotus 3.39.2–3, 40–41
28.7   Herodotus 3.42–43.1

Practice Sentences *all fragments are cited by their Loeb number

8.1   Plato, *Ion* 533e
8.2   Euripides, *Antiope* fr. 195
8.3   Demosthenes, *Against Timocrates* 204
8.4   Xenophon, *Anabasis* 1.6.4
9.1   Euripides, *Aegeus* fr. 2
9.2   Aristotle, *Nichomachean Ethics* 1166a30
9.3   [Heraclitus] Plato, *Cratylus* 402a
9.4   Apollodorus 1.5.1
10.1   Euripides, fr. 286b
10.2   Herodotus 1.87.4
10.3   Thucydides 1.3.3
10.4   Theognis 113–14
11.1   Euripides, *Medea* 1228
11.2   Euripides, *Alcmene* fr. 97
11.3   Theognis 69
11.4   Herodotus 1.71.2
11.5   Xenophon, *Anabasis* 1.1.2
12.1   Aristotle, *Politics* 5.1303b
12.2   Theognis 435–38
12.3   Plutarch, *Caesar* 50.2
12.4   Plato, *Protagoras* 358c
13.1   Menander, *Monostichoi* 126
13.2   [Simonides] Plato, *Protagoras* 345d

13.3   Euripides, *Heracles* 297
13.4   Menander, *Monostichoi* 45
13.5   Xenophon, *Anabasis* 2.5.16
13.6   Euripides, *Aeolus* fr. 32
14.1.   Thucydides 2.12.3
14.2.   Euripides, *Alcestis* 339
14.3.   Hippocrates, *Aphorisms* 1
14.4.   Plato, *Euthyphro* 6b
14.5.   Plato, *Laws* 5.730c
15.1   Menander, *Monostichoi* 643
15.2   Menander, *Monostichoi* 150
15.3   Theognis 902
15.4   Plato, *Republic* 5.453b
15.5   Xenophon, *Anabasis* 2.1.23
15.6   Plato, *Euthyphro* 8a
16.1   Aristotle, *Physics* 194a
16.2   Plato, *Ion* 532d
16.3   Xenophon, *Anabasis* 4.4.19
16.4   Xenophon, *Anabasis* 2.3.19
16.5   Euripides, fr. 1082
17.1   Archilochus, fr. 16
17.2   Menander, *Monostichoi* 247
17.3   Marcus Aurelius, *Meditations* 9.5.1

17.4   Demosthenes, *Philippic* 1.38
17.5   Aeschylus, *Persians* 293–94
17.6   Plato, *Apology* 29e
18.1   Menander, *Monostichoi* 425
18.2   Menander, *Monostichoi* 638–39
18.3   Aeschines, *Against Timarchus* 84
18.4   Solon, fr. 18
18.5   [Simonides] Herodotus 7.228.2
18.6   Plato, *Gorgias* 516e
18.7   Xenophon, *Anabasis* 6.1.26
19.1   Menander, *Monostichoi* 75
19.2   Aeschylus, *Seven against Thebes* 592
19.3   Demosthenes, *On the Chersonese* 72
19.4   Euripides, *Hecuba* 1226–27
19.5   Diogenes Laertius 8.1.23 (*Pythagoras*)
19.6   Euripides, *Hippolytus* 297
19.7   Sophocles, *Antigone* 334
20.1   Plato, *Phaedo* 116d
20.2   Euripides, *Medea* 1271
20.3   Plato, *Gorgias* 479c
20.4   Euripides, *Medea* 451–52
20.5   Euripides, fr. 1065
20.6   Democritus, fr. D323
21.1   Menander, *Monostichoi* 366
21.2   Menander, *Monostichoi* 407
21.3   Euripides, *Alcestis* 536
21.4   Euripides, *Medea* 464
21.5   Xenophon, *Memorabilia* 4.4.19
21.6   Plato, *Apology* 17c–d
22.1   Democritus, fr. D259
22.2   Euripides, *Alcestis* 671–72
22.3   Diogenes Laertius 7.1.23 (*Zeno*)
22.4   Matthew, Gospel 7:1

22.5   Aristophanes, *Lysistrata* 123
22.6   Plato, *Crito* 52d
23.1   Aristotle, *Rhetoric* 2.23.15
23.2   Democritus, fr. D412
23.3   Plato, *Gorgias* 466c
23.4   Euripides, *Alcestis* 713, 715
23.5   Euripides, *Ion* 758
23.6   Aristophanes, *Clouds* 520
24.1   Euripides, *Iphigenia in Tauris* 1295
24.2   Menander, *Monostichoi* 234
24.3   Euripides, *Alcestis* 541
24.4   Xenophon, *Memorabilia* 4.8.10
24.5   Plato, *Euthyphro* 2b
24.6   Lysias 12.100
25.1   Aristophanes, *Wealth* 932
25.2   Theognis 101
25.3   Xenophon, *Anabasis* 1.3.5
25.4   Plato, *Protagoras* 314b
25.5   Thucydides 5.54.1
25.6   Xenophon, *Anabasis* 5.7.23
26.1   Euripides, fr. 1018
26.2   Thucydides 7.21.2
26.3   Euripides, fr. 1089
26.4   Xenophon, *Anabasis* 4.2.4
26.5   Xenophon, *Anabasis* 3.1.7
26.6   Xenophon, *Anabasis* 4.1.7
27.1   Sophocles, *Oedipus Tyrannos* 614–15
27.2   Xenophon, *Anabasis* 1.3.1
27.3   Diogenes Laertius 1.5.88 (*Bias*)
27.4   Xenophon, *Anabasis* 1.2.26
27.5   Plato, *Apology* 21c–d
27.6   Euripides, *Alcestis* 281
27.7   Menander, *Monostichoi* 547

Reference Morphology

NOUNS

1st DECLENSION FEMININE

		honor	**village**	**marketplace**	**house**	**sea**
sing.	Nom./Voc.	τιμή	κώμη	ἀγορά	οἰκία	θάλαττα
	Gen.	τιμῆς	κώμης	ἀγορᾶς	οἰκίας	θαλάττης
	Dat.	τιμῇ	κώμη	ἀγορᾷ	οἰκίᾳ	θαλάττη
	Acc.	τιμήν	κώμην	ἀγοράν	οἰκίαν	θάλατταν
plur.	Nom./Voc.	τιμαί	κῶμαι	ἀγοραί	οἰκίαι	θάλατται
	Gen.	τιμῶν	κωμῶν	ἀγορῶν	οἰκιῶν	θαλαττῶν
	Dat.	τιμαῖς	κώμαις	ἀγοραῖς	οἰκίαις	θαλάτταις
	Acc.	τιμάς	κώμας	ἀγοράς	οἰκίας	θαλάττας

1st DECLENSION MASCULINE ⁄ 2nd DECLENSION

		citizen	**young man**	**god** (m.)	**island** (f.)	**gift** (n.)
sing.	Nom.	πολίτης	νεανίας	θεός	νῆσος	δῶρον
	Gen.	πολίτου	νεανίου	θεοῦ	νήσου	δώρου
	Dat.	πολίτη	νεανίᾳ	θεῷ	νήσῳ	δώρῳ
	Acc.	πολίτην	νεανίαν	θεόν	νῆσον	δῶρον
	Voc.	πολῖτα	νεανία	θεέ	νῆσε	δῶρον
plur.	Nom./Voc.	πολῖται	νεανίαι	θεοί	νῆσοι	δῶρα
	Gen.	πολιτῶν	νεανιῶν	θεῶν	νήσων	δώρων
	Dat.	πολίταις	νεανίαις	θεοῖς	νήσοις	δώροις
	Acc.	πολίτας	νεανίας	θεούς	νήσους	δῶρα

1st AND 2nd DECLENSION CONTRACT

		earth (f.)		**mind** (m.)	
sing.	Nom.	γῆ	(γέ-α)	νοῦς	(νό-ος)
	Gen.	γῆς	(γέ-ας)	νοῦ	(νό-ου)
	Dat.	γῇ	(γέ-ᾳ)	νῷ	(νό-ῳ)
	Acc.	γῆν	(γέ-αν)	νοῦν	(νό-ον)
	Voc.	γῆ	(γέ-α)	νοῦ	(νό-ε)
plur.	Nom./Voc.			νοῖ	(νό-οι)
	Gen.			νῶν	(νό-ων)
	Dat.			νοῖς	(νό-οις)
	Acc.			νοῦς	(νό-ους)

3rd DECLENSION

		herald (m.)	**leader** (m.)	**archon** (m.)	**water** (n.)
sing.	Nom.	κῆρυξ	ἡγεμών	ἄρχων	ὕδωρ
	Gen.	κήρυκος	ἡγεμόνος	ἄρχοντος	ὕδατος
	Dat.	κήρυκι	ἡγεμόνι	ἄρχοντι	ὕδατι
	Acc.	κήρυκα	ἡγεμόνα	ἄρχοντα	ὕδωρ
	Voc.	κῆρυξ	ἡγεμών	ἄρχον	ὕδωρ
plur.	Nom./Voc.	κήρυκες	ἡγεμόνες	ἄρχοντες	ὕδατα
	Gen.	κηρύκων	ἡγεμόνων	ἀρχόντων	ὑδάτων
	Dat.	κήρυξι(ν)	ἡγεμόσι(ν)	ἄρχουσι(ν)	ὕδασι(ν)
	Acc.	κήρυκας	ἡγεμόνας	ἄρχοντας	ὕδατα

		mother (f.)	**man** (m.)	**woman** (f.)	**child** (m./f.)
sing.	Nom.	μήτηρ	ἀνήρ	γυνή	παῖς
	Gen.	μητρός	ἀνδρός	γυναικός	παιδός
	Dat.	μητρί	ἀνδρί	γυναικί	παιδί
	Acc.	μητέρα	ἄνδρα	γυναῖκα	παῖδα
	Voc.	μῆτερ	ἄνερ	γύναι	παῖ
plur.	Nom./Voc.	μητέρες	ἄνδρες	γυναῖκες	παῖδες
	Gen.	μητέρων	ἀνδρῶν	γυναικῶν	παίδων
	Dat.	μητράσι(ν)	ἀνδράσι(ν)	γυναιξί(ν)	παισί(ν)
	Acc.	μητέρας	ἄνδρας	γυναῖκας	παῖδας

		wall (n.)	**Socrates** (m.)	**city** (f.)	**town** (n.)
sing.	Nom.	τεῖχος	Σωκράτης	πόλις	ἄστυ
	Gen.	τείχους	Σωκράτους	πόλεως	ἄστεως
	Dat.	τείχει	Σωκράτει	πόλει	ἄστει
	Acc.	τεῖχος	Σωκράτη	πόλιν	ἄστυ
	Voc.	τεῖχος	Σώκρατες	πόλι	ἄστυ
plur.	Nom./Voc.	τείχη		πόλεις	ἄστη
	Gen.	τειχῶν		πόλεων	ἄστεων
	Dat.	τείχεσι(ν)		πόλεσι(ν)	ἄστεσι(ν)
	Acc.	τείχη		πόλεις	ἄστη

		king (m.)	**ship** (f.)	**Zeus** (m.)
sing.	Nom.	βασιλεύς	ναῦς	Ζεύς
	Gen.	βασιλέως	νεός	Διός
	Dat.	βασιλεῖ	νηί	Διί
	Acc.	βασιλέα	ναῦν	Δία
	Voc.	βασιλεῦ	ναῦ	Ζεῦ
plur.	Nom./Voc.	βασιλεῖς / -ῆς	νῆες	
	Gen.	βασιλέων	νεῶν	
	Dat.	βασιλεῦσι(ν)	ναυσί(ν)	
	Acc.	βασιλέας	ναῦς	

DEFINITE ARTICLE

		m.	f.	n.
sing.	Nom.	ὁ	ἡ	τό
	Gen.	τοῦ	τῆς	τοῦ
	Dat.	τῷ	τῇ	τῷ
	Acc.	τόν	τήν	τό
plur.	Nom.	οἱ	αἱ	τά
	Gen.	τῶν	τῶν	τῶν
	Dat.	τοῖς	ταῖς	τοῖς
	Acc.	τούς	τάς	τά

ADJECTIVES

1st AND 2nd DECLENSION

		wise			**just**		
		m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
sing.	Nom.	σοφός	σοφή	σοφόν	δίκαιος	δικαία	δίκαιον
	Gen.	σοφοῦ	σοφῆς	σοφοῦ	δικαίου	δικαίας	δικαίου
	Dat.	σοφῷ	σοφῇ	σοφῷ	δικαίῳ	δικαίᾳ	δικαίῳ
	Acc.	σοφόν	σοφήν	σοφόν	δίκαιον	δικαίαν	δίκαιον
	Voc.	σοφέ	σοφή	σοφόν	δίκαιε	δικαία	δίκαιον
plur.	Nom./Voc.	σοφοί	σοφαί	σοφά	δίκαιοι	δίκαιαι	δίκαια
	Gen.	σοφῶν	σοφῶν	σοφῶν	δικαίων	δικαίων	δικαίων
	Dat.	σοφοῖς	σοφαῖς	σοφοῖς	δικαίοις	δικαίαις	δικαίοις
	Acc.	σοφούς	σοφάς	σοφά	δικαίους	δικαίας	δίκαια

3rd DECLENSION

		happy		**true**		**sweeter**	
		m./f.	n.	m./f.	n.	m./f.	n.
sing.	Nom.	εὐδαίμων	εὔδαιμον	ἀληθής	ἀληθές	ἡδίων	ἥδιον
	Gen.	εὐδαίμονος	εὐδαίμονος	ἀληθοῦς	ἀληθοῦς	ἡδίονος	ἡδίονος
	Dat.	εὐδαίμονι	εὐδαίμονι	ἀληθεῖ	ἀληθεῖ	ἡδίονι	ἡδίονι
	Acc.	εὐδαίμονα	εὔδαιμον	ἀληθῆ	ἀληθές	ἡδίονα / -ίω	ἥδιον
	Voc.	εὔδαιμον	εὔδαιμον	ἀληθές	ἀληθές	ἥδιον	ἥδιον
plur.	N./V.	εὐδαίμονες	εὐδαίμονα	ἀληθεῖς	ἀληθῆ	ἡδίονες / -ίους	ἡδίονα / -ίω
	Gen.	εὐδαιμόνων	εὐδαιμόνων	ἀληθῶν	ἀληθῶν	ἡδιόνων	ἡδιόνων
	Dat.	εὐδαίμοσι(ν)	εὐδαίμοσι(ν)	ἀληθέσι(ν)	ἀληθέσι(ν)	ἡδίοσι(ν)	ἡδίοσι(ν)
	Acc.	εὐδαίμονας	εὐδαίμονα	ἀληθεῖς	ἀληθῆ	ἡδίονας / -ίους	ἡδίονα / -ίω

MIXED DECLENSION

		wretched			**all, every**		
		m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
sing.	Nom.	τάλας	τάλαινα	τάλαν	πᾶς	πᾶσα	πᾶν
	Gen.	τάλανος	ταλαίνης	τάλανος	παντός	πάσης	παντός
	Dat.	τάλανι	ταλαίνῃ	τάλανι	παντί	πάσῃ	παντί
	Acc.	τάλανα	τάλαιναν	τάλαν	πάντα	πᾶσαν	πᾶν
	Voc.	τάλαν	τάλαινα	τάλαν	πᾶς	πᾶσα	πᾶν
plur.	Nom./Voc.	τάλανες	τάλαιναι	τάλανα	πάντες	πᾶσαι	πάντα
	Gen.	ταλάνων	ταλαινῶν	ταλάνων	πάντων	πασῶν	πάντων
	Dat.	τάλασι(ν)	ταλαίναις	τάλασι(ν)	πᾶσι(ν)	πάσαις	πᾶσι(ν)
	Acc.	τάλανας	ταλαίνας	τάλανα	πάντας	πάσας	πάντα

		sweet		
		m.	f.	n.
sing.	Nom.	ἡδύς	ἡδεῖα	ἡδύ
	Gen.	ἡδέος	ἡδείας	ἡδέος
	Dat.	ἡδεῖ	ἡδείᾳ	ἡδεῖ
	Acc.	ἡδύν	ἡδεῖαν	ἡδύ
	Voc.	ἡδύ	ἡδεῖα	ἡδύ
plur.	Nom./Voc.	ἡδεῖς	ἡδεῖαι	ἡδέα
	Gen.	ἡδέων	ἡδειῶν	ἡδέων
	Dat.	ἡδέσι(ν)	ἡδείαις	ἡδέσι(ν)
	Acc.	ἡδεῖς	ἡδείας	ἡδέα

IRREGULAR

			big			**much, many**	
		m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
sing.	Nom.	μέγας	μεγάλη	μέγα	πολύς	πολλή	πολύ
	Gen.	μεγάλου	μεγάλης	μεγάλου	πολλοῦ	πολλῆς	πολλοῦ
	Dat.	μεγάλῳ	μεγάλη	μεγάλῳ	πολλῷ	πολλῇ	πολλῷ
	Acc.	μέγαν	μεγάλην	μέγα	πολύν	πολλήν	πολύ
	Voc.	μεγάλε	μεγάλη	μέγα			
plur.	Nom./Voc.	μεγάλοι	μεγάλαι	μεγάλα	πολλοί	πολλαί	πολλά
	Gen.	μεγάλων	μεγάλων	μεγάλων	πολλῶν	πολλῶν	πολλῶν
	Dat.	μεγάλοις	μεγάλαις	μεγάλοις	πολλοῖς	πολλαῖς	πολλοῖς
	Acc.	μεγάλους	μεγάλας	μεγάλα	πολλούς	πολλάς	πολλά

PARTICIPLES

REGULAR THEMATIC VERBS

		PRESENT ACTIVE			PRESENT MIDDLE-PASSIVE		
		m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
sing.	N./V.	παύων	παύουσα	παῦον	παυόμενος	παυομένη	παυόμενον
	Gen.	παύοντος	παυούσης	παύοντος	παυομένου	παυομένης	παυομένου
	Dat.	παύοντι	παυούσῃ	παύοντι	παυομένῳ	παυομένη	παυομένῳ
	Acc.	παύοντα	παύουσαν	παῦον	παυόμενον	παυομένην	παυόμενον
plur.	N./V.	παύοντες	παύουσαι	παύοντα	παυόμενοι	παυόμεναι	παυόμενα
	Gen.	παυόντων	παυουσῶν	παυόντων	παυομένων	παυομένων	παυομένων
	Dat.	παύουσι(ν)	παυούσαις	παύουσι(ν)	παυομένοις	παυομέναις	παυομένοις
	Acc.	παύοντας	παυούσας	παύοντα	παυομένους	παυομένας	παυόμενα

		1ST AORIST ACTIVE			2ND AORIST ACTIVE		
		m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
sing.	N./V.	παύσας	παύσασα	παῦσαν	λιπών	λιποῦσα	λιπόν
	Gen.	παύσαντος	παυσάσης	παύσαντος	λιπόντος	λιπούσης	λιπόντος
	Dat.	παύσαντι	παυσάσῃ	παύσαντι	λιπόντι	λιπούσῃ	λιπόντι
	Acc.	παύσαντα	παύσασαν	παῦσαν	λιπόντα	λιποῦσαν	λιπόν
plur.	N./V.	παύσαντες	παύσασαι	παύσαντα	λιπόντες	λιποῦσαι	λιπόντα
	Gen.	παυσάντων	παυσασῶν	παυσάντων	λιπόντων	λιπουσῶν	λιπόντων
	Dat.	παύσασι(ν)	παυσάσαις	παύσασι(ν)	λιποῦσι(ν)	λιπούσαις	λιποῦσι(ν)
	Acc.	παύσαντας	παυσάσας	παύσαντα	λιπόντας	λιπούσας	λιπόντα

			PERFECT ACTIVE			AORIST PASSIVE	
		m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
sing.	N./V.	πεπαυκώς	πεπαυκυῖα	πεπαυκός	παυθείς	παυθεῖσα	παυθέν
	Gen.	πεπαυκότος	πεπαυκυίας	πεπαυκότος	παυθέντος	παυθείσης	παυθέντος
	Dat.	πεπαυκότι	πεπαυκυίᾳ	πεπαυκότι	παυθέντι	παυθείσῃ	παυθέντι
	Acc.	πεπαυκότα	πεπαυκυῖαν	πεπαυκός	παυθέντα	παυθεῖσαν	παυθέν
plur.	N./V.	πεπαυκότες	πεπαυκυῖαι	πεπαυκότα	παυθέντες	παυθεῖσαι	παυθέντα
	Gen.	πεπαυκότων	πεπαυκυιῶν	πεπαυκότων	παυθέντων	παυθεισῶν	παυθέντων
	Dat.	πεπαυκόσι(ν)	πεπαυκυίαις	πεπαυκόσι(ν)	παυθεῖσι(ν)	παυθείσαις	παυθεῖσι(ν)
	Acc.	πεπαυκότας	πεπαυκυίας	πεπαυκότα	παυθέντας	παυθείσας	παυθέντα

CONTRACT THEMATIC VERBS

PRESENT ACTIVE   PRESENT MIDDLE-PASSIVE

VERBS IN -εω

		m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
sing.	Nom.	φιλῶν	φιλοῦσα	φιλοῦν	φιλούμενος	φιλουμένη	φιλούμενον
	Gen.	φιλοῦντος	φιλούσης	φιλοῦντος	φιλουμένου	φιλουμένης	φιλουμένου
	Dat.	φιλοῦντι	φιλούσῃ	φιλοῦντι	φιλουμένῳ	φιλουμένῃ	φιλουμένῳ
	Acc.	φιλοῦντα	φιλοῦσαν	φιλοῦν	φιλούμενον	φιλουμένην	φιλούμενον
	Voc.	φιλῶν	φιλοῦσα	φιλοῦν	φιλούμενε	φιλουμένη	φιλούμενον
plur.	N./V.	φιλοῦντες	φιλοῦσαι	φιλοῦντα	φιλούμενοι	φιλούμεναι	φιλούμενα
	Gen.	φιλούντων	φιλουσῶν	φιλούντων	φιλουμένων	φιλουμένων	φιλουμένων
	Dat.	φιλοῦσι(ν)	φιλούσαις	φιλοῦσι(ν)	φιλουμένοις	φιλουμέναις	φιλουμένοις
	Acc.	φιλοῦντας	φιλούσας	φιλοῦντα	φιλουμένους	φιλουμένας	φιλούμενα

VERBS IN -αω

		m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
sing.	Nom.	τιμῶν	τιμῶσα	τιμῶν	τιμώμενος	τιμωμένη	τιμώμενον
	Gen.	τιμῶντος	τιμώσης	τιμῶντος	τιμωμένου	τιμωμένης	τιμωμένου
	Dat.	τιμῶντι	τιμώσῃ	τιμῶντι	τιμωμένῳ	τιμωμένῃ	τιμωμένῳ
	Acc.	τιμῶντα	τιμῶσαν	τιμῶν	τιμώμενον	τιμωμένην	τιμώμενον
	Voc.	τιμῶν	τιμῶσα	τιμῶν	τιμώμενε	τιμωμένη	τιμώμενον
plur.	N./V.	τιμῶντες	τιμῶσαι	τιμῶντα	τιμώμενοι	τιμώμεναι	τιμώμενα
	Gen.	τιμώντων	τιμωσῶν	τιμώντων	τιμωμένων	τιμωμένων	τιμωμένων
	Dat.	τιμῶσι(ν)	τιμώσαις	τιμῶσι(ν)	τιμωμένοις	τιμωμέναις	τιμωμένοις
	Acc.	τιμῶντας	τιμώσας	τιμῶντα	τιμωμένους	τιμωμένας	τιμώμενα

VERBS IN -οω

		m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
sing.	Nom.	δηλῶν	δηλοῦσα	δηλοῦν	δηλούμενος	δηλουμένη	δηλούμενον
	Gen.	δηλοῦντος	δηλούσης	δηλοῦντος	δηλουμένου	δηλουμένης	δηλουμένου
	Dat.	δηλοῦντι	δηλούσῃ	δηλοῦντι	δηλουμένῳ	δηλουμένη	δηλουμένῳ
	Acc.	δηλοῦντα	δηλοῦσαν	δηλοῦν	δηλούμενον	δηλουμένην	δηλούμενον
	Voc.	δηλῶν	δηλοῦσα	δηλοῦν	δηλούμενε	δηλουμένη	δηλούμενον
plur.	N./V.	δηλοῦντες	δηλοῦσαι	δηλοῦντα	δηλούμενοι	δηλούμεναι	δηλούμενα
	Gen.	δηλούντων	δηλουσῶν	δηλούντων	δηλουμένων	δηλουμένων	δηλουμένων
	Dat.	δηλοῦσι(ν)	δηλούσαις	δηλοῦσι(ν)	δηλουμένοις	δηλουμέναις	δηλουμένοις
	Acc.	δηλοῦντας	δηλούσας	δηλοῦντα	δηλουμένους	δηλουμένας	δηλούμενα

ATHEMATIC VERBS

Present Active

		ἵστημι			**δίδωμι**		
		m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
sing.	N./V.	ἱστάς	ἱστᾶσα	ἱστάν	διδούς	διδοῦσα	διδόν
	Gen.	ἱστάντος	ἱστάσης	ἱστάντος	διδόντος	διδούσης	διδόντος
	Dat.	ἱστάντι	ἱστάσῃ	ἱστάντι	διδόντι	διδούσῃ	διδόντι
	Acc.	ἱστάντα	ἱστᾶσαν	ἱστάν	διδόντα	διδοῦσαν	διδόν
plur.	N./V.	ἱστάντες	ἱστᾶσαι	ἱστάντα	διδόντες	διδοῦσαι	διδόντα
	Gen.	ἱστάντων	ἱστασῶν	ἱστάντων	διδόντων	διδουσῶν	διδόντων
	Dat.	ἱστᾶσι(ν)	ἱστάσαις	ἱστᾶσι(ν)	διδοῦσι(ν)	διδούσαις	διδοῦσι(ν)
	Acc.	ἱστάντας	ἱστάσας	ἱστάντα	διδόντας	διδούσας	διδόντα

		τίθημι			**ἵημι**		
		m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
sing.	N./V.	τιθείς	τιθεῖσα	τιθέν	ἱείς	ἱεῖσα	ἱέν
	Gen.	τιθέντος	τιθείσης	τιθέντος	ἱέντος	ἱείσης	ἱέντος
	Dat.	τιθέντι	τιθείσῃ	τιθέντι	ἱέντι	ἱείσῃ	ἱέντι
	Acc.	τιθέντα	τιθεῖσαν	τιθέν	ἱέντα	ἱεῖσαν	ἱέν
plur.	N./V.	τιθέντες	τιθεῖσαι	τιθέντα	ἱέντες	ἱεῖσαι	ἱέντα
	Gen.	τιθέντων	τιθεισῶν	τιθέντων	ἱέντων	ἱεισῶν	ἱέντων
	Dat.	τιθεῖσι(ν)	τιθείσαις	τιθεῖσι(ν)	ἱεῖσι(ν)	ἱείσαις	ἱεῖσι(ν)
	Acc.	τιθέντας	τιθείσας	τιθέντα	ἱέντας	ἱείσας	ἱέντα

PRONOUNS

PERSONAL

		1st (I)	2nd (you)	3rd (he/she/it)		
				m.	f.	n.
sing.	Nom.	ἐγώ	σύ	αὐτός	αὐτή	αὐτό
	Gen.	ἐμοῦ / μου	σοῦ / σου	αὐτοῦ	αὐτῆς	αὐτοῦ
	Dat.	ἐμοί / μοι	σοί / σοι	αὐτῷ	αὐτῇ	αὐτῷ
	Acc.	ἐμέ / με	σέ / σε	αὐτόν	αὐτὴν	αὐτό
plur.	Nom.	ἡμεῖς	ὑμεῖς	αὐτοί	αὐταί	αὐτά
	Gen.	ἡμῶν	ὑμῶν	αὐτῶν	αὐτῶν	αὐτῶν
	Dat.	ἡμῖν	ὑμῖν	αὐτοῖς	αὐταῖς	αὐτοῖς
	Acc.	ἡμᾶς	ὑμᾶς	αὐτούς	αὐτάς	αὐτά

DEMONSTRATIVE

		this			that		
		m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
sing.	Nom.	οὗτος	αὕτη	τοῦτο	ἐκεῖνος	ἐκείνη	ἐκεῖνο
	Gen.	τούτου	ταύτης	τούτου	ἐκείνου	ἐκείνης	ἐκείνου
	Dat.	τούτῳ	ταύτῃ	τούτῳ	ἐκείνῳ	ἐκείνῃ	ἐκείνῳ
	Acc.	τοῦτον	ταύτην	τοῦτο	ἐκεῖνον	ἐκείνην	ἐκεῖνο
plur.	Nom.	οὗτοι	αὗται	ταῦτα	ἐκεῖνοι	ἐκεῖναι	ἐκεῖνα
	Gen.	τούτων	τούτων	τούτων	ἐκείνων	ἐκείνων	ἐκείνων
	Dat.	τούτοις	ταύταις	τούτοις	ἐκείνοις	ἐκείναις	ἐκείνοις
	Acc.	τούτους	ταύτας	ταῦτα	ἐκείνους	ἐκείνας	ἐκεῖνα

		this		
		m.	f.	n.
sing.	Nom.	ὅδε	ἥδε	τόδε
	Gen.	τοῦδε	τῆσδε	τοῦδε
	Dat.	τῷδε	τῇδε	τῷδε
	Acc.	τόνδε	τήνδε	τόδε
plur.	Nom.	οἵδε	αἵδε	τάδε
	Gen.	τῶνδε	τῶνδε	τῶνδε
	Dat.	τοῖσδε	ταῖσδε	τοῖσδε
	Acc.	τούσδε	τάσδε	τάδε

RECIPROCAL

		m.	f.	n.
plur.	Gen.	ἀλλήλων	ἀλλήλων	ἀλλήλων
	Dat.	ἀλλήλοις	ἀλλήλαις	ἀλλήλοις
	Acc.	ἀλλήλους	ἀλλήλας	ἄλληλα

REFLEXIVE

		1st (myself)		2nd (yourself)		3rd (himself/herself/itself)		
		m.	f.	m.	f.	m.	f.	n.
sing.	Gen.	ἐμαυτοῦ	ἐμαυτῆς	σεαυτοῦ	σεαυτῆς	ἑαυτοῦ	ἑαυτῆς	ἑαυτοῦ
	Dat.	ἐμαυτῷ	ἐμαυτῇ	σεαυτῷ	σεαυτῇ	ἑαυτῷ	ἑαυτῇ	ἑαυτῷ
	Acc.	ἐμαυτόν	ἐμαυτήν	σεαυτόν	σεαυτήν	ἑαυτόν	ἑαυτήν	ἑαυτό
plur.	Gen.	ἡμῶν αὐτῶν	ἡμῶν αὐτῶν	ὑμῶν αὐτῶν	ὑμῶν αὐτῶν	ἑαυτῶν	ἑαυτῶν	ἑαυτῶν
	Dat.	ἡμῖν αὐτοῖς	ἡμῖν αὐταῖς	ὑμῖν αὐτοῖς	ὑμῖν αὐταῖς	ἑαυτοῖς	ἑαυταῖς	ἑαυτοῖς
	Acc.	ἡμᾶς αὐτούς	ἡμᾶς αὐτάς	ὑμᾶς αὐτούς	ὑμᾶς αὐτάς	ἑαυτούς	ἑαυτάς	ἑαυτά

INTERROGATIVE | INDEFINITE

		m./f.	n.	m./f.	n.
sing.	Nom.	τίς	τί	τις	τι
	Gen.	τίνος / τοῦ	τίνος / τοῦ	τινός / του	τινός / του
	Dat.	τίνι / τῷ	τίνι / τῷ	τινί / τῳ	τινί / τῳ
	Acc.	τίνα	τί	τινά	τι
plur.	Nom.	τίνες	τίνα / ἄττα	τινές	τινά
	Gen.	τίνων	τίνων	τινῶν	τινῶν
	Dat.	τίσι(ν)	τίσι(ν)	τισί(ν)	τισί(ν)
	Acc.	τίνας	τίνα / ἄττα	τινάς	τινά / ἄττα

RELATIVE | INDEFINITE RELATIVE

		m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
sing.	Nom.	ὅς	ἥ	ὅ	ὅστις	ἥτις	ὅ τι
	Gen.	οὗ	ἧς	οὗ	οὗτινος / ὅτου	ἧστινος	οὗτινος / ὅτου
	Dat.	ᾧ	ᾗ	ᾧ	ᾧτινι / ὅτῳ	ᾗτινι	ᾧτινι / ὅτῳ
	Acc.	ὅν	ἥν	ὅ	ὅντινα	ἥντινα	ὅ τι
plur.	Nom.	οἵ	αἵ	ἅ	οἵτινες	αἵτινες	ἅτινα / ἅττα
	Gen.	ὧν	ὧν	ὧν	ὧντινων / ὅτων	ὧντινων	ὧντινων / ὅτων
	Dat.	οἷς	αἷς	οἷς	οἷστισι(ν) / ὅτοις	αἷστισι(ν)	οἷστισι(ν) / ὅτοις
	Acc.	οὕς	ἅς	ἅ	οὕστινας	ἅστινας	ἅτινα / ἅττα

NUMERALS

	cardinal	ordinal
1	εἷς, μία, ἕν	πρῶτος, -η, -ον
2	δύο	δεύτερος, -α, -ον
3	τρεῖς, τρία	τρίτος, -η, -ον
4	τέτταρες, τέτταρα	τέταρτος, -η, -ον
5	πέντε	πέμπτος, -η, -ον
6	ἕξ	ἕκτος, -η, -ον
7	ἑπτά	ἕβδομος, -η, -ον
8	ὀκτώ	ὄγδοος, -η, -ον
9	ἐννέα	ἔνατος, -η, -ον
10	δέκα	δέκατος, -η, -ον
11	ἕνδεκα	ἑνδέκατος, -η, -ον
12	δώδεκα	δωδέκατος, -η, -ον
13	τρεῖς καὶ δέκα	τρίτος καὶ δέκατος
14	τέτταρες καὶ δέκα	τέταρτος καὶ δέκατος
15	πεντεκαίδεκα	πέμπτος καὶ δέκατος
16	ἑκκαίδεκα	ἕκτος καὶ δέκατος
17	ἑπτακαίδεκα	ἕβδομος καὶ δέκατος
18	ὀκτωκαίδεκα	ὄγδοος καὶ δέκατος
19	ἐννεακαίδεκα	ἔνατος καὶ δέκατος
20	εἴκοσιν	εἰκοστός, -ή, -όν
21	εἷς καὶ εἴκοσι	πρῶτος καὶ εἰκοστός
30	τριάκοντα	τριακοστός, -ή, -όν
40	τετταράκοντα	τετταρακοστός, -ή, -όν
50	πεντήκοντα	πεντηκοστός, -ή, -όν
60	ἑξήκοντα	ἑξηκοστός, -ή, -όν
70	ἑβδομήκοντα	ἑβδομηκοστός, -ή, -όν
80	ὀγδοήκοντα	ὀγδοηκοστός, -ή, -όν
90	ἐνενήκοντα	ἐνενηκοστός, -ή, -όν
100	ἑκατόν	ἑκατοστός, -ή, -όν
200	διακόσιοι, -αι, -α	διακοσιοστός, -ή, -όν
300	τριακόσιοι, -αι, -α	τριακοσιοστός, -ή, -όν
400	τετρακόσιοι, -αι, -α	τετρακοσιοστός, -ή, -όν
500	πεντακόσιοι, -αι, -α	πεντακοσιοστός, -ή, -όν
600	ἑξακόσιοι, -αι, -α	ἑξακοσιοστός, -ή, -όν
700	ἑπτακόσιοι, -αι, -α	ἑπτακοσιοστός, -ή, -όν
800	ὀκτακόσιοι, -αι, -α	ὀκτακοσιοστός, -ή, -όν
900	ἐνακόσιοι, -αι, -α	ἐνακοσιοστός, -ή, -όν
1000	χίλιοι, -αι, -α	χιλιοστός, -ή, -όν

DECLENSION OF NUMERALS 1 through 4

	one			two	three		four	
	m.	f.	n.	m./f./n.	m./f.	n.	m./f.	n.
Nom.	εἷς	μία	ἕν	δύο	τρεῖς	τρία	τέτταρες	τέτταρα
Gen.	ἑνός	μιᾶς	ἑνός	δυοῖν	τριῶν	τριῶν	τεττάρων	τεττάρων
Dat.	ἑνί	μιᾷ	ἑνί	δυοῖν	τρισί(ν)	τρισί(ν)	τέτταρσι(ν)	τέτταρσι(ν)
Acc.	ἕνα	μίαν	ἕν	δύο	τρεῖς	τρία	τέτταρας	τέτταρα

THEMATIC VERBS

PRESENT (παύω)

			ACTIVE		MIDDLE-PASSIVE	
			present	**imperfect**	**present**	**imperfect**
INDICATIVE						
sing.	1st		παύω	ἔπαυον	παύομαι	ἐπαυόμην
	2nd		παύεις	ἔπαυες	παύῃ / -ει	ἐπαύου
	3rd		παύει	ἔπαυε(ν)	παύεται	ἐπαύετο
plur.	1st		παύομεν	ἐπαύομεν	παυόμεθα	ἐπαυόμεθα
	2nd		παύετε	ἐπαύετε	παύεσθε	ἐπαύεσθε
	3rd		παύουσι(ν)	ἔπαυον	παύονται	ἐπαύοντο
SUBJUNCTIVE						
sing.	1st		παύω		παύωμαι	
	2nd		παύῃς		παύῃ	
	3rd		παύῃ		παύηται	
plur.	1st		παύωμεν		παυώμεθα	
	2nd		παύητε		παύησθε	
	3rd		παύωσι(ν)		παύωνται	
OPTATIVE						
sing.	1st		παύοιμι		παυοίμην	
	2nd		παύοις		παύοιο	
	3rd		παύοι		παύοιτο	
plur.	1st		παύοιμεν		παυοίμεθα	
	2nd		παύοιτε		παύοισθε	
	3rd		παύοιεν		παύοιντο	
IMPERATIVE						
sing.	2nd		παῦε		παύου	
	3rd		παυέτω		παυέσθω	
plur.	2nd		παύετε		παύεσθε	
	3rd		παυόντων		παυέσθων	
INFINITIVE			παύειν		παύεσθαι	
PARTICIPLE			παύων, παύουσα, παῦον		παυόμενος, παυομένη, παυόμενον	

FUTURE (παύω)

		Active	Middle	Passive
INDICATIVE				
sing.	1st	παύσω	παύσομαι	παυθήσομαι
	2nd	παύσεις	παύσῃ / -ει	παυθήσῃ /-ει
	3rd	παύσει	παύσεται	παυθήσεται
plur.	1st	παύσομεν	παυσόμεθα	παυθησόμεθα
	2nd	παύσετε	παύσεσθε	παυθήσεσθε
	3rd	παύσουσι(ν)	παύσονται	παυθήσονται
OPTATIVE				
sing.	1st	παύσοιμι	παυσοίμην	παυθησοίμην
	2nd	παύσοις	παύσοιο	παυθήσοιο
	3rd	παύσοι	παύσοιτο	παυθήσοιτο
plur.	1st	παύσοιμεν	παυσοίμεθα	παυθησοίμεθα
	2nd	παύσοιτε	παύσοισθε	παυθήσοισθε
	3rd	παύσοιεν	παύσοιντο	παυθήσοιντο
INFINITIVE		παύσειν	παύσεσθαι	παυθήσεσθαι
PARTICIPLE		παύσων, παύσουσα, παῦσον	παυσόμενος, παυσομένη, παυσόμενον	παυθησόμενος, παυθησομένη, παυθησόμενον

1st AORIST (παύω)

		Active	Middle	Passive
INDICATIVE				
sing.	1st	ἔπαυσα	ἐπαυσάμην	ἐπαύθην
	2nd	ἔπαυσας	ἐπαύσω	ἐπαύθης
	3rd	ἔπαυσε(ν)	ἐπαύσατο	ἐπαύθη
plur.	1st	ἐπαύσαμεν	ἐπαυσάμεθα	ἐπαύθημεν
	2nd	ἐπαύσατε	ἐπαύσασθε	ἐπαύθητε
	3rd	ἔπαυσαν	ἐπαύσαντο	ἐπαύθησαν
SUBJUNCTIVE				
sing.	1st	παύσω	παύσωμαι	παυθῶ
	2nd	παύσῃς	παύσῃ	παυθῇς
	3rd	παύσῃ	παύσηται	παυθῇ
plur.	1st	παύσωμεν	παυσώμεθα	παυθῶμεν
	2nd	παύσητε	παύσησθε	παυθῆτε
	3rd	παύσωσι(ν)	παύσωνται	παυθῶσι(ν)
OPTATIVE				
sing.	1st	παύσαιμι	παυσαίμην	παυθείην
	2nd	παύσαις / παύσειας	παύσαιο	παυθείης
	3rd	παύσαι / παύσειε(ν)	παύσαιτο	παυθείη
plur.	1st	παύσαιμεν	παυσαίμεθα	παυθείημεν / παυθεῖμεν
	2nd	παύσαιτε	παύσαισθε	παυθείητε / παυθεῖτε
	3rd	παύσαιεν / παύσειαν	παύσαιντο	παυθείησαν / παυθεῖεν

IMPERATIVE

sing.	2nd	παῦσον	παῦσαι	παύθητι
	3rd	παυσάτω	παυσάσθω	παυθήτω
plur.	2nd	παύσατε	παύσασθε	παύθητε
	3rd	παυσάντων	παυσάσθων	παυθέντων

INFINITIVE	παῦσαι	παύσασθαι	παυθῆναι
PARTICIPLE	παύσας, παύσασα, παῦσαν	παυσάμενος, παυσαμένη, παυσάμενον	παυθείς, παυθεῖσα, παυθέν

<div align="center">

PERFECT (παύω)

</div>

		Active		Middle-Passive	
		perfect	**pluperfect**	**perfect**	**pluperfect**
INDICATIVE					
sing.	1st	πέπαυκα	ἐπεπαύκη	πέπαυμαι	ἐπεπαύμην
	2nd	πέπαυκας	ἐπεπαύκης	πέπαυσαι	ἐπέπαυσο
	3rd	πέπαυκε(ν)	ἐπεπαύκει(ν)	πέπαυται	ἐπέπαυτο
plur.	1st	πεπαύκαμεν	ἐπεπαύκεμεν	πεπαύμεθα	ἐπεπαύμεθα
	2nd	πεπαύκατε	ἐπεπαύκετε	πέπαυσθε	ἐπέπαυσθε
	3rd	πεπαύκασι(ν)	ἐπεπαύκεσαν	πέπαυνται	ἐπέπαυντο
SUBJUNCTIVE					
sing.	1st	πεπαυκὼς ὦ		πεπαυμένος ὦ	
	2nd	πεπαυκὼς ᾖς		πεπαυμένος ᾖς	
	3rd	πεπαυκὼς ᾖ		πεπαυμένος ᾖ	
plur.	1st	πεπαυκότες ὦμεν		πεπαυμένοι ὦμεν	
	2nd	πεπαυκότες ἦτε		πεπαυμένοι ἦτε	
	3rd	πεπαυκότες ὦσι(ν)		πεπαυμένοι ὦσι(ν)	
OPTATIVE					
sing.	1st	πεπαυκὼς εἴην		πεπαυμένος εἴην	
	2nd	πεπαυκὼς εἴης		πεπαυμένος εἴης	
	3rd	πεπαυκὼς εἴη		πεπαυμένος εἴη	
plur.	1st	πεπαυκότες εἶμεν / εἴημεν		πεπαυμένοι εἶμεν / εἴημεν	
	2nd	πεπαυκότες εἶτε / εἴητε		πεπαυμένοι εἶτε / εἴητε	
	3rd	πεπαυκότες εἶεν / εἴησαν		πεπαυμένοι εἶεν / εἴησαν	
IMPERATIVE					
sing.	2nd	πεπαυκὼς ἴσθι		πεπαυμένος ἴσθι	
	3rd	πεπαυκὼς ἔστω		πεπαυμένος ἔστω	
plur.	2nd	πεπαυκότες ἔστε		πεπαυμένοι ἔστε	
	3rd	πεπαυκότες ἔστων		πεπαυμένοι ἔστων	
INFINITIVE		πεπαυκέναι		πεπαῦσθαι	
PARTICIPLE		πεπαυκώς, πεπαυκυῖα, πεπαυκός		πεπαυμένος, πεπαυμένη, πεπαυμένον	

LIQUID FUTURE

		ACTIVE (μένω)	MIDDLE (μάχομαι)
INDICATIVE			
sing.	1st	μενῶ	μαχοῦμαι
	2nd	μενεῖς	μαχῇ / -εῖ
	3rd	μενεῖ	μαχεῖται
plur.	1st	μενοῦμεν	μαχούμεθα
	2nd	μενεῖτε	μαχεῖσθε
	3rd	μενοῦσι(ν)	μαχοῦνται
INFINITIVE		μενεῖν	μαχεῖσθαι
PARTICIPLE		μενῶν, μενοῦσα, μενοῦν	μαχούμενος, μαχουμένη, μαχούμενον

LIQUID AORIST

		ACTIVE (μένω)	MIDDLE (κρίνομαι)
INDICATIVE			
sing.	1st	ἔμεινα	ἐκρινάμην
	2nd	ἔμεινας	ἐκρίνω
	3rd	ἔμεινε(ν)	ἐκρίνατο
plur.	1st	ἐμείναμεν	ἐκρινάμεθα
	2nd	ἐμείνατε	ἐκρίνασθε
	3rd	ἔμειναν	ἐκρίναντο
INFINITIVE		μεῖναι	κρίνασθαι
PARTICIPLE		μείνας, μείνασα, μεῖναν	κρινάμενος, κριναμένη, κρινάμενον

		THEMATIC 2nd AORIST (λείπω)		**ATHEMATIC 2nd AORIST** (βαίνω, γιγνώσκω)	
		ACTIVE	MIDDLE	ACTIVE	ACTIVE
INDICATIVE					
sing.	1st	ἔλιπον	ἐλιπόμην	ἔβην	ἔγνων
	2nd	ἔλιπες	ἐλίπου	ἔβης	ἔγνως
	3rd	ἔλιπε(ν)	ἐλίπετο	ἔβη	ἔγνω
plur.	1st	ἐλίπομεν	ἐλιπόμεθα	ἔβημεν	ἔγνωμεν
	2nd	ἐλίπετε	ἐλίπεσθε	ἔβητε	ἔγνωτε
	3rd	ἔλιπον	ἐλίποντο	ἔβησαν	ἔγνωσαν
SUBJUNCTIVE					
sing.	1st	λίπω	λίπωμαι	βῶ	γνῶ
	2nd	λίπῃς	λίπῃ	βῇς	γνῷς
	3rd	λίπῃ	λίπηται	βῇ	γνῷ
plur.	1st	λίπωμεν	λιπώμεθα	βῶμεν	γνῶμεν
	2nd	λίπητε	λίπησθε	βῆτε	γνῶτε
	3rd	λίπωσι(ν)	λίπωνται	βῶσι(ν)	γνῶσι(ν)

OPTATIVE

sing.	1st	λίποιμι	λιποίμην	βαίην	γνοίην
	2nd	λίποις	λίποιο	βαίης	γνοίης
	3rd	λίποι	λίποιτο	βαίη	γνοίη
plur.	1st	λίποιμεν	λιποίμεθα	βαίημεν / βαῖμεν	γνοίημεν / γνοῖμεν
	2nd	λίποιτε	λίποισθε	βαίητε / βαῖτε	γνοίητε / γνοῖτε
	3rd	λίποιεν	λίποιντο	βαίησαν / βαῖεν	γνοίησαν / γνοῖεν

IMPERATIVE

sing.	2nd	λίπε	λιποῦ	βῆθι	γνῶθι
	3rd	λιπέτω	λιπέσθω	βήτω	γνώτω
plur.	2nd	λίπετε	λίπεσθε	βῆτε	γνῶτε
	3rd	λιπόντων	λιπέσθων	βάντων	γνόντων

INFINITIVE

	λιπεῖν	λιπέσθαι	βῆναι	γνῶναι

PARTICIPLE

	λιπών	λιπόμενος	βάς	γνούς
	λιποῦσα	λιπομένη	βᾶσα	γνοῦσα
	λιπόν	λιπόμενον	βάν	γνόν

PERFECT MIDDLE (CONSONANT STEM VERBS)

		labial (λείπω)	dental (πείθω)	velar (ἄγω)
INDICATIVE				
perfect				
sing.	1st	λέλειμμαι	πέπεισμαι	ἦγμαι
	2nd	λέλειψαι	πέπεισαι	ἦξαι
	3rd	λέλειπται	πέπεισται	ἦκται
plur.	1st	λελείμμεθα	πεπείσμεθα	ἤγμεθα
	2nd	λέλειφθε	πέπεισθε	ἦχθε
	3rd	λελειμμένοι εἰσί(ν)	πεπεισμένοι εἰσί(ν)	ἠγμένοι εἰσί(ν)
pluperfect				
sing.	1st	ἐλελείμμην	ἐπεπείσμην	ἤγμην
	2nd	ἐλέλειψο	ἐπέπεισο	ἦξο
	3rd	ἐλέλειπτο	ἐπέπειστο	ἦκτο
plur.	1st	ἐλελείμμεθα	ἐπεπείσμεθα	ἤγμεθα
	2nd	ἐλέλειφθε	ἐπέπεισθε	ἦχθε
	3rd	λελειμμένοι ἦσαν	πεπεισμένοι ἦσαν	ἠγμένοι ἦσαν
SUBJUNCTIVE				
sing.	1st	λελειμμένος ὦ	πεπεισμένος ὦ	ἠγμένος ὦ
	2nd	λελειμμένος ᾖς	πεπεισμένος ᾖς	ἠγμένος ᾖς
	3rd	λελειμμένος ᾖ	πεπεισμένος ᾖ	ἠγμένος ᾖ
plur.	1st	λελειμμένοι ὦμεν	πεπεισμένοι ὦμεν	ἠγμένοι ὦμεν
	2nd	λελειμένοι ἦτε	πεπεισμένοι ἦτε	ἠγμένοι ἦτε
	3rd	λελειμμένοι ὦσι(ν)	πεπεισμένοι εἰσί(ν)	ἠγμένοι εἰσί(ν)

OPTATIVE

sing.	1st	λελειμμένος εἴην	πεπεισμένος εἴην	ἠγμένος εἴην
	2nd	λελειμμένος εἴης	πεπεισμένος εἴης	ἠγμένος εἴης
	3rd	λελειμμένος εἴη	πεπεισμένος εἴη	ἠγμένος εἴη
plur.	1st	λελειμμένοι εἶμεν	πεπεισμένοι εἶμεν	ἠγμένοι εἶμεν
	2nd	λελειμένοι εἶτε	πεπεισμένοι εἶτε	ἠγμένοι εἶτε
	3rd	λελειμμένοι εἶεν	πεπεισμένοι εἶεν	ἠγμένοι εἶεν

IMPERATIVE

sing.	2nd	λελειμμένος ἴσθι	πεπεισμένος ἴσθι	ἠγμένος ἴσθι
	3rd	λελειμμένος ἔστω	πεπεισμένος ἔστω	ἠγμένος ἔστω
plur.	2nd	λελειμμένοι ἔστε	πεπεισμένοι ἔστε	ἤγμένοι ἔστε
	3rd	λελειμμένος ἔστων	πεπεισμένοι ἔστων	ἤγμένοι ἔστων

INFINITIVE   λελεῖφθαι   πεπεῖσθαι   ἦχθαι

PARTICIPLE   λελειμμένος,   πεπεισμένος,   ἠγμένος,
　　　　　　　λελειμμένη,   πεπεισμένη,   ἠγμένη,
　　　　　　　λελειμμένον   πεπεισμένον   ἠγμένον

CONTRACT THEMATIC VERBS

VERBS IN -έω (φιλέω)

			Active		Middle-Passive	
			present	**imperfect**	**present**	**imperfect**
INDICATIVE						
sing.	1st		φιλῶ	ἐφίλουν	φιλοῦμαι	ἐφιλούμην
	2nd		φιλεῖς	ἐφίλεις	φιλῇ / -εῖ	ἐφιλοῦ
	3rd		φιλεῖ	ἐφίλει	φιλεῖται	ἐφιλεῖτο
plur.	1st		φιλοῦμεν	ἐφιλοῦμεν	φιλούμεθα	ἐφιλούμεθα
	2nd		φιλεῖτε	ἐφιλεῖτε	φιλεῖσθε	ἐφιλεῖσθε
	3rd		φιλοῦσι(ν)	ἐφίλουν	φιλοῦνται	ἐφιλοῦντο
SUBJUNCTIVE						
sing.	1st		φιλῶ		φιλῶμαι	
	2nd		φιλῇς		φιλῇ	
	3rd		φιλῇ		φιλῆται	
plur.	1st		φιλῶμεν		φιλώμεθα	
	2nd		φιλῆτε		φιλῆσθε	
	3rd		φιλῶσι(ν)		φιλῶνται	

OPTATIVE

sing.	1st	φιλοῖμι / φιλοίην	φιλοίμην
	2nd	φιλοῖς / φιλοίης	φιλοῖο
	3rd	φιλοῖ / φιλοίη	φιλοῖτο
plur.	1st	φιλοῖμεν / φιλοίημεν	φιλοίμεθα
	2nd	φιλοῖτε / φιλοίητε	φιλοῖσθε
	3rd	φιλοῖεν /φιλοίησαν	φιλοῖντο

IMPERATIVE

sing.	2nd	φίλει	φιλοῦ
	3rd	φιλείτω	φιλείσθω
plur.	2nd	φιλεῖτε	φιλεῖσθε
	3rd	φιλούντων	φιλείσθων

INFINITIVE   φιλεῖν   φιλεῖσθαι

PARTICIPLE   φιλῶν, φιλοῦσα, φιλοῦν   φιλούμενος, φιλουμένη, φιλούμενον

VERBS IN -άω (τιμάω)

			ACTIVE		MIDDLE-PASSIVE	
			present	**imperfect**	**present**	**imperfect**
INDICATIVE						
sing.	1st		τιμῶ	ἐτίμων	τιμῶμαι	ἐτιμώμην
	2nd		τιμᾷς	ἐτίμας	τιμᾷ	ἐτιμῶ
	3rd		τιμᾷ	ἐτίμα	τιμᾶται	ἐτιμᾶτο
plur.	1st		τιμῶμεν	ἐτιμῶμεν	τιμώμεθα	ἐτιμώμεθα
	2nd		τιμᾶτε	ἐτιμᾶτε	τιμᾶσθε	ἐτιμᾶσθε
	3rd		τιμῶσι(ν)	ἐτίμων	τιμῶνται	ἐτιμῶντο
SUBJUNCTIVE						
sing.	1st		τιμῶ		τιμῶμαι	
	2nd		τιμᾷς		τιμᾷ	
	3rd		τιμᾷ		τιμᾶται	
plur.	1st		τιμῶμεν		τιμώμεθα	
	2nd		τιμᾶτε		τιμᾶσθε	
	3rd		τιμῶσι(ν)		τιμῶνται	
OPTATIVE						
sing.	1st		τιμῷμι / τιμῴην		τιμῴμην	
	2nd		τιμῷς / τιμῴης		τιμῷο	
	3rd		τιμῷ / τιμῴη		τιμῷτο	
plur.	1st		τιμῷμεν / τιμῴημεν		τιμῴμεθα	
	2nd		τιμῷτε / τιμῴητε		τιμῷσθε	
	3rd		τιμῷεν / τιμῴησαν		τιμῷντο	

IMPERATIVE

sing.	2nd	τίμα	τιμῶ
	3rd	τιμάτω	τιμάσθω
plur.	2nd	τιμᾶτε	τιμᾶσθε
	3rd	τιμώντων	τιμάσθων

INFINITIVE   τιμᾶν   τιμᾶσθαι

PARTICIPLE   τιμῶν, τιμῶσα, τιμῶν   τιμώμενος, τιμωμένη, τιμώμενον

ζάω

ACTIVE

INDICATIVE

		present	**imperfect**
sing.	1st	ζῶ	ἔζων
	2nd	ζῇς	ἔζης
	3rd	ζῇ	ἔζη
plur.	1st	ζῶμεν	ἔζωμεν
	2nd	ζῆτε	ἔζητε
	3rd	ζῶσι(ν)	ἔζων

SUBJUNCTIVE

sing.	1st	ζῶ
	2nd	ζῇς
	3rd	ζῇ
plur.	1st	ζῶμεν
	2nd	ζῆτε
	3rd	ζῶσι(ν)

OPTATIVE

sing.	1st	ζῴην
	2nd	ζῴης
	3rd	ζῴη
plur.	1st	ζῷμεν / ζῴημεν
	2nd	ζῷτε / ζῴητε
	3rd	ζῷεν / ζῴησαν

IMPERATIVE

sing.	2nd	ζῇ
	3rd	ζήτω
plur.	2nd	ζῆτε
	3rd	ζώντων

INFINITIVE   ζῆν

PARTICIPLE   ζῶν, ζῶσα, ζῶν

VERBS IN -όω (δηλόω)

			Active		Middle-Passive	
			present	**imperfect**	**present**	**imperfect**
INDICATIVE						
sing.		1st	δηλῶ	ἐδήλουν	δηλοῦμαι	ἐδηλούμην
		2nd	δηλοῖς	ἐδήλους	δηλοῖ	ἐδηλοῦ
		3rd	δηλοῖ	ἐδήλου	δηλοῦται	ἐδηλοῦτο
plur.		1st	δηλοῦμεν	ἐδηλοῦμεν	δηλούμεθα	ἐδηλούμεθα
		3rd	δηλοῦτε	ἐδηλοῦτε	δηλοῦσθε	ἐδηλοῦσθε
		3rd	δηλοῦσι(ν)	ἐδήλουν	δηλοῦνται	ἐδηλοῦντο
SUBJUNCTIVE						
sing.		1st	δηλῶ		δηλῶμαι	
		2nd	δηλοῖς		δηλοῖ	
		3rd	δηλοῖ		δηλῶται	
plur.		1st	δηλῶμεν		δηλώμεθα	
		2nd	δηλῶτε		δηλῶσθε	
		3rd	δηλῶσι(ν)		δηλῶνται	
OPTATIVE						
sing.		1st	δηλοῖμι / δηλοίην		δηλοίμην	
		2nd	δηλοῖς / δηλοίης		δηλοῖο	
		3rd	δηλοῖ / δηλοίη		δηλοῖτο	
plur.		1st	δηλοῖμεν / δηλοίημεν		δηλοίμεθα	
		2nd	δηλοῖτε / δηλοίητε		δηλοῖσθε	
		3rd	δηλοῖεν / δηλοίησαν		δηλοῖντο	
IMPERATIVE						
sing.		2nd	δήλου		δηλοῦ	
		3rd	δηλούτω		δηλούσθω	
plur.		2nd	δηλοῦτε		δηλοῦσθε	
		3rd	δηλούντων		δηλούσθων	
INFINITIVE			δηλοῦν		δηλοῦσθαι	
PARTICIPLE			δηλῶν, δηλοῦσα, δηλοῦν		δηλούμενος, δηλουμένη, δηλούμενον	

ATHEMATIC VERBS

<div align="center">ἵστημι</div>

			Active		Middle-Passive	
			present	**imperfect**	**present**	**imperfect**
INDICATIVE						
	sing.	1st	ἵστημι	ἵστην	ἵσταμαι	ἱστάμην
		2nd	ἵστης	ἵστης	ἵστασαι	ἵστασο
		3rd	ἵστησι(ν)	ἵστη	ἵσταται	ἵστατο
	plur.	1st	ἵσταμεν	ἵσταμεν	ἱστάμεθα	ἱστάμεθα
		2nd	ἵστατε	ἵστατε	ἵστασθε	ἵστασθε
		3rd	ἱστᾶσι(ν)	ἵστασαν	ἵστανται	ἵσταντο
SUBJUNCTIVE						
	sing.	1st	ἱστῶ		ἱστῶμαι	
		2nd	ἱστῇς		ἱστῇ	
		3rd	ἱστῇ		ἱστῆται	
	plur.	1st	ἱστῶμεν		ἱστώμεθα	
		2nd	ἱστῆτε		ἱστῆσθε	
		3rd	ἱστῶσι(ν)		ἱστῶνται	
OPTATIVE						
	sing.	1st	ἱσταίην		ἱσταίμην	
		2nd	ἱσταίης		ἱσταῖο	
		3rd	ἱσταίη		ἱσταῖτο	
	plur.	1st	ἱσταῖμεν / ἱσταίημεν		ἱσταίμεθα	
		2nd	ἱσταῖτε / ἱσταίητε		ἱσταῖσθε	
		3rd	ἱσταῖεν / ἱσταίησαν		ἱσταῖντο	
IMPERATIVE						
	sing.	2nd	ἵστη		ἵστασο	
		3rd	ἱστάτω		ἱστάσθω	
	plur.	2nd	ἵστατε		ἵστασθε	
		3rd	ἱστάντων		ἱστάσθων	
INFINITIVE			ἱστάναι		ἵστασθαι	
PARTICIPLE			ἱστάς, ἱστᾶσα, ἱστάν		ἱστάμενος, ἱσταμένη, ἱστάμενον	

2nd aorist

ACTIVE

INDICATIVE

sing.	1st	ἔστην
	2nd	ἔστης
	3rd	ἔστη
plur.	1st	ἔστημεν
	2nd	ἔστητε
	3rd	ἔστησαν

SUBJUNCTIVE

sing.	1st	στῶ
	2nd	στῇς
	3rd	στῇ
plur.	1st	στῶμεν
	2nd	στῆτε
	3rd	στῶσι(ν)

OPTATIVE

sing.	1st	σταίην
	2nd	σταίης
	3rd	σταίη
plur.	1st	σταῖμεν / σταίημεν
	2nd	σταῖτε / σταίητε
	3rd	σταῖεν / σταίησαν

IMPERATIVE

sing.	2nd	στῆθι
	3rd	στήτω
plur.	2nd	στῆτε
	3rd	στάντων

INFINITIVE   στῆναι

PARTICIPLE   στάς, στᾶσα, στάν

τίθημι

			Active		Middle-Passive	
			present	**imperfect**	**present**	**imperfect**
INDICATIVE						
	sing.	1st	τίθημι	ἐτίθην	τίθεμαι	ἐτιθέμην
		2nd	τίθης	ἐτίθεις	τίθεσαι	ἐτίθεσο
		3rd	τίθησι(ν)	ἐτίθει	τίθεται	ἐτίθετο
	plur.	1st	τίθεμεν	ἐτίθεμεν	τιθέμεθα	ἐτιθέμεθα
		2nd	τίθετε	ἐτίθετε	τίθεσθε	ἐτίθεσθε
		3rd	τιθέασι(ν)	ἐτίθεσαν	τίθενται	ἐτίθεντο
SUBJUNCTIVE						
	sing.	1st	τιθῶ		τιθῶμαι	
		2nd	τιθῇς		τιθῇ	
		3rd	τιθῇ		τιθῆται	
	plur.	1st	τιθῶμεν		τιθώμεθα	
		2nd	τιθῆτε		τιθῆσθε	
		3rd	τιθῶσι(ν)		τιθῶνται	
OPTATIVE						
	sing.	1st	τιθείην		τιθείμην	
		2nd	τιθείης		τιθεῖο	
		3rd	τιθείη		τιθεῖτο	
	plur.	1st	τιθεῖμεν / τιθείημεν		τιθείμεθα	
		2nd	τιθεῖτε / τιθείητε		τιθεῖσθε	
		3rd	τιθεῖεν / τιθείησαν		τιθεῖντο	
IMPERATIVE						
	sing.	2nd	τίθει		τίθεσο	
		3rd	τιθέτω		τιθέσθω	
	plur.	2nd	τίθετε		τίθεσθε	
		3rd	τιθέντων		τιθέσθων	
INFINITIVE			τιθέναι		τίθεσθαι	
PARTICIPLE			τιθείς, τιθεῖσα, τιθέν		τιθέμενος, τιθεμένη, τιθέμενον	

aorist

			Active	Middle
INDICATIVE				
sing.	1st		ἔθηκα	ἐθέμην
	2nd		ἔθηκας	ἔθου
	3rd		ἔθηκε(ν)	ἔθετο
plur.	1st		ἔθεμεν	ἐθέμεθα
	2nd		ἔθετε	ἔθεσθε
	3rd		ἔθεσαν	ἔθεντο
SUBJUNCTIVE				
sing.	1st		θῶ	θῶμαι
	2nd		θῇς	θῇ
	3rd		θῇ	θῆται
plur.	1st		θῶμεν	θώμεθα
	2nd		θῆτε	θῆσθε
	3rd		θῶσι(ν)	θῶνται
OPTATIVE				
sing.	1st		θείην	θείμην
	2nd		θείης	θεῖο
	3rd		θείη	θεῖτο
plur.	1st		θεῖμεν / θείημεν	θείμεθα
	2nd		θεῖτε / θείητε	θεῖσθε
	3rd		θεῖεν / θείησαν	θεῖντο
IMPERATIVE				
sing.	2nd		θές	θοῦ
	3rd		θέτω	θέσθω
plur.	2nd		θέτε	θέσθε
	3rd		θέντων	θέσθων
INFINITIVE			θεῖναι	θέσθαι
PARTICIPLE			θείς, θεῖσα, θέν	θέμενος, θεμένη, θέμενον

ἵημι / ἀφίημι

			ACTIVE		MIDDLE-PASSIVE	
			present	**imperfect**	**present**	**imperfect**
INDICATIVE						
	sing.	1st	ἵημι	ἵην	ἵεμαι	ἱέμην
		2nd	ἵης	ἵεις	ἵεσαι	ἵεσο
		3rd	ἵησι(ν)	ἵει	ἵεται	ἵετο
	plur.	1st	ἵεμεν	ἵεμεν	ἱέμεθα	ἱέμεθα
		2nd	ἵετε	ἵετε	ἵεσθε	ἵεσθε
		3rd	ἱᾶσι(ν)	ἵεσαν	ἵενται	ἵεντο
SUBJUNCTIVE						
	sing.	1st	ἱῶ		ἱῶμαι	
		2nd	ἱῇς		ἱῇ	
		3rd	ἱῇ		ἱῆται	
	plur.	1st	ἱῶμεν		ἱώμεθα	
		2nd	ἱῆτε		ἱῆσθε	
		3rd	ἱῶσι(ν)		ἱῶνται	
OPTATIVE						
	sing.	1st	ἱείην		ἱείμην	
		2nd	ἱείης		ἱεῖο	
		3rd	ἱείη		ἱεῖτο	
	plur.	1st	ἱεῖμεν / ἱείημεν		ἱείμεθα	
		2nd	ἱεῖτε / ἱείητε		ἱεῖσθε	
		3rd	ἱεῖεν / ἱείησαν		ἱεῖντο	
IMPERATIVE						
	sing.	2nd	ἵει		ἵεσο	
		3rd	ἱέτω		ἱέσθω	
	plur.	2nd	ἵετε		ἵεσθε	
		3rd	ἱέντων		ἱέσθων	
INFINITIVE			ἱέναι		ἵεσθαι	
PARTICIPLE			ἱείς, ἱεῖσα, ἱέν		ἱέμενος, ἱεμένη, ἱέμενον	

aorist

			Active	Middle
INDICATIVE				
	sing.	1st	ἀφῆκα	ἀφείμην
		2nd	ἀφῆκας	ἀφεῖσο
		3rd	ἀφῆκε(ν)	ἀφεῖτο
	plur.	1st	ἀφεῖμεν	ἀφείμεθα
		2nd	ἀφεῖτε	ἀφεῖσθε
		3rd	ἀφεῖσαν	ἀφεῖντο
SUBJUNCTIVE				
	sing.	1st	ἀφῶ	ἀφῶμαι
		2nd	ἀφῇς	ἀφῇ
		3rd	ἀφῇ	ἀφῆται
	plur.	1st	ἀφῶμεν	ἀφώμεθα
		2nd	ἀφῆτε	ἀφῆσθε
		3rd	ἀφῶσι(ν)	ἀφῶνται
OPTATIVE				
	sing.	1st	ἀφείην	ἀφείμην
		2nd	ἀφείης	ἀφεῖο
		3rd	ἀφείη	ἀφεῖτο
	plur.	1st	ἀφεῖμεν / ἀφείημεν	ἀφείμεθα
		2nd	ἀφεῖτε / ἀφείητε	ἀφεῖσθε
		3rd	ἀφεῖεν / ἀφείησαν	ἀφεῖντο
IMPERATIVE				
	sing.	2nd	ἄφες	ἀφοῦ
		3rd	ἀφέτω	ἀφέσθω
	plur.	2nd	ἄφετε	ἄφεσθε
		3rd	ἀφέντων	ἀφέσθων
INFINITIVE			ἀφεῖναι	ἀφέσθαι
PARTICIPLE			ἀφείς, ἀφεῖσα, ἀφέν	ἀφέμενος, ἀφεμένη, ἀφέμενον

δίδωμι

			Active		Middle-Passive	
			present	**imperfect**	**present**	**imperfect**
INDICATIVE						
	sing.	1st	δίδωμι	ἐδίδουν	δίδομαι	ἐδιδόμην
		2nd	δίδως	ἐδίδους	δίδοσαι	ἐδίδοσο
		3rd	δίδωσι(ν)	ἐδίδου	δίδοται	ἐδίδοτο
	plur.	1st	δίδομεν	ἐδίδομεν	διδόμεθα	ἐδιδόμεθα
		2nd	δίδοτε	ἐδίδοτε	δίδοσθε	ἐδίδοσθε
		3rd	διδόασι(ν)	ἐδίδοσαν	δίδονται	ἐδίδοντο
SUBJUNCTIVE						
	sing.	1st	διδῶ		διδῶμαι	
		2nd	διδῷς		διδῷ	
		3rd	διδῷ		διδῶται	
	plur.	1st	διδῶμεν		διδόμεθα	
		2nd	διδῶτε		διδῶσθε	
		3rd	διδῶσι(ν)		διδῶνται	
OPTATIVE						
	sing.	1st	διδοίην		διδοίμην	
		2nd	διδοίης		διδοῖο	
		3rd	διδοίη		διδοῖτο	
	plur.	1st	διδοῖμεν / διδοίημεν		διδοίμεθα	
		2nd	διδοῖτε / διδοίητε		διδοῖσθε	
		3rd	διδοῖεν / διδοίησαν		διδοῖντο	
IMPERATIVE						
	sing.	2nd	δίδου		δίδοσο	
		3rd	διδότω		διδόσθω	
	plur.	2nd	δίδοτε		δίδοσθε	
		3rd	διδόντων		διδόσθων	
INFINITIVE			διδόναι		δίδοσθαι	
PARTICIPLE			διδούς, διδοῦσα, διδόν		διδόμενος, διδομένη, διδόμενον	

aorist

		Active	Middle
INDICATIVE			
sing.	1st	ἔδωκα	ἐδόμην
	2nd	ἔδωκας	ἔδου
	3rd	ἔδωκε(ν)	ἔδοτο
plur.	1st	ἔδομεν	ἐδόμεθα
	2nd	ἔδοτε	ἔδοσθε
	3rd	ἔδοσαν	ἔδοντο
SUBJUNCTIVE			
sing.	1st	δῶ	δῶμαι
	2nd	δῷς	δῷ
	3rd	δῷ	δῶται
plur.	1st	δῶμεν	δώμεθα
	2nd	δῶτε	δῶσθε
	3rd	δῶσι(ν)	δῶνται
OPTATIVE			
sing.	1st	δοίην	δοίμην
	2nd	δοίης	δοῖο
	3rd	δοίη	δοῖτο
plur.	1st	δοῖμεν / δοίημεν	δοίμεθα
	2nd	δοῖτε / δοίητε	δοῖσθε
	3rd	δοῖεν / δοίησαν	δοῖντο
IMPERATIVE			
sing.	2nd	δός	δοῦ
	3rd	δότω	δόσθω
plur.	2nd	δότε	δόσθε
	3rd	δόντων	δόσθων
INFINITIVE		δοῦναι	δόσθαι
PARTICIPLE		δούς, δοῦσα, δόν	δόμενος, δομένη, δόμενον

δείκνυμι

			ACTIVE		MIDDLE-PASSIVE	
			present	**imperfect**	**present**	**imperfect**
INDICATIVE						
sing.	1st		δείκνυμι	ἐδείκνυν	δείκνυμαι	ἐδεικνύμην
	2nd		δείκνυς	ἐδείκνυς	δείκνυσαι	ἐδείκνυσο
	3rd		δείκνυσι(ν)	ἐδείκνυ	δείκνυται	ἐδείκνυτο
plur.	1st		δείκνυμεν	ἐδείκνυμεν	δεικνύμεθα	ἐδεικνύμεθα
	2nd		δείκνυτε	ἐδείκνυτε	δείκνυσθε	ἐδείκνυσθε
	3rd		δεικνύασι(ν)	ἐδείκνυσαν	δείκνυνται	ἐδείκνυντο
SUBJUNCTIVE						
sing.	1st		δεικνύω		δεικνύωμαι	
	2nd		δεικνύῃς		δεικνύῃ	
	3rd		δεικνύῃ		δεικνύηται	
plur.	1st		δεικνύωμεν		δεικνυώμεθα	
	2nd		δεικνύητε		δεικνύησθε	
	3rd		δεικνύωσι(ν)		δεικνύωνται	
OPTATIVE						
sing.	1st		δεικνύοιμι		δεικνυοίμην	
	2nd		δεικνύοις		δεικνύοιο	
	3rd		δεικνύοι		δεικνύοιτο	
plur.	1st		δεικνύοιμεν		δεικνυοίμεθα	
	2nd		δεικνύοιτε		δεικνύοισθε	
	3rd		δεικνύοιεν		δεικνύοιντο	
IMPERATIVE						
sing.	2nd		δείκνυ		δείκνυσο	
	3rd		δεικνύτω		δεικνύσθω	
plur.	2nd		δείκνυτε		δείκνυσθε	
	3rd		δεικνύντων		δεικνύσθων	
INFINITIVE			δεικνύναι		δείκνυσθαι	
PARTICIPLE			δεικνύς, δεικνῦσα, δεικνύν		δεικνύμενος, δεικνυμένη, δεικνύμενον	

IRREGULAR VERBS

		εἰμί, 'be'		εἶμι, 'go'	
		present	**imperfect**	**present**	**imperfect**
INDICATIVE					
sing.	1st	εἰμί	ἦ / ἦν	εἶμι	ἦα / ἤειν
	2nd	εἶ	ἦσθα	εἶ(ς)	ἤεισθα / ἤεις
	3rd	ἐστί(ν)	ἦν	εἶσι(ν)	ἤειν / ἤει
plur.	1st	ἐσμέν	ἦμεν	ἴμεν	ἦμεν
	2nd	ἐστέ	ἦτε	ἴτε	ἦτε
	3rd	εἰσί(ν)	ἦσαν	ἴασι(ν)	ἦσαν / ἤεσαν
SUBJUNCTIVE					
sing.	1st	ὦ		ἴω	
	2nd	ἦς		ἴῃς	
	3rd	ἦ		ἴῃ	
plur.	1st	ὦμεν		ἴωμεν	
	2nd	ἦτε		ἴητε	
	3rd	ὦσι(ν)		ἴωσι(ν)	
OPTATIVE					
sing.	1st	εἴην		ἴοιμι / ἰοίην	
	2nd	εἴης		ἴοις	
	3rd	εἴη		ἴοι	
plur.	1st	εἶμεν / εἴημεν		ἴοιμεν	
	2nd	εἶτε / εἴητε		ἴοιτε	
	3rd	εἶεν / εἴησαν		ἴοιεν	
IMPERATIVE					
sing.	2nd	ἴσθι		ἴθι	
	3rd	ἔστω		ἴτω	
plur.	2nd	ἔστε		ἴτε	
	3rd	ἔστων / ὄντων		ἰόντων	
INFINITIVE		εἶναι		ἰέναι	
PARTICIPLE		ὤν, οὖσα, ὄν		ἰών, ἰοῦσα, ἰόν	

			οἶδα		φημί	
			perfect	**pluperfect**	**present**	**imperfect**
INDICATIVE						
sing.	1st		οἶδα	ᾔδη / ᾔδειν	φημί	ἔφην
	2nd		οἶσθα	ᾔδησθα / ᾔδεις	φής	ἔφησθα / ἔφης
	3rd		οἶδε(ν)	ᾔδει(ν)	φησί(ν)	ἔφη
plur.	1st		ἴσμεν	ᾖσμεν / ᾔδεμεν	φαμέν	ἔφαμεν
	2nd		ἴστε	ᾖστε / ᾔδετε	φατέ	ἔφατε
	3rd		ἴσασι(ν)	ᾖσαν / ᾔδεσαν	φασί(ν)	ἔφασαν
SUBJUNCTIVE						
sing.	1st		εἰδῶ		φῶ	
	2nd		εἰδῇς		φῇς	
	3rd		εἰδῇ		φῇ	
plur.	1st		εἰδῶμεν		φῶμεν	
	2nd		εἰδῆτε		φῆτε	
	3rd		εἰδῶσι(ν)		φῶσι(ν)	
OPTATIVE						
sing.	1st		εἰδείην		φαίην	
	2nd		εἰδείης		φαίης	
	3rd		εἰδείη		φαίη	
plur.	1st		εἰδεῖμεν / εἰδείημεν		φαῖμεν / φαίημεν	
	2nd		εἰδεῖτε / εἰδείητε		φαῖτε / φαίητε	
	3rd		εἰδεῖεν / εἰδείησαν		φαῖεν / φαίησαν	
IMPERATIVE						
sing.	2nd		ἴσθι		φάθι / φαθί	
	3rd		ἴστω		φάτω	
plur.	2nd		ἴστε		φάτε	
	3rd		ἴστων		φάντων	
INFINITIVE			εἰδέναι		φάναι	
PARTICIPLE			εἰδώς, εἰδυῖα, εἰδός		φάς, φᾶσα, φάν	

List of Prepositions

			Chapter
ἀνά	(+ *acc.*)	up, on; throughout	20
ἄνευ	(+ *gen.*)	without	20
ἀντί	(+ *gen.*)	instead of; opposite	21
ἀπό	(+ *gen.*)	away from, from	4
διά	(+ *gen.*)	through	5
	(+ *acc.*)	because of, on account of	
εἰς	(+ *acc.*)	into, onto	4
ἐκ, ἐξ	(+ *gen.*)	out of, from	4
ἐν	(+ *dat.*)	in, on; (*pl.*) among	4
ἕνεκα	(+ *gen.*)	on account of, for the sake of	21
ἐπί	(+ *gen.*)	on, upon	11
	(+ *dat.*)	on, at, near	
	(+ *acc.*)	toward, against; upon, on to, up to	
κατά	(+ *gen.*)	down from, down upon	10
	(+ *acc.*)	over, down along; according to; against, opposite	
μετά	(+ *gen.*)	with	5
	(+ *acc.*)	after	
παρά	(+ *gen.*)	from (the side of)	18
	(+ *dat.*)	beside, by (the side of); with (someone), at someone's house	
	(+ *acc.*)	to (the side of), alongside; contrary to	
περί	(+ *gen.*)	about, concerning	5
	(+ *acc.*)	around	
πρό	(+ *gen.*)	before, in front of	17
πρός	(+ *gen.*)	from; on the side of, in favor of	4
	(+ *dat.*)	near, at; in addition to	
	(+ *acc.*)	to, toward; in relation to	
σύν	(+ *dat.*)	with	7
ὑπέρ	(+ *gen.*)	for, on behalf of	20
	(+ *acc.*)	beyond	
ὑπό	(+ *gen.*)	(from) under; by (*agent*); because of	15
	(+ *dat.*)	under, beneath, at the foot of	
	(+ *acc.*)	(down) under	

Tense Formation

This chart shows how tenses of a regular verb like παύω are formed from the principal parts.

P.P.	regular marker	forms the following tenses	example	
1st		present active, middle, passive	παύω	I stop
	augment	imperfect, active, middle, passive	ἔπαυον	I was stopping
2nd	σ	future active, middle	παύσω	I will stop
3rd	augment / σα	aorist active, middle	ἔπαυσα	I stopped
4th	reduplication / κα	perfect active	πέπαυκα	I have stopped
	augment /redup. / κε	pluperfect active	ἐπεπαύκη	I had stopped
5th	reduplication	perfect middle perfect passive	πέπαυμαι	I have stopped (myself) I have been stopped
	augment /redup.	pluperfect middle pluperfect passive	ἐπεπαύμην	I had stopped (myself) I had been stopped
6th	augment / θη	aorist, future passive	ἐπαύθην	I was stopped

Principal Parts

The following verbs appear in the chapter vocabularies. Principal parts are given for simple verbs, and for compounds when the uncompounded version is not in the chapter vocabularies. A dash preceding a form indicates that it exists only in compounds.

	1 pres. act./mid.	2 fut. act./mid.	3 aor. act./mid.	4 perf. act.	5 perf. mid.-pass.	6 aor. pass.
announce	ἀγγέλλω	ἀγγελῶ	ἤγγειλα	ἤγγελκα	ἤγγελμαι	ἠγγέλθην
lead	ἄγω	ἄξω	ἤγαγον	ἦχα	ἦγμαι	ἤχθην
do wrong	ἀδικέω	ἀδικήσω	ἠδίκησα	ἠδίκηκα	ἠδίκημαι	ἠδικήθην
take	αἱρέω	αἱρήσω	εἷλον	ᾕρηκα	ᾕρημαι	ᾑρέθην
perceive	αἰσθάνομαι	αἰσθήσομαι	ᾐσθόμην	—	ᾔσθημαι	ᾐσθήθην
ask (for)	αἰτέω	αἰτήσω	ᾔτησα	ᾔτηκα	ᾔτημαι	ᾐτήθην
hear	ἀκούω	ἀκούσομαι	ἤκουσα	ἀκήκοα	—	ἠκούσθην
consider worthy	ἀξιόω	ἀξιώσω	ἠξίωσα	ἠξίωκα	ἠξίωμαι	ἠξιώθην
die	(ἀπο)θνῄσκω	ἀποθανοῦμαι	ἀπέθανον	τέθνηκα	—	—
answer	ἀποκρίνομαι	ἀποκρινοῦμαι	ἀπεκρινάμην	—	ἀποκέκριμαι	ἀπεκρίθην
kill	ἀποκτείνω	ἀποκτενῶ	ἀπέκτεινα	ἀπέκτονα	—	—
destroy	(ἀπ)όλλυμι	ἀπολῶ	ἀπόλεσα / ἀπωλόμην	ἀπόλωλα	—	—
rule	ἄρχω	ἄρξω	ἦρξα	ἦρχα	ἦργμαι	ἤρχθην
arrive (at)	ἀφικνέομαι	ἀφίξομαι	ἀφικόμην	—	ἀφῖγμαι	—
go	βαίνω	βήσομαι	ἔβην	βέβηκα	—	—
throw	βάλλω	βαλῶ	ἔβαλον	βέβληκα	βέβλημαι	ἐβλήθην
rule	βασιλεύω	βασιλεύσω	ἐβασίλευσα	βεβασίλευκα	—	—
harm	βλάπτω	βλάψω	ἔβλαψα	βέβλαφα	βέβλαμμαι	ἐβλάβην / ἐβλάφθην
help	βοηθέω	βοηθήσω	ἐβοήθησα	βεβοήθηκα	βεβοήθημαι	ἐβοηθήθην
plan	βουλεύω	βουλεύσω	ἐβούλευσα	βεβούλευκα	βεβούλευμαι	ἐβουλεύθην
want	βούλομαι	βουλήσομαι	—	—	βεβούλημαι	ἐβουλήθην
become	γίγνομαι	γενήσομαι	ἐγενόμην	γέγονα	γεγένημαι	—
know	γιγνώσκω	γνώσομαι	ἔγνων	ἔγνωκα	ἔγνωσμαι	ἐγνώσθην
write	γράφω	γράψω	ἔγραψα	γέγραφα	γέγραμμαι	ἐγράφην
show	δείκνυμι	δείξω	ἔδειξα	δέδειχα	δέδειγμαι	ἐδείχθην

	1 pres. act./mid.	2 fut. act./mid.	3 aor. act./mid.	4 perf. act.	5 perf. mid.-pass.	6 aor. pass.
receive	δέχομαι	δέξομαι	ἐδεξάμην	—	δέδεγμαι	-εδέχθην
lack	δέω	δεήσω	ἐδέησα	δεδέηκα	δεδέημαι	ἐδεήθην
show	δηλόω	δηλώσω	ἐδήλωσα	δεδήλωκα	δεδήλωμαι	ἐδηλώθην
destroy	διαφθείρω	διαφθερῶ	διέφθειρα	διέφθαρκα / διέφθορα	διέφθαρμαι	διεφθάρην
teach	διδάσκω	διδάξω	ἐδίδαξα	δεδίδαχα	δεδίδαγμαι	ἐδιδάχθην
give	δίδωμι	δώσω	ἔδωκα	δέδωκα	δέδομαι	ἐδόθην
pursue	διώκω	διώξω	ἐδίωξα	δεδίωχα	—	ἐδιώχθην
think	δοκέω	δόξω	ἔδοξα	δεδόκηκα	δεδόκημαι	ἐδοκήθην
do	δράω	δράσω	ἔδρασα	δέδρακα	δέδραμαι	ἐδράσθην
be able	δύναμαι	δυνήσομαι	—	—	δεδύνημαι	ἐδυνήθην
allow	ἐάω	ἐάσω	εἴασα	εἴακα	εἴαμαι	εἰάθην
want	ἐθέλω	ἐθελήσω	ἠθέλησα	ἠθέληκα	—	—
go	εἶμι	—	—	—	—	—
be	εἰμί	ἔσομαι	—	—	—	—
drive	ἐλαύνω	ἐλῶ	ἤλασα	-ἐλήλακα	ἐλήλαμαι	ἠλάθην
hope	ἐλπίζω	ἐλπιῶ	ἤλπισα	—	—	ἠλπίσθην
be like	—	—	—	ἔοικα	—	—
forget	ἐπιλανθάνομαι	ἐπιλήσομαι	ἐπελαθόμην	—	ἐπιλέλησμαι	ἐπελήσθην
care about	ἐπιμελέομαι	ἐπιμελήσομαι	—	—	ἐπιμεμέλημαι	ἐπεμελήθην
follow	ἕπομαι	ἕψομαι	ἑσπόμην	—	—	—
come	ἔρχομαι	ἐλεύσομαι	ἦλθον	ἐλήλυθα	—	—
ask	ἐρωτάω	ἐρωτήσω	ἠρώτησα / ἠρόμην	ἠρώτηκα	ἠρώτημαι	ἠρωτήθην
find	εὑρίσκω	εὑρήσω	ηὗρον / εὗρον	ηὕρηκα / εὕρηκα	ηὕρημαι / εὕρημαι	ηὑρέθην / εὑρέθην
have	ἔχω	ἕξω / σχήσω	ἔσχον	ἔσχηκα	—	—
live	ζάω	ζήσω	ἔζησα	ἔζηκα	—	—
seek	ζητέω	ζητήσω	ἐζήτησα	ἐζήτηκα	—	ἐζητήθην
believe	ἡγέομαι	ἡγήσομαι	ἡγησάμην	—	ἥγημαι	-ηγήθην

	1 pres. act./mid.	2 fut. act./mid.	3 aor. act./mid.	4 perf. act.	5 perf. mid.-pass.	6 aor. pass.
enjoy	ἥδομαι	ἡσθήσομαι	—	—	—	ἥσθην
have come	ἥκω	ἥξω	—	ἧκα	—	—
admire	θαυμάζω	θαυμάσομαι	ἐθαύμασα	τεθαύμακα	τεθαύμασμαι	ἐθαυμάσθην
sacrifice	θύω	θύσω	ἔθυσα	τέθυκα	τέθυμαι	ἐτύθην
throw	ἵημι	ἥσω	-ἧκα	-εἷκα	-εἷμαι	-εἵθην
make stand	ἵστημι	στήσω	ἔστησα / ἔστην	ἕστηκα	ἕσταμαι	ἐστάθην
call	καλέω	καλῶ	ἐκάλεσα	κέκληκα	κέκλημαι	ἐκλήθην
accuse	κατηγορέω	κατηγορήσω	κατηγόρησα	κατηγόρηκα	κατηγόρημαι	κατηγορήθην
order	κελεύω	κελεύσω	ἐκέλευσα	κεκέλευκα	κεκέλευσμαι	ἐκελεύσθην
conquer	κρατέω	κρατήσω	ἐκράτησα	κεκράτηκα	κεκράτημαι	ἐκρατήθην
judge	κρίνω	κρινῶ	ἔκρινα	κέκρικα	κέκριμαι	ἐκρίθην
take	λαμβάνω	λήψομαι	ἔλαβον	εἴληφα	εἴλημμαι	ἐλήφθην
escape notice	λανθάνω	λήσω	ἔλαθον	λέληθα	λέλησμαι	—
say	λέγω	λέξω	ἔλεξα / εἶπον	εἴρηκα	λέλεγμαι	ἐλέχθην
leave	λείπω	λείψω	ἔλιπον	λέλοιπα	λέλειμμαι	ἐλείφθην
release	λύω	λύσω	ἔλυσα	λέλυκα	λέλυμαι	ἐλύθην
learn	μανθάνω	μαθήσομαι	ἔμαθον	μεμάθηκα	—	—
fight	μάχομαι	μαχοῦμαι	ἐμαχεσάμην	—	μεμάχημαι	—
intend	μέλλω	μελλήσω	ἐμέλλησα	—	—	—
stay	μένω	μενῶ	ἔμεινα	μεμένηκα	—	—
remind	μιμνῄσκω	μνήσω	ἔμνησα	—	μέμνημαι	ἐμνήσθην
win	νικάω	νικήσω	ἐνίκησα	νενίκηκα	νενίκημαι	ἐνικήθην
think	νομίζω	νομιῶ	ἐνόμισα	νενόμικα	νενόμισμαι	ἐνομίσθην
know	—	—	—	οἶδα	—	—
live in	οἰκέω	οἰκήσω	ᾤκησα	ᾤκηκα	ᾤκημαι	ᾠκήθην
think	οἴομαι / οἶμαι	οἰήσομαι	—	—	—	ᾠήθην
agree	ὁμολογέω	ὁμολογήσω	ὡμολόγησα	ὡμολόγηκα	ὡμολόγημαι	ὡμολογήθην
name	ὀνομάζω	ὀνομάσω	ὠνόμασα	ὠνόμακα	ὠνόμασμαι	ὠνομάσθην
see	ὁράω	ὄψομαι	εἶδον	ἑόρακα	ἑόραμαι	ὤφθην
suffer	πάσχω	πείσομαι	ἔπαθον	πέπονθα	—	—
stop	παύω	παύσω	ἔπαυσα	πέπαυκα	πέπαυμαι	ἐπαύθην

	1 pres. act./mid.	2 fut. act./mid.	3 aor. act./mid.	4 perf. act.	5 perf. mid-pass.	6 aor. pass.
persuade	πείθω	πείσω	ἔπεισα; mid. ἐπιθόμην	πέπεικα / πέποιθα	πέπεισμαι	ἐπείσθην
try	πειράομαι	πειρήσομαι	ἐπειρασάμην	—	πεπείραμαι	ἐπειράθην
send	πέμπω	πέμψω	ἔπεμψα	πέπομφα	πέπεμμαι	ἐπέμφθην
fall	πίπτω	πεσοῦμαι	ἔπεσον	πέπτωκα	—	—
trust	πιστεύω	πιστεύσω	ἐπίστευσα	πεπίστευκα	πεπίστευμαι	ἐπιστεύθην
make	ποιέω	ποιήσω	ἐποίησα	πεποίηκα	πεποίημαι	ἐποιήθην
convey	πορεύω	πορεύσω	ἐπόρευσα	—	πεπόρευμαι	ἐπορεύθην
do	πράττω	πράξω	ἔπραξα	πέπραχα / πέπραγα	πέπραγμαι	ἐπράχθην
learn	πυνθάνομαι	πεύσομαι	ἐπυθόμην	—	πέπυσμαι	—
look at	σκοπέω	σκοπήσω	ἐσκόπησα	—	ἔσκοπημαι	—
march	στρατεύω	στρατεύσω	ἐστράτευσα	ἐστράτευκα	ἐστράτευμαι	—
save	σῴζω	σώσω	ἔσωσα	σέσωκα	σέσω(σ)μαι	ἐσώθην
finish	τελευτάω	τελευτήσω	ἐτελεύτησα	τετελεύτηκα	τετελεύτημαι	ἐτελευτήθην
put	τίθημι	θήσω	ἔθηκα	τέθηκα	τέθειμαι	ἐτέθην
produce	τίκτω	τέξω / τέξομαι	ἔτεκον	τέτοκα	—	—
honor	τιμάω	τιμήσω	ἐτίμησα	τετίμηκα	τετίμημαι	ἐτιμήθην
nourish	τρέφω	θρέψω	ἔθρεψα	τέτροφα	τέθραμμαι	ἐτράφην
happen	τυγχάνω	τεύξομαι	ἔτυχον	τετύχηκα	—	—
reveal	φαίνω	φανῶ	ἔφηνα	πέφηνα	πέφασμαι	ἐφάνην
carry	φέρω	οἴσω	ἤνεγκον	ἐνήνοχα	ἐνήνεγμαι	ἠνέχθην
flee	φεύγω	φεύξομαι	ἔφυγον	πέφευγα	—	—
say	φημί	φήσω	ἔφησα / ἔφην	—	—	—
love	φιλέω	φιλήσω	ἐφίλησα	πεφίληκα	πεφίλημαι	ἐφιλήθην
scare	φοβέω	φοβήσω	ἐφόβησα	—	πεφόβημαι	ἐφοβήθην
guard	φυλάττω	φυλάξω	ἐφύλαξα	πεφύλαχα	πεφύλαγμαι	ἐφυλάχθην
bring forth	φύω	φύσω	ἔφυσα / ἔφυν	πέφυκα	—	—
enjoy	χαίρω	χαιρήσω	ἐχαίρησα	κεχάρηκα	κεκάρημαι	ἐχάρην
use	χράομαι	χρήσομαι	ἐχρησάμην	—	κέχρημαι	ἐχρήσθην

Greek–English Vocabulary

The chapter where each word is introduced is given in parentheses. For verbs, the first three principal parts are given here; a full list of principal parts can be found in the section before this vocabulary.

ἀγαθός, ἀγαθή, ἀγαθόν	good, brave	6
ἀγγέλλω, ἀγγελῶ, ἤγγειλα	announce, report, tell	15
ἀγορά, ἀγορᾶς, ἡ	marketplace, agora	3
ἄγω, ἄξω, ἤγαγον	lead, bring	7
ἀδελφός, ἀδελφοῦ, ὁ	brother	6
ἀδικέω, ἀδικήσω, ἠδίκησα	do wrong; injure	13
ἄδικος, ἄδικον	unjust	13
ἀδύνατος, ἀδύνατον	powerless; impossible	18
ἀεί	always	4
ἀθάνατος, ἀθάνατον	immortal	13
Ἀθῆναι, Ἀθηνῶν, αἱ	Athens	4
Ἀθηναῖος, Ἀθηναία, Ἀθηναῖον	Athenian	6
αἱρέω, αἱρήσω, εἷλον (*stem* ἑλ-)	take, seize; (*mid.*) choose	16
αἰσθάνομαι, αἰσθήσομαι, ᾐσθόμην	perceive	16
αἰσχρός, αἰσχρά, αἰσχρόν	shameful	21
αἰτέω, αἰτήσω, ᾔτησα	ask (for), demand; beg	25
αἰτία, αἰτίας, ἡ	cause, origin; charge, accusation	23
αἴτιος, αἰτία, αἴτιον (+ *gen.*)	guilty (of); responsible (for)	23
ἀκούω, ἀκούσομαι, ἤκουσα	hear, listen to (*usually* + *gen. person*, + *acc. thing*); hear of	10
ἀλήθεια, ἀληθείας, ἡ	truth	14
ἀληθής, ἀληθές	true	11
τὰ ἀληθῆ	the truth	
ἀλλά	but, however	3
ἀλλήλων, ἀλλήλων, ἀλλήλων	each other, one another (*reciprocal*)	14
ἄλλος, ἄλλη, ἄλλον	other, another	9
ἅμα	at the same time	22
ἀμείνων, ἄμεινον	better, braver	19
ἄν (*postpos.*)	(+ *indic.*) *marks impossibility*	10
	(+ *opt.*) *marks possibility*	21
ἀνά (+ *acc.*)	up, on; throughout	20
ἀνάγκη, ἀνάγκης, ἡ	necessity	13
ἀνάγκη ἐστί	it is necessary	17
ἄνευ (+ *gen.*)	without	20
ἀνήρ, ἀνδρός, ὁ	man, husband	9
ἄνθρωπος, ἀνθρώπου, ὁ	man (human being), person	3
ἀντί (+ *gen.*)	instead of; opposite	21

ἄξιος, ἀξία, ἄξιον	worthy; worthy of (+ *gen.*)	11
ἀξιόω, ἀξιώσω, ἠξίωσα	consider worthy	26
ἅπας, ἅπασα, ἅπαν – *see* πᾶς		8
ἀπό (+ *gen.*)	away from, from	4
ἀποθνῄσκω, ἀποθανοῦμαι, ἀπέθανον	die	10
ἀποκρίνομαι, ἀποκρινοῦμαι, ἀπεκρινάμην	answer	16
ἀποκτείνω, ἀποκτενῶ, ἀπέκτεινα	kill	11
ἀπόλλυμι, ἀπολῶ, ἀπώλεσα / ἀπωλόμην	destroy, kill; lose; (*mid.*) die	27
ἀρετή, ἀρετῆς, ἡ	excellence; virtue; bravery	17
ἄριστος, ἀρίστη, ἄριστον	best	19
ἀρχή, ἀρχῆς, ἡ	rule; empire, province; beginning	8
ἄρχω, ἄρξω, ἦρξα (+ *gen.*)	rule, command; begin	8
ἄρχων, ἄρχοντος, ὁ	archon, leader, ruler	8
ἄστυ, ἄστεως, τό	town	12
ἀσφαλής, ἀσφαλές	safe	11
αὖ, αὖθις	again, in turn; on the other hand	28
αὐτίκα	immediately	23
αὐτός, αὐτή, αὐτό	(*gen.*, *dat.*, *acc.*) him, her, it, them	9
adjectival use	(*attributive*) same	
	(*predicate*) (he) himself, *etc.*	
αὐτοῦ, αὐτῆς, αὐτοῦ – *see* ἑαυτοῦ		21
ἀφίημι	throw away; send away, let go, get rid of	17
ἀφικνέομαι, ἀφίξομαι, ἀφικόμην (*often* + *prep.*)	arrive (at), come to, reach	18
βαίνω, βήσομαι, ἔβην	go	19
βάλλω, βαλῶ, ἔβαλον	throw	11
βάρβαρος, βαρβάρου, ὁ	foreigner	6
βασίλεια, βασιλείας, ἡ	queen	12
βασιλεύς, βασιλέως, ὁ	king	12
βασιλεύω, βασιλεύσω, ἐβασίλευσα (+ *gen.*)	rule, be king (of)	5
βελτίων, βέλτιον	better (*morally*)	19
βέλτιστος, βελτίστη, βέλτιστον	best	19
βίος, βίου, ὁ	life	5
βλάπτω, βλάψω, ἔβλαψα	harm, injure, damage	2
βοηθέω, βοηθήσω, ἐβοήθησα (+ *dat.*)	help	11
βουλεύω, βουλεύσω, ἐβούλευσα	plan	11
βούλομαι, βουλήσομαι, ... ἐβουλήθην	want	12
βραχύς, βραχεῖα, βραχύ	short, brief	14
γάρ (*postpos.*)	for, because	6
γε (*encl.*)	indeed; at least, at any rate	28
γένος, γένους, τό	race, family; kind	15
γῆ, γῆς, ἡ (*from* γέ-ᾱ)	earth, land (*sg. only*)	10
γίγνομαι, γενήσομαι, ἐγενόμην	become, be; happen	12
γιγνώσκω, γνώσομαι, ἔγνων	know, recognize; know how to (+ *inf.*)	19

γνώμη, γνώμης, ἡ	opinion, judgment	21
γραφή, γραφῆς, ἡ	charge, accusation	23
γραφὴν γράφομαι	bring a charge (against)	
γράφω, γράψω, ἔγραψα	write; (*mid.*) prosecute	2; 16
γυνή, γυναικός, ἡ	woman, wife	9
δαιμόνιον, δαιμονίου, τό	divine power, spirit	22
δαίμων, δαίμονος, ὁ/ἡ	spirit, divine power, daemon	22
δέ (*postpos.*)	and, but	3
δεῖ (*impf.* ἔδει) (*impers.*)	it is necessary, one must	17
δείκνυμι, δείξω, ἔδειξα	show, point out, reveal	27
δεινός, δεινή, δεινόν	clever (at), skillful; terrible; awesome	15
δέκα (*not declinable*)	ten	8
δέκατος, δεκάτη, δέκατον	tenth	8
δεσπότης, δεσπότου, ὁ	master, lord	14
δέχομαι, δέξομαι, ἐδεξάμην	receive, accept, take	18
δέω, δεήσω, ἐδέησα (+ *gen.*)	lack, miss, need; (*mid. also*) ask, plead	23
δή (*postpos.*)	indeed, really	14
δῆλος, δήλη, δῆλον	clear; visible	23
δηλόω, δηλώσω, ἐδήλωσα	show, reveal; explain	26
διά (+ *gen.*)	through	5
(+ *acc.*)	because of, on account of	
διαφέρω, διοίσω, διήνεγκα / διήνεγκον	go through (with), endure; (*intrans.*) differ from (+ *gen.*), make a difference (to) (+ *dat.*)	15
διαφθείρω, διαφθερῶ, διέφθειρα	destroy; corrupt	11
διδάσκω, διδάξω, ἐδίδαξα	teach	2
δίδωμι, δώσω, ἔδωκα	give, grant	17
δίκην δίδωμι	pay a penalty	
δίκαιος, δικαία, δίκαιον	just	6
δίκη, δίκης, ἡ	justice; trial, lawsuit; penalty	9
διώκω, διώξω, ἐδίωξα	pursue	2
δοκέω, δόξω, ἔδοξα	think; seem, seem good / best (to) (+ *dat.*)	13
δόξα, δόξης, ἡ	opinion, judgment; reputation, glory	20
δράω, δράσω, ἔδρασα	do, accomplish; act	10
δύναμαι, δυνήσομαι, ... ἐδυνήθην	be able (to)	18
δύναμις, δυνάμεως, ἡ	power, strength, ability	12
δυνατός, δυνατή, δυνατόν	powerful, strong; able	18
δῶρον, δώρου, τό	gift	3
ἐάν (+ *subj.*)	if	22
ἑαυτοῦ, ἑαυτῆς, ἑαυτοῦ	himself, herself, itself	21
also contracted αὑτοῦ, αὑτῆς, αὑτοῦ		
ἐάω, ἐάσω, εἴασα (*impf.* εἴων)	allow; let alone	26
ἐγώ	I	9
ἐθέλω, ἐθελήσω, ἠθέλησα	want, be willing	8
εἰ	if	10
εἰ γάρ (+ *indic.*)	if only (*hopeless wish*)	21
(+ *opt.*)	I hope that, would that (*hopeful wish*)	
εἶδον – *see* ὁράω		10

εἴθε (+ *indic.*)	if only (*hopeless wish*)	21
(+ *opt.*)	I hope that, would that (*hopeful wish*)	
εἶμι	go	27
εἰμί, ἔσομαι	be	7
(*present encl. except 2 sg.; impf.* ἦν)		
εἰρήνη, εἰρήνης, ἡ	peace	10
εἰς (+ *acc.*)	into, onto	4
εἷς, μία, ἕν	one	8
εἰσβάλλω (+ εἰς)	throw into; invade	11
εἶτα	then, next	14
εἴτε … εἴτε	whether … or	25
ἐκ, ἐξ (+ *gen.*)	out of, from	4
ἕκαστος, ἑκάστη, ἕκαστον	each (of several)	20
ἐκεῖ	there	27
ἐκεῖνος, ἐκείνη, ἐκεῖνο	that (one); (*pl.*) those	14
ἐλάττων, ἔλαττον	smaller, fewer	19
ἐλαύνω, ἐλῶ, ἤλασα	drive, set in motion	24
ἐλάχιστος, ἐλαχίστη, ἐλάχιστον	smallest, least	19
Ἑλλάς, Ἑλλάδος, ἡ	Greece	8
Ἕλλην, Ἕλληνος, ὁ	a Greek	7
ἐλπίζω, ἐλπιῶ, ἤλπισα	hope; expect	12
ἐλπίς, ἐλπίδος, ἡ	hope, expectation	10
ἐμαυτοῦ, ἐμαυτῆς, ἐμαυτοῦ	myself	21
ἐμός, ἐμή, ἐμόν	my	18
ἐν (+ *dat.*)	in, on; (*pl.*) among	4
ἕνεκα (+ *gen.*) (*follows its object*)	on account of, for the sake of	21
ἔνθα	there; then; where; when	27
ἐνθάδε	to this / that place; here; there	
ἐνταῦθα	here; there	27
ἐντεῦθεν	from here; from there	
ἔξεστι (*impers.*) (+ *dat.*)	it is possible (for)	17
ἔοικα (*part.* εἰκώς) (+ *dat.*)	be like, look like; seem; befit	24
(*often impers.*)		
ὡς ἔοικε	as it seems	
ἐπεί / ἐπειδή	when, since, after	10
ἐπειδάν	when, whenever	26
ἔπειτα	then, next	14
ἐπί (+ *gen.*)	on, upon	11
(+ *dat.*)	on, at, near	
(+ *acc.*)	toward, against; upon, on to, up to	
ἐπιλανθάνομαι, ἐπιλήσομαι,	forget	16
ἐπελαθόμην (+ *gen.*)		
ἐπιμελέομαι, ἐπιμελήσομαι,	care about, take care of (+ *gen.*); take care that (+ *inf.*)	20
… ἐπεμελήθην		
ἕπομαι, ἕψομαι, ἑσπόμην (+ *dat.*)	follow	24
(*impf.* εἱπόμην)		
ἔργον, ἔργου, τό	work, deed	3
ἔρχομαι, ἐλεύσομαι, ἦλθον (*stem* ἐλθ-)	come; go	12
ἐρωτάω, ἐρωτήσω, ἠρώτησα / ἠρόμην	ask, question; beg, ask for	23
(*impf.* εἰρώτων)		

ἕτερος, ἑτέρα, ἕτερον	the other (of two)	21
ἔτι	still, yet	15
ἔτος, ἔτους, τό	year	11
εὖ	well	5
εὐδαίμων, εὔδαιμον	happy, fortunate	11
εὐθύς	immediately	13
εὑρίσκω, εὑρήσω, ηὗρον / εὗρον	find, discover	13
ἐχθρός, ἐχθρά, ἐχθρόν	hated, hateful; hostile (to)	26
ἔχω, ἕξω / σχήσω, ἔσχον (*impf.* εἶχον)	have	7
ἔχω + *adv.*	= εἰμί + *adj.*	20.5
ἕως	until; while, so long as	26
ζάω, ζήσω, ἔζησα	live	10
Ζεύς, Διός, ὁ	Zeus	16
ζητέω, ζητήσω, ἐζήτησα	seek, look for; investigate	13
ἤ	or	3
ἤ ... ἤ	either ... or	
	than	19
ἡγεμών, ἡγεμόνος, ὁ	leader, guide	7
ἡγέομαι, ἡγήσομαι, ἡγησάμην	believe; lead, be a leader of (+ *gen.*)	12
ἡδέως	gladly; sweetly	20
ἤδη	already, now	23
ἥδομαι, ἡσθήσομαι, ... ἥσθην	enjoy, be glad; delight in (+ *dat.*)	13
ἡδύς, ἡδεῖα, ἡδύ	sweet, pleasant	14
ἥκιστος, ἡκίστη, ἥκιστον	least	19
ἥκω, ἥξω, *pf.* ἧκα	have come; be present	24
ἥλιος, ἡλίου, ὁ	sun	15
ἡμεῖς	we	9
ἡμέρα, ἡμέρας, ἡ	day	5
ἡμέτερος, ἡμετέρα, ἡμέτερον	our	18
ἤν (+ *subj.*)	if	22
ἥττων, ἧττον	less, fewer; weaker	19
θάλαττα, θαλάττης, ἡ	sea	3
θάνατος, θανάτου, ὁ	death	5
θάττων, θᾶττον	faster	19
θαυμάζω, θαυμάσομαι, ἐθαύμασα	admire, wonder (at)	15
θεά, θεᾶς, ἡ	goddess	3
θέλω – *see* ἐθέλω	want, be willing	8
θεός, θεοῦ, ὁ	god	3
θνήσκω – *see* ἀποθνήσκω	die	10
θύω, θύσω, ἔθυσα	sacrifice; make a sacrifice	2
ἴδιος, ἰδία, ἴδιον	private, one's own	25
ἰδίᾳ (*dat.*) *as adv.*	in private	
ἵημι, ἥσω, -ἧκα	throw; throw at (+ *gen.*); utter (words)	17
ἵνα	in order that, (in order) to	22
ἱππεύς, ἱππέως, ὁ	horseman, rider; charioteer; (*pl.*) cavalry	12

ἵππος, ἵππου, ὁ	horse	3
ἴσος, ἴση, ἴσον (+ *dat.*)	equal (to), the same as	22
ἵστημι, στήσω, ἔστησα (*trans.*) /	(*trans.*) make stand, set, place; appoint, establish;	17
ἔστην (*intrans.*)	(*intrans.*) stand	
ἰσχυρός, ἰσχυρά, ἰσχυρόν	strong	16
καί (*conj.*)	and	3
καί ... καί	both ... and	
(*adv.*)	also, too; even	4
καὶ γάρ	for in fact	9
κακός, κακή, κακόν	bad, evil; cowardly	6
κακῶς	badly	5
καλέω, καλῶ, ἐκάλεσα	call, summon	10
καλός, καλή, καλόν	beautiful, noble, fine	6
κάμηλος, καμήλου, ὁ/ἡ	camel	8
κἄν (καὶ ἐάν)	even if	22
καρδία, καρδίας, ἡ	heart	15
κατά (+ *gen.*)	down from, down upon	10
(+ *acc.*)	over, down along; according to; against, opposite	
κατὰ γῆν	by land	
κατὰ θάλατταν	by sea	
κατηγορέω, κατηγορήσω, κατηγόρησα	speak against, accuse	22
κελεύω, κελεύσω, ἐκέλευσα	order, give an order; urge	8
κεφαλή, κεφαλῆς, ἡ	head	15
κῆρυξ, κήρυκος, ὁ	herald	7
κίνδυνος, κινδύνου, ὁ	danger	17
κοινός, κοινή, κοινόν	common, shared; public	25
τὸ κοινόν	the state	
κρατέω, κρατήσω, ἐκράτησα (+ *gen.*)	be victorious, conquer, rule; surpass, excel	26
κράτιστος, κρατίστη, κράτιστον	best, strongest	19
κρείττων, κρεῖττον	better, stronger	19
κρίνω, κρινῶ, ἔκρινα	judge, decide, determine	16
κριτής, κριτοῦ, ὁ	judge	17
κώμη, κώμης, ἡ	village	3
Λακεδαιμόνιος, Λακεδαιμονία,	Spartan	15
Λακεδαιμόνιον		
λαμβάνω, λήψομαι, ἔλαβον	take, seize; receive	7
λανθάνω, λήσω, ἔλαθον	escape notice	27
λέγω, λέξω, ἔλεξα / εἶπον	say, speak, tell	5
λείπω, λείψω, ἔλιπον	leave, leave behind	5
λέων, λέοντος, ὁ	lion	8
λίθος, λίθου, ὁ	stone, rock	15
λόγος, λόγου, ὁ	word, speech; reason	4
λοιπός, λοιπή, λοιπόν	rest (of), remaining	25
λύω, λύσω, ἔλυσα	release, set free; undo, destroy	2
μακρός, μακρά, μακρόν	long, tall	6
μάλα	very, very much, exceedingly	20

μάλιστα	very much, most; especially; certainly	14
μᾶλλον	more, rather	20
μᾶλλον ... ἤ	rather than	
μανθάνω, μαθήσομαι, ἔμαθον	learn	20
μάχη, μάχης, ἡ	battle	12
μάχομαι, μαχοῦμαι, ἐμαχεσάμην (+ *dat.*)	fight (against)	12
μέγας, μεγάλη, μέγα	big, great; powerful	8
μέγιστος, μεγίστη, μέγιστον	greatest	19
μείζων, μεῖζον	greater	19
μέλλω, μελλήσω, ἐμέλλησα	be likely to (+ *pres. inf.*); intend, delay; be about to (+ *fut. inf.*)	8
μέν (*postpos.*)	(*paired with* δέ *to indicate contrast; not translated*)	6
μένω, μενῶ, ἔμεινα	remain, stay; wait for	11
μετά (+ *gen.*)	with	5
(+ *acc.*)	after	
μέχρι	until; while, so long as	26
μή	not (*used for all commands, exhortations, and wishes; with most infinitive uses, etc.*)	8
μηδέ	and not, but not; nor; not even	9
μηδείς, μηδεμία, μηδέν	nobody, no one, nothing	9
adjectival use	no, not any	
μηκέτι	no longer, no more	22
μήποτε	never	9
μήτε ... μήτε	neither ... nor	9
μήτηρ, μητρός, ἡ	mother	9
μικρός, μικρά, μικρόν	small, little, short	6
μιμνήσκω, μνήσω, ἔμνησα	remind; (*mid. pf.*) remember	24
μόνος, μόνη, μόνον	alone, single	14
μόνον (*acc. n.*) *as adv.*	only	
ναῦς, νεώς, ἡ	ship	16
νεανίας, νεανίου, ὁ	young man	4
νέος, νέα, νέον	new; young	14
νῆσος, νήσου, ἡ	island	4
νικάω, νικήσω, ἐνίκησα	win; conquer, defeat	11
νομίζω, νομιῶ, ἐνόμισα	think; believe in	12
νόμος, νόμου, ὁ	law; custom, tradition	13
νοῦς, νοῦ, ὁ	mind; perception, sense	26
νῦν	now	4
νύξ, νυκτός, ἡ	night	9
ξένος, ξένου, ὁ	guest-friend; foreigner, stranger	3
Ξενοφῶν, Ξενοφῶντος, ὁ	Xenophon	10
ὁ, ἡ, τό	the	4
ὅδε, ἥδε, τόδε	this (one, *as follows*); (*pl.*) these	14
ὁδός, ὁδοῦ, ἡ	road, way, path	4
ὅθεν	from where, whence	27

οἶδα	know (of); know how to (+ *inf.*)	24
οἰκέω, οἰκήσω, ᾤκησα	live in, inhabit; occupy	27
οἰκία, οἰκίας, ἡ	house	3
οἶκος, οἴκου, ὁ	house, home; family	27
οἴκαδε	homeward	
οἴκοθεν	from home	
οἴκοι	at home	
οἴομαι / οἶμαι, οἰήσομαι, ... ᾠήθην	think	21
οἷος, οἵα, οἷον	such, such as, of such a kind	24
οἷός τέ εἰμι	be able, can	8
ὀλίγος, ὀλίγη, ὀλίγον	little, small, few	16
ὄλλυμι – *see* ἀπόλλυμι	destroy; lose; (*mid.*) die	27
ὅμοιος, ὁμοία, ὅμοιον (+ *dat.*)	like, resembling	24
ὁμολογέω, ὁμολογήσω, ὡμολόγησα	agree; admit	12
ὄνομα, ὀνόματος, τό	name; fame	7
ὀνόματι	by name	
ὀνομάζω, ὀνομάσω, ὠνόμασα	name, call by name; call X (an) X (+ *2 acc.*)	7
ὅπλον, ὅπλου, τό	weapon; tool (*usually pl.*)	6
ὅπου	where, wherever	25
ὅπως	in order that	22
	how, as	25
ὁράω, ὄψομαι, εἶδον (*stem* ἰδ-)	see	10
(*impf.* ἑώρων)		
ὄρος, ὄρους, τό	mountain, hill	16
ὅς, ἥ, ὅ	who, which, that	11
ὅστις, ἥτις, ὅ τι	whoever, whichever; who, which	18
ὅταν	whenever	26
ὅτε	when	10
ὅτι	because	10
	that	16
οὐ, οὐκ, οὐχ	not (*used for all statements and questions except*	4
	deliberative question)	
οὐδέ	and not, but not; nor; not even	6
οὐδείς, οὐδεμία, οὐδέν	nobody, no one, nothing	9
adjectival use	no, not any	
οὐδέν (*acc. n.*) as adv.	in no way, not at all	15
οὐκέτι	no longer, no more	22
οὖν (*postpos.*)	so, therefore; in fact	7
οὔποτε	never	9
οὐρανός, οὐρανοῦ, ὁ	heaven, sky	20
οὔτε ... οὔτε	neither ... nor	6
οὗτος, αὕτη, τοῦτο	this (one, *already mentioned*); (*pl.*) these	14
οὕτω / οὕτως	so, in this way	18
παῖς, παιδός, ὁ/ἡ	child, boy, girl	9
πάλιν	back; again	8
παρά (+ *gen.*)	from (the side of)	18
(+ *dat.*)	beside, by (the side of); with (someone), at someone's house	
(+ *acc.*)	to (the side of), alongside; contrary to	
πάρειμι, παρέσομαι	be present	15

παρέχω, παρέξω, παρέσχον	provide, present; allow, grant	25
πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν	all, every, whole	8
πάσχω, πείσομαι, ἔπαθον	suffer; experience	15
πατήρ, πατρός, ὁ	father	9
πατρίς, πατρίδος, ἡ	fatherland, country	7
παύω, παύσω, ἔπαυσα	stop; (*mid.*) cease, stop (*intrans.*)	2; 16
πείθομαι, πείσομαι, ἐπιθόμην (+ *dat.*)	obey (*middle of* πείθω)	16
πείθω, πείσω, ἔπεισα	persuade	2
πειράομαι, πειράσομαι, ἐπειρασάμην	try	23
πέμπω, πέμψω, ἔπεμψα	send	2
-περ	*adds emphasis*	28
περί (+ *gen.*)	about, concerning	5
(+ *acc.*)	around	
περιβάλλω	throw around, surround	11
Πέρσης, Πέρσου, ὁ	a Persian	4
πίπτω, πεσοῦμαι, ἔπεσον	fall, fall down	15
πιστεύω, πιστεύσω, ἐπίστευσα (+ *dat.*)	trust, believe	5
πλεῖστος, πλείστη, πλεῖστον	most, greatest, largest	19
πλείων / πλέων, πλεῖον / πλέον	more, larger	19
πλῆθος, πλήθους, τό	crowd; number, amount	17
ποιέω, ποιήσω, ἐποίησα	make, do; treat	10
εὖ ποιέω	treat well	
κακῶς ποιέω	treat badly	
ποιητής, ποιητοῦ, ὁ	poet	8
ποῖος, ποία, ποῖον	what kind of	24
πολέμιος, πολεμία, πολέμιον	hostile	7
οἱ πολέμιοι	the enemy	
πόλεμος, πολέμου, ὁ	war	5
πόλις, πόλεως, ἡ	city	12
πολίτης, πολίτου, ὁ	citizen	4
πολλάκις	often	17
πολύς, πολλή, πολύ	much, many	12
οἱ πολλοί	the majority	
πόνος, πόνου, ὁ	work, labor; stress, trouble, pain	16
πορεύω, πορεύσω, ἐπόρευσα	convey, carry; (*mid.*) march, journey	16
ποταμός, ποταμοῦ, ὁ	river	4
πότε	when?	25
ποτέ (*encl.*)	at some time, ever, in the world	8
ποῦ	where?	13
πούς, ποδός, ὁ	foot	9
πρᾶγμα, πράγματος, τό	thing, matter, act; (*pl.*) circumstances, affairs; trouble	7
πράττω, πράξω, ἔπραξα	do; make; manage; act	5
εὖ πράττω	fare well, do well; manage well	
κακῶς πράττω	fare badly, do badly; manage badly	
πρίν (+ *finite verb*)	until	26
(+ *inf.*)	before	
πρό (+ *gen.*)	before, in front of	17
πρός (+ *gen.*)	from; on the side of, in favor of	4
(+ *dat.*)	near, at; in addition to	
(+ *acc.*)	to, toward; in relation to	

πρότερος, προτέρα, πρότερον	former, earlier; superior	19
πρῶτος, πρώτη, πρῶτον	first; foremost	19
πρῶτον (*acc. n.*) *as adv.*	first, at first	
πυνθάνομαι, πεύσομαι, ἐπυθόμην	learn (*by asking*)	15
πῦρ, πυρός, τό	fire	9
πῶς	how?	18
πως (*encl.*)	somehow, in some way, in any way	28
ῥᾴδιος, ῥᾳδία, ῥᾴδιον	easy	15
σεαυτοῦ, σεαυτῆς, σεαυτοῦ	yourself	21
σκοπέω, σκοπήσω, ἐσκόπησα	look at; consider, examine	22
σός, σή, σόν	your	18
σοφός, σοφή, σοφόν	wise	6
στάδιον, σταδίου, τό	stade (*3/5 of a mile*)	9
στρατεύω, στρατεύσω, ἐστράτευσα	march; wage war	2
στρατηγός, στρατηγοῦ, ὁ	general	5
στρατιά, στρατιᾶς, ἡ	army	12
στρατιώτης, στρατιώτου, ὁ	soldier	4
σύ	you	9
συμβουλεύω, συμβουλεύσω,	advise; (*mid.*) consult	11; 16
συνεβούλευσα (+ *dat.*)		
σύμμαχος, συμμάχου, ὁ	ally; allied with (+ *dat.*)	10
σύν (+ *dat.*)	with	7
σῴζω, σώσω, ἔσωσα	save	2
Σωκράτης, Σωκράτους, ὁ	Socrates	11
σῶμα, σώματος, τό	body	13
σώφρων, σῶφρον	prudent, sensible; self-controlled	13
τάλας, τάλαινα, τάλαν	wretched, miserable, suffering	8
τάχιστος, ταχίστη, τάχιστον	fastest	19
ταχύς, ταχεῖα, ταχύ	fast, swift, quick	14
τε (*encl.*)	and	6
τε ... καί	both ... and	
τε ... τε	both ... and	
τεῖχος, τείχους, τό	wall	11
τέκνον, τέκνου, τό	child	3
τελευτάω, τελευτήσω, ἐτελεύτησα	finish; die	19
τέλος, τέλους, τό	end; aim	13
τέλος (*acc.*) *as adv.*	finally, in the end	
τέχνη, τέχνης, ἡ	art, skill, craft	14
τίθημι, θήσω, ἔθηκα	put, place; assign, award; establish, make	17
τίκτω, τέξω / τέξομαι, ἔτεκον	produce, give birth to	24
τιμάω, τιμήσω, ἐτίμησα	honor	10
τιμή, τιμῆς, ἡ	honor	3
τίς, τί	who?, what?	5
τί (*acc. n.*) *as adv.*	why?	15
τις, τι (*encl.*)	someone, something; anyone, anything	6
τι (*acc. n.*) *as adv.*	somewhat	15
τοίνυν	therefore, accordingly; further, moreover	28

τοιόσδε, τοιάδε, τοιόνδε	such as this (*as follows*)	27
τοιοῦτος, τοιαύτη, τοιοῦτο	such, of such a sort, of this sort	18
τόπος, τόπου, ὁ	place; topic	22
τοσοῦτος, τοσαύτη, τοσοῦτο	so large, so great; so much, so many (*pl.*)	18
τότε	then, at that time	7
τρέφω, θρέψω, ἔθρεψα	nourish, feed; rear, educate	14
τρόπος, τρόπου, ὁ	way, manner; turn; habit	15
τρόπον (*acc.*) *as adv.*	in (some) way	
τυγχάνω, τεύξομαι, ἔτυχον	happen to (+ *part.*); meet, happen upon (+ *gen.*)	13
τύχη, τύχης, ἡ	luck, fortune (good or bad); fate, chance	17
τῷ ὄντι	in fact, really	14
ὕδωρ, ὕδατος, τό	water	7
υἱός, υἱοῦ, ὁ	son	13
ὑμεῖς	you (*pl.*)	9
ὑμέτερος, ὑμετέρα, ὑμέτερον	your (*pl.*)	18
ὑπέρ (+ *gen.*)	for, for the sake of, on behalf of	20
(+ *acc.*)	beyond	
ὑπό (+ *gen.*)	(from) under; by (*agent*); because of	15
(+ *dat.*)	under, beneath, at the foot of	
(+ *acc.*)	(down) under	
φαίνω, φανῶ, ἔφηνα	reveal, make clear; (*pass.*) appear; appear to be	23
	(+ *inf. or part.*)	
φέρω, οἴσω, ἤνεγκον	carry, bear, bring	7
φεύγω, φεύξομαι, ἔφυγον	flee, avoid, escape	5
φημί, φήσω, ἔφησα / ἔφην	say, assert	17
(*pres. encl. except 2 sg.*)		
οὔ φημι	say not, deny	
φιλέω, φιλήσω, ἐφίλησα	love, like	10
φίλιος, φιλία, φίλιον	friendly	16
φίλος, φίλου, ὁ	friend	3
φοβέω, φοβήσω, ἐφόβησα	scare, put to flight; (*m-p*) fear, be afraid of, flee (in fear)	16
φόβος, φόβου, ὁ	fear, panic	14
φύλαξ, φύλακος, ὁ	guard; watchman	7
φυλάττω, φυλάξω, ἐφύλαξα	guard; keep watch; (*mid.*) guard against	5; 16
φύσις, φύσεως, ἡ	nature; character, temperament; regular order of nature	12
φύω, φύσω, ἔφυσα / ἔφυν	bring forth, produce, beget; (*2nd aor.*) grew	24
χαίρω, χαιρήσω, ἐχαίρησα	enjoy, rejoice (at); be glad	13
χαλεπός, χαλεπή, χαλεπόν	difficult; dangerous; harsh	6
χάρις, χάριτος, ἡ	grace; thanks	12
χάριν ἔχω	be grateful, give thanks	
χείρ, χειρός, ἡ	hand	9
χείρων, χεῖρον	worse	19
χείριστος, χειρίστη, χείριστον	worst	19
χράομαι, χρήσομαι, ἐχρησάμην (+ *dat.*)	use	25
χρή (*impers.*)	it is necessary, it is right; one ought	17

χρῆμα, χρήματος, τό	thing, matter; (*pl.*) goods, money	11
χρήσιμος, χρησίμη, χρήσιμον	useful, serviceable	23
χρόνος, χρόνου, ὁ	time	9
χώρα, χώρας, ἡ	land, place, country	4
ψευδής, ψευδές	false	11
ψυχή, ψυχῆς, ἡ	soul; breath, life	13
ὦ	O! (*need not be translated with voc.*)	3
ὡς	that	16
	in order that, (in order) to	22
	as, when	19
	as _____ as possible (+ *superl.*)	19, 20
ὥσπερ	just as, as if	19
ὥστε	so that; so as to	18

English–Greek Vocabulary

The English–Greek Vocabulary contains only words used in English to Greek exercises. Consult it as a starting point, but don't rely on it to translate word for word into Greek.

accomplish	δράω	beautiful	καλός, καλή, καλόν
according to	κατά (+ *acc.*)	because	ὅτι
accuse	κατηγορέω	because of	διά (+ *acc.*)
admire	θαυμάζω	become	γίγνομαι
admit	ὁμολογέω	before	πρίν
advise	συμβουλεύω (+ *dat.*)	begin	ἄρχω
after (*conj.*)	ἐπεί / ἐπειδή	beside	παρά (+ *dat.*)
after (*prep.*)	μετά (+ *acc.*)	best	ἄριστος, ἀρίστη,
again	πάλιν		ἄριστον
always	ἀεί	beyond	ὑπέρ (+ *acc.*)
all	πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν	big	μέγας, μεγάλη, μέγα
allow	ἐάω	body	σῶμα, σώματος, τό
ally	σύμμαχος,	both … and	καί … καί; τε … καί / τε
	συμμάχου, ὁ	boy	παῖς, παιδός, ὁ
alongside	παρά (+ *acc.*)	bring	φέρω; ἄγω
always	ἀεί	brother	ἀδελφός, ἀδελφοῦ, ὁ
and	καί, τε	but	ἀλλά; δέ
another	ἄλλος, ἄλλη, ἄλλον	by (agent)	ὑπό (+ *gen.*)
anything	τι (*encl.*)		
archon	ἄρχων, ἄρχοντος, ὁ	call	καλέω
as _____ as possible	ὡς + superlative	camel	κάμηλος, καμήλου, ὁ/ἡ
ask for	αἰτέω	can (be able)	οἷός τέ εἰμι; δύναμαι
at home	οἴκοι	carry	φέρω
at that time	τότε	cavalry	ἱππεύς, ἱππέως, ὁ (*pl.*)
at the same time	ἅμα	child	τέκνον, τέκνου, τό;
Athenian	Ἀθηναῖος, Ἀθηναία,		παῖς, παιδός, ὁ/ἡ
	Ἀθηναῖον	choose	αἱρέω (*mid.*)
Athens	Ἀθῆναι, Ἀθηνῶν, αἱ	circumstances	πρᾶγμα, πράγματος,
away from	ἀπό (+ *gen.*)		τό (*pl.*)
		citizen	πολίτης, πολίτου, ὁ
bad	κακός, κακή, κακόν	city	πόλις, πόλεως, ἡ
battle	μάχη, μάχης, ἡ	clear	δῆλος, δήλη, δῆλον
be	εἰμί	come	ἔρχομαι
be able	οἷός τέ εἰμι; δύναμαι	convey	πορεύω
be about to	μέλλω	corrupt	διαφθείρω
be afraid	φοβέομαι	country	χώρα, χώρας, ἡ
be away	ἄπειμι	custom	νόμος, νόμου, ὁ
be necessary	δεῖ; χρή; ἀνάγκη ἐστί		

danger	κίνδυνος, κινδύνου, ὁ		βάρβαρος, βαρβάρου, ὁ
day	ἡμέρα, ἡμέρας, ἡ	friend	φίλος, φίλου, ὁ
death	θάνατος, θανάτου, ὁ	from	ἐκ, ἐξ (+ gen.); ἀπό
defeat	νικάω		(+ gen.)
deny	οὔ φημι		
die	ἀποθνήσκω; θνήσκω;	general	στρατηγός, στρατηγοῦ, ὁ
	τελευτάω	gift	δῶρον, δώρου, τό
differ (from)	διαφέρω	give	δίδωμι
difference (make)	διαφέρω	give birth	τίκτω
difficult	χαλεπός, χαλεπή,	go	βαίνω; εἶμι
	χαλεπόν	god	θεός, θεοῦ, ὁ
divine power	δαίμων, δαίμονος, ὁ/ἡ;	goddess	θεά, θεᾶς, ἡ
	δαιμόνιον, δαιμονίου, τό	good	ἀγαθός, ἀγαθή, ἀγαθόν
do	πράττω; δράω	great	μέγας, μεγάλη, μέγα
drive	ἐλαύνω	Greece	Ἑλλάς, Ἑλλάδος, ἡ
		Greek, a	Ἕλλην, Ἕλληνος, ὁ
each	ἕκαστος, ἑκάστη,	guard (noun)	φύλαξ, φύλακος, ὁ
	ἕκαστον	guide	ἡγεμών, ἡγεμόνος, ὁ
each other	ἀλλήλων, ἀλλήλων,		
	ἀλλήλων	habit	τρόπος, τρόπου, ὁ
easy	ῥᾴδιος, ῥᾳδία, ῥᾴδιον	happen (to)	τυγχάνω
educate	τρέφω	happy	εὐδαίμων, εὔδαιμον
eight	ὀκτώ	harm	βλάπτω
enemy	πολέμιος, πολεμίου,	have	ἔχω
	ὁ (pl.)	he, she, it, they	αὐτός, αὐτή, αὐτό
escape	φεύγω	head	κεφαλή, κεφαλῆς, ἡ
establish	ἵστημι; τίθημι	hear	ἀκούω
even	καί	help	βοηθέω (+ dat.)
every	πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν	herald	κῆρυξ, κήρυκος, ὁ
expect	ἐλπίζω	himself, herself,	ἑαυτοῦ, ἑαυτῆς,
experience	πάσχω	itself	ἑαυτοῦ
explain	δηλόω	home(ward)	οἴκαδε
		honor (noun)	τιμή, τιμῆς, ἡ
fame	ὄνομα, ὀνόματος, τό	honor (verb)	τιμάω
family	γένος, γένους, τό	horse	ἵππος, ἵππου, ὁ
fare badly	κακῶς πράττω	hostile	πολέμῐος, πολεμῐ́α,
father	πατήρ, πατρός, ὁ		πολέμῐον; ἐχθρός,
fatherland	πατρίς, πατρίδος, ἡ		ἐχθρά, ἐχθρόν
few	ὀλίγος, ὀλίγη, ὀλίγον	house	οἰκία, οἰκίας, ἡ
fight (against)	μάχομαι (+ dat.)		
finally	τέλος	I	ἐγώ
fire	πῦρ, πυρός, τό	if	εἰ; ἐάν / ἤν (+ subj.)
five	πέντε	immediately	εὐθύς
flee	φεύγω	immortal	ἀθάνατος, ἀθάνατον
follow	ἕπομαι (+ dat.)	in	ἐν (+ dat.)
foot	πούς, ποδός, ὁ	in fact	τῷ ὄντι
for	γάρ (postpos.)	in order to / that	ἵνα, ὡς, ὅπως
for the sake of	ἕνεκα (+ gen.; follows	injure	βλάπτω
	its object)	invade	εἰσβάλλω (+ εἰς)
foreigner	ξένος, ξένου, ὁ;	island	νῆσος, νήσου, ἡ

journey	πορεύω (*mid.*)	name	ὄνομα, ὀνόματος, τό
judge (*noun*)	κριτής, κριτοῦ, ὁ	near	πρός (+ *dat.*)
judge (*verb*)	κρίνω	never	οὔποτε; μήποτε
judgment	γνώμη, γνώμης, ἡ	new	νέος, νέα, νέον
just	δίκαιος, δικαία, δίκαιον	next	εἶτα; ἔπειτα
justice	δίκη, δίκης, ἡ	no	οὐδείς, οὐδεμία, οὐδέν
		noble	καλός, καλή, καλόν
kill	ἀποκτείνω	nobody, no one	οὐδείς, οὐδεμία, οὐδέν
king	βασιλεύς, βασιλέως, ὁ	not	οὐ, οὐκ, οὐχ; μή
know	γιγνώσκω; οἶδα	not even	οὐδέ
		not only … but also	οὐ μόνον … ἀλλὰ καί
law	νόμος, νόμου, ὁ	now	νῦν
lead	ἄγω; ἡγέομαι (+ *gen.*)		
leader	ἡγεμών, ἡγεμόνος, ὁ;	obey	πείθομαι (+ *dat.*)
	ἄρχων, ἄρχοντος, ὁ	on (*place where*)	ἐν (+ *dat.*); ἐπί (+ *gen.*)
learn	πυνθάνομαι	on account of	ἕνεκα (+ *gen.*; *follows its*
leave	λείπω		*object*)
life	βίος, βίου, ὁ	on behalf of	ὑπέρ (+ *gen.*)
like (*adj.*)	ὅμοιος, ὁμοία, ὅμοιον	one	εἷς, μία, ἕν
	(+ *dat.*)	one … the other	ὁ μέν … ὁ δέ
like (*verb*)	φιλέω	only (*adj.*)	μόνος, μόνη, μόνον
lion	λέων, λέοντος, ὁ	only (*adv.*)	μόνον
listen (to)	ἀκούω (*usually + gen.*	or	ἤ
	person, + acc. thing)	order	κελεύω
live	ζάω	our	ἡμέτερος, ἡμετέρα,
live in	οἰκέω		ἡμέτερον
long	μακρός, μακρά, μακρόν	out of	ἐκ, ἐξ (+ *gen.*)
love	φιλέω		
luck	τύχη, τύχης, ἡ	Persian, a	Πέρσης, Πέρσου, ὁ
		persuade	πείθω
majority, the	οἱ πολλοί	place	χώρα, χώρας, ἡ
make	ποιέω	plan	βουλεύω
make clear	φαίνω	poet	ποιητής, ποιητοῦ, ὁ
man	ἄνθρωπος, ἀνθρώπου, ὁ;	power	δύναμις, δυνάμεως, ἡ
	ἀνήρ, ἀνδρός, ὁ	prosecute	γράφω (*mid.*)
many	πολύς, πολλή, πολύ	province	ἀρχή, ἀρχῆς, ἡ
march	στρατεύω	pursue	διώκω
marketplace	ἀγορά, ἀγορᾶς, ἡ		
master	δεσπότης, δεσπότου, ὁ	quickly	ταχέως
mind	νοῦς, νοῦ, ὁ		
money	χρῆμα, χρήματος,	rather	μᾶλλον
	τό (*pl.*)	reach	ἀφικνέομαι
most	πλεῖστος, πλείστη,	really	τῷ ὄντι
	πλεῖστον	reason	λόγος, λόγου, ὁ
mother	μήτηρ, μητρός, ἡ	receive	λαμβάνω
mountain	ὄρος, ὄρους, τό	rejoice	χαίρω; ἥδομαι
must	δεῖ; ἀνάγκη ἐστί	release	λύω
my	ἐμός, ἐμή, ἐμόν	remain	μένω
		remind	μιμνήσκω

reputation	δόξα, δόξης, ἡ		ἰσχυρόν; δυνατός,
river	ποταμός, ποταμοῦ, ὁ		δυνατή, δυνατόν
road	ὁδός, ὁδοῦ, ἡ	such a sort	τοιοῦτος, τοιαύτη,
rock	λίθος, λίθου, ὁ		τοιοῦτο
rule	ἄρχω (+ *gen.*);	sun	ἥλιος, ἡλίου, ὁ
	βασιλεύω (+ *gen.*)	suffer	πάσχω
		swift	ταχύς, ταχεῖα, ταχύ
safe	ἀσφαλής, ἀσφαλές		
same	αὐτός, αὐτή, αὐτό	tall	μακρός, μακρά, μακρόν
save	σῴζω	take	λαμβάνω; δέχομαι;
sacrifice	θύω		αἰτέω
say	λέγω; φημί	teach	διδάσκω
sea	θάλαττα, θαλάττης, ἡ	ten	δέκα
see	ὁράω	tenth	δέκατος, δεκάτη,
seize	λαμβάνω; αἱρέω		δέκατον
-self	αὐτός, αὐτή, αὐτό	terrible	δεινός, δεινή, δεινόν
send	πέμπω	than	ἤ
send out	ἐκπέμπω	thanks (give)	χάριν ἔχω
seven	ἑπτά	that (*conj.*)	ὡς
shameful	αἰσχρός, αἰσχρά,	that (*demonstr.*)	ἐκεῖνος, ἐκείνη, ἐκεῖνο
	αἰσχρόν	the	ὁ, ἡ, τό
ship	ναῦς, νεώς, ἡ	then	τότε
show	δηλόω; δείκνυμι	there	ἔνθα
sky	οὐρανός, οὐρανοῦ, ὁ	there (*motion toward*)	ἐνθάδε
small	μικρός, μικρά, μικρόν	think	νομίζω
so	οὕτω, οὕτως	this	οὗτος, αὕτη, τοῦτο; ὅδε,
so (that), so (as to)	ὥστε (*result*);		ἥδε, τόδε
	ἵνα, ὅπως (*purpose*)	throw	βάλλω
Socrates	Σωκράτης, Σωκράτους, ὁ	time	χρόνος, χρόνου, ὁ
soldier	στρατιώτης,	to (*motion toward*)	πρός (+ *acc.*); παρά
	στρατιώτου, ὁ		(+ *acc.*)
some	τις, τι (*encl.*); οἱ μέν	town	ἄστυ, ἄστεως, τό
some … others	οἱ μέν … οἱ δέ	treat badly	κακῶς ποιέω
someone	τις (*encl.*)	trust	πιστεύω (+ *dat.*)
something	τι (*encl.*)	truth	τὰ ἀληθῆ; ἀλήθεια,
son	υἱός, υἱοῦ, ὁ		ἀληθείας, ἡ
soul	ψυχή, ψυχῆς, ἡ		
Spartan	Λακεδαιμόνιος,	unjust	ἄδικος, ἄδικον
	Λακεδαιμονία,	until	ἕως, μέχρι; πρίν
	Λακεδαιμόνιον	useful	χρήσιμος, χρήσιμη,
speak	λέγω		χρήσιμον
speech	λόγος, λόγου, ὁ		
stade	στάδιον, σταδίου, τό	very much	μάλιστα
stand	ἵστημι	village	κώμη, κώμης, ἡ
stay	μένω		
stone	λίθος, λίθου, ὁ	wait for	μένω
stop	παύω	wall	τεῖχος, τείχους, τό
stranger	ξένος, ξένου, ὁ	want	ἐθέλω; βούλομαι
strong	ἰσχυρός, ἰσχυρά,	war	πόλεμος, πολέμου, ὁ

water	ὕδωρ, ὕδατος, τό	word	λόγος, λόγου, ὁ
we	ἡμεῖς	worst	κάκιστος, κακίστη,
weaker	ἥττων, ἧττον		κάκιστον; χείριστος,
weapon	ὅπλον, ὅπλου, τό		χειρίστη, χείριστον
well	εὖ	worthy (of)	ἄξιος, ἀξία, ἄξιον
what?	τίς, τί		(+ *gen.*)
when	ὅτε; ἐπεί	write	γράφω
whenever	ὅταν; ἐπείδαν	wrong (do)	ἀδικέω
who?	τίς, τί		
who (*relative*)	ὅς, ἥ, ὅ	year	ἔτος, ἔτους, τό
whoever	ὅστις, ἥτις, ὅ τι	you	σύ; ὑμεῖς (*pl.*)
whole	πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν	young	νέος, νέα, νέον
why?	τί	young man	νεανίας, νεανίου, ὁ
wife	γυνή, γυναικός, ἡ	your	ὑμέτερος, ὑμετέρα,
win	νικάω		ὑμέτερον (*pl.*)
wise	σοφός, σοφή, σοφόν		
with	μετά (+ *gen.*); σύν (+ *dat.*)	Zeus	Ζεύς, Διός, ὁ
woman	γυνή, γυναικός, ἡ		

Index

A widely adopted textbook for first-year Classical Greek, *Introduction to Greek* has been rethought from the ground up in this third edition to make it even more effective and user friendly.

"*Introduction to Greek*, Third Edition is a major revision of, and significant improvement upon, the second edition. The third edition strengthens the few areas where the second edition was weak and adds some useful new features to make it more adaptable to different teaching approaches. Most importantly it is succinct and well designed, so that students can reasonably complete it during a standard two-semester course. The new edition should be extremely attractive to both faculty and students. It is unreservedly the textbook I plan to adopt the next time I teach first-year Greek."

—Michael G. Clark, Lafayette College

Features

- Streamlined coverage of grammar with fewer chapters
- Reorganized and clarified presentation of grammar
- A greater number and wider range of exercises
- Additional adapted and unadapted ancient sentences and readings
- Reduced vocabulary with focus on high-frequency words
- Extra self-tutorial translation exercises with an answer key

CYNTHIA W. SHELMERDINE is the Robert M. Armstrong Centennial Professor of Classics, emerita, The University of Texas at Austin.

SUSAN C. SHELMERDINE is Professor of Classical Studies, The University of North Carolina at Greensboro.

Cover art: Malysh Falco / Shutterstock